

# eledmac

A presumptuous attempt to port  
EDMAC, TABMAC and EDSTANZA to LaTeX\*

Peter Wilson

Herries Press<sup>†</sup>

Maïeul Rouquette<sup>‡</sup>

based on the original work by

John Lavagnino, Dominik Wujastyk, Herbert Breger and Wayne Sullivan

## Abstract

EDMAC, a set of PLAIN T<sub>E</sub>X macros, was made at the beginning of 90's for typesetting critical editions in the traditional way, i.e., similar to the Oxford Classical Texts, Teubner, Arden Shakespeare and other series. A separate set of PLAIN T<sub>E</sub>X macros, TABMAC, provides for tabular material. Another set of PLAIN T<sub>E</sub>X macros, EDSTANZA, assists in typesetting verse.

The eledmac package makes the EDMAC, TABMAC and EDSTANZA facilities available to authors who would prefer to use LaTeX. The principal functions provided by the package are marginal line numbering and multiple series of foot- and endnotes keyed to line numbers.

In addition to the EDMAC, TABMAC and EDSTANZA functions the package also provides for index entries keyed to both page and line numbers. Multiple series of the familiar numbered footnotes are also available.

Other L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X packages for critical editions include EDNOTES, and poemscol for poetical works.

eledmac provides many tools and options. Normally, they are all documented in this file. Also provided is a help folder, “examples”. The folder contains additional examples (although not for all cases)

To report bugs, please go to ledmac's GitHub page and click “New Issue”: <https://github.com/maieul/ledmac/issues/>. You must open an account with github.com to access my page (maieul/ledmac). GitHub accounts are free for open-source users. You can report bugs in English or in French (better).

You can subscribe to the eledmac mail list in:

<http://geekographie.maieul.net/146>

---

\*This file (eledmac.dtx) has version number v1.12.8, last revised 2014/09/12.

<sup>†</sup>herries dot press at earthlink dot net

<sup>‡</sup>maieul at maieul dot net

## Contents

<b>1 Introduction</b>	<b>5</b>
1.1 Overview . . . . .	6
1.2 History . . . . .	7
1.2.1 EDMAC . . . . .	7
1.2.2 eledmac . . . . .	9
1.2.3 List of works edited with (e)ledmac . . . . .	9
<b>2 The eledmac package</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>3 Numbering text lines and paragraphs</b>	<b>9</b>
3.1 Lineation commands . . . . .	13
3.2 Changing the line numbers . . . . .	14
<b>4 The apparatus</b>	<b>15</b>
4.1 Commands . . . . .	15
4.2 Alternate footnote formatting . . . . .	18
4.3 Display options . . . . .	18
4.3.1 Control line number printing . . . . .	18
4.3.2 Separator between the lemma and the note content . . . . .	20
4.3.3 Font style . . . . .	20
4.3.4 Font of the lemma . . . . .	21
4.3.5 Styles of notes content . . . . .	21
4.3.6 Arbitrary code at the beginning of notes . . . . .	21
4.3.7 Options for notes in columns . . . . .	21
4.3.8 Options for paragraphed footnotes . . . . .	22
4.3.9 Options for block of notes . . . . .	22
4.4 Page layout . . . . .	23
4.5 Fonts . . . . .	23
4.6 Create a new series . . . . .	24
<b>5 Verse</b>	<b>24</b>
5.1 Repeating stanza indents . . . . .	25
5.2 Stanza breaking . . . . .	26
5.3 Hanging symbol . . . . .	26
5.4 Long verse and page break . . . . .	26
5.5 Various tools . . . . .	27
5.6 Hanging symbol . . . . .	27
5.7 Text before/after verses . . . . .	27
<b>6 Grouping</b>	<b>28</b>
<b>7 Crop marks</b>	<b>28</b>
<b>8 Endnotes</b>	<b>28</b>

<i>Contents</i>	3
<b>9 Cross referencing</b>	<b>29</b>
<b>10 Side notes</b>	<b>30</b>
<b>11 Familiar footnotes</b>	<b>31</b>
11.1 Position of the familiar footnotes . . . . .	32
<b>12 Indexing</b>	<b>32</b>
<b>13 Tabular material</b>	<b>33</b>
<b>14 Sectioning commands</b>	<b>36</b>
<b>15 Quotation environments</b>	<b>38</b>
<b>16 Page breaks</b>	<b>38</b>
<b>17 Miscellaneous</b>	<b>38</b>
17.1 Known and suspected limitations . . . . .	39
17.2 Use with other packages . . . . .	40
17.3 Parallel typesetting . . . . .	41
17.4 Notes for EDMAC users . . . . .	41
<b>18 Implementation overview</b>	<b>44</b>
<b>19 Preliminaries</b>	<b>44</b>
19.1 Messages . . . . .	46
<b>20 Sectioning commands</b>	<b>50</b>
<b>21 Line counting</b>	<b>53</b>
21.1 Choosing the system of lineation . . . . .	53
21.2 List macros . . . . .	58
21.3 Line-number counters and lists . . . . .	59
21.4 Reading the line-list file . . . . .	63
21.5 Commands within the line-list file . . . . .	64
21.6 Writing to the line-list file . . . . .	71
<b>22 Marking text for notes</b>	<b>75</b>
22.1 <code>\edtext</code> and <code>\critext</code> themselves . . . . .	76
22.2 Substitute lemma . . . . .	81
22.3 Substitute line numbers . . . . .	81
<b>23 Paragraph decomposition and reassembly</b>	<b>82</b>
23.1 Boxes, counters, <code>\pstart</code> and <code>\pend</code> . . . . .	82
23.2 Processing one line . . . . .	86
23.3 Line and page number computation . . . . .	88
23.4 Line number printing . . . . .	91

23.5 Pstart number printing in side . . . . .	95
23.6 Add insertions to the vertical list . . . . .	96
23.7 Penalties . . . . .	97
23.8 Printing leftover notes . . . . .	97
<b>24 Footnotes</b>	<b>98</b>
24.1 Fonts . . . . .	98
24.2 Outer-level footnote commands . . . . .	99
24.3 Normal footnote formatting . . . . .	100
24.4 Standard footnote definitions . . . . .	106
24.5 Paragraphed footnotes . . . . .	108
24.6 Insertion of the footnotes separator . . . . .	113
24.7 Columnar footnotes . . . . .	114
<b>25 Familiar footnotes</b>	<b>118</b>
25.1 Generality . . . . .	118
25.2 Footnote formats . . . . .	120
25.3 Two columns footnotes . . . . .	124
25.4 Three columns footnotes . . . . .	125
25.5 Paragraphed footnotes . . . . .	127
25.6 Footnotes' order . . . . .	129
25.7 Footnotes' output . . . . .	130
<b>26 Endnotes</b>	<b>130</b>
<b>27 Generate series</b>	<b>133</b>
27.1 Test if series is still existing . . . . .	133
27.2 Create all commands to memorize display options . . . . .	133
27.3 Create inserts, needed to add notes in foot . . . . .	134
27.4 Create commands for critical apparatus, <code>\Xfootnote</code> . . . . .	134
27.5 Create tools for familiar footnotes ( <code>\footnotex</code> ) . . . . .	135
27.6 The endnotes . . . . .	136
27.7 Init standards series (A,B,C,D,E,Z) . . . . .	136
27.8 Some tools . . . . .	137
27.9 Old commands, kept for backward compatibility . . . . .	140
27.10 Hooks for a particular footnote . . . . .	140
27.11 Alias . . . . .	140
27.12 Line number printing . . . . .	141
<b>28 Output routine</b>	<b>143</b>
<b>29 Cross referencing</b>	<b>149</b>
<b>30 Side notes</b>	<b>153</b>
<b>31 Minipages and such</b>	<b>160</b>

<b>32 Indexing</b>	<b>163</b>
32.1 Hyperref compatibility . . . . .	167
<b>33 Macro as environment</b>	<b>169</b>
<b>34 Verse</b>	<b>172</b>
<b>35 Arrays and tables</b>	<b>176</b>
<b>36 Section's title commands</b>	<b>196</b>
36.1 Deprecated commands . . . . .	196
36.2 New commands : <code>\eledxxx</code> . . . . .	198
<b>37 Page breaking or no page breaking depending of specific lines</b>	<b>207</b>
<b>38 Long verse: prevents being separated by a page break</b>	<b>209</b>
<b>39 The End</b>	<b>209</b>
<b>Appendix A Some things to do when changing version</b>	<b>210</b>
Appendix A.1 Migration from ledmac to eledmac . . . . .	210
Appendix A.2 Migration to eledmac 1.5.1 . . . . .	210
Appendix A.3 Migration to eledmac 1.12.0 . . . . .	211
<b>References</b>	<b>212</b>
<b>Index</b>	<b>212</b>
<b>Change History</b>	<b>231</b>

## List of Figures

### 1 Introduction

The EDMAC macros [LW90] for typesetting critical editions of texts have been available for use with TeX since 90's. Since EDMAC was introduced there has been a small but constant demand for a version of EDMAC that could be used with LaTeX. The eledmac package is an attempt to satisfy that request.

eledmac would not have been possible without the amazing work by John Lavagnino and Dominik Wujastyk, the original authors of EDMAC. I, Peter Wilson, am very grateful for their encouragement and permission to use EDMAC as a base. The majority of both the code and this manual are by these two. The tabular material is based on the TABMAC code [Bre96], by permission of its author, Herbert Breger. The verse-related code is by courtesy of Wayne Sullivan, the author of EDSTANZA [Sul92], who has kindly supplied more than his original macros.

Since 2011's Maïeul Rouquette begun to maintain and extend `eledmac`. As plain  $\text{\TeX}$  is used by little people, and  $\text{\LaTeX}$  by more people `eledmac` and original `EDMAC` are more and more distant.

## 1.1 Overview

The `eledmac` package, together with  $\text{\LaTeX}$ , provides several important facilities for formatting critical editions of texts in a traditional manner. Major features include:

- automatic stepped line numbering, by page or by section;
- sub-lineation within the main series of line numbers;
- variant readings automatically keyed to line numbers;
- caters for both prose and verse;
- multiple series of the footnotes and endnotes;
- block or columnar formatting of the footnotes;
- simple tabular material may be line numbered;
- indexing keyed to page and line numbers.

`eledmac` allows the scholar engaged in preparing a critical edition to focus attention wholly on the task of creating the critical text and evaluating the variant readings, text-critical notes and testimonia.  $\text{\LaTeX}$  and `eledmac` will take care of the formatting and visual correlation of all the disparate types of information.

The original `EDMAC` can be used as a ‘stand alone’ processor or as part of a process. One example is its use as the formatting engine or ‘back end’ for the output of an automatic manuscript collation program. `COLLATE`, written by Peter Robinson, runs on the Apple Macintosh, can collate simultaneously up to a hundred manuscripts of any length, and provides facilities for the scholar to tailor the collation interactively. For further details of this and other related work, visit the `EDMAC` home page at <http://www.homepages.ucl.ac.uk/~ucgadkw/edmac/index.html>.

Apart from `eledmac` there are some other  $\text{\LaTeX}$  packages for critical edition typesetting. As Peter Wilson is not an author, or even a prospective one, of any critical edition work he could not provide any opinions on what authors in this area might feel comfortable with or how well any of the packages meet their needs.

`EDNOTES` [Lüc03], by Uwe Lück and Christian Tapp, is another  $\text{\LaTeX}$  package being developed for critical editions. Unlike `eledmac` which is based on `EDMAC`, `EDNOTES` takes a different (internal) approach and provides a different set of features. For example it provides additional facilities for overlapping lemmas and for handling tables. For more information there is a web site at <http://ednotes.sty.de.vu> or email to [ednotes.sty@web.de](mailto:ednotes.sty@web.de).

The `poemscol` package [Bur01] by John Burt is designed for typesetting critical editions of collections of poems. I do not know how, or whether, `poemscol` and `eledmac` will work together.

Critical authors may find it useful to look at EDMAC, EDNOTES, eledmac, and poemscot to see which best meets their needs.

At the time of writing Peter Wilson knows of two web sites, apart from the EDMAC home page, that have information on eledmac, and other programs.

- Jerónimo Leal pointed me to <http://www.guit.sssup.it/latex/critical.html>. This also mentions another package for critical editions called MauroTeX (<http://www.maurolico.unipi.it/mtex/mtex.htm>). These sites are both in Italian.
- Dirk-Jan Dekker maintains <http://www.djdekker.net/ledmac> which is a FAQ for typesetting critical editions and eledmac.

This manual contains a general description of how to use the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X version of EDMAC, namely eledmac (in sections 2 through 17.4); the complete source code for the package, with extensive documentation (in sections 18 and following) ; and an Index to the source code. We do not suggest that you need to read the source code for this package in order to use it; we provide this code primarily for reference, and many of our comments on it repeat material that is also found in the earlier sections. But no documentation, however thorough, can cover every question that comes up, and many can be answered quickly by consultation of the code. On a first reading, we suggest that you should read only the general documentation in sections 2, unless you are particularly interested in the innards of eledmac.

## 1.2 History

### 1.2.1 EDMAC

The original version of EDMAC was TEXTED.TEX, written by John Lavagnino in late 1987 and early 1988 for formatting critical editions of English plays.

John passed these macros on to Dominik Wujastyk who, in September–October 1988, added the footnote paragraphing mechanism, margin swapping and other changes to suit his own purposes, making the style more like that traditionally used for classical texts in Latin and Greek (e.g., the Oxford Classical Texts series). He also wrote some extra documentation and sent the files out to several people. This version of the macros was the first to be called EDMAC.

The present version was developed in the summer of 1990, with the intent of adding necessary features, streamlining and documenting the code, and further generalizing it to make it easily adaptable to the needs of editors in different disciplines. John did most of the general reworking and documentation, with the financial assistance of the Division of the Humanities and Social Sciences, California Institute of Technology. Dominik adapted the code to the conventions of Frank Mittelbach’s doc option, and added some documentation, multiple-column footnotes, cross-references, and crop marks.<sup>1</sup> A description by John and Dominik

---

<sup>1</sup>This version of the macros was used to format the Sanskrit text in volume I of *Metarules of Pāṇinian Grammar* by Dominik Wujastyk (Groningen: Forsten, 1993).

of this version of EDMAC was published as ‘An overview of EDMAC: a PLAIN T<sub>E</sub>X format for critical editions’, *TUGboat 11* (1990), pp. 623–643.

From 1991 through 1994, the macros continued to evolve, and were tested at a number of sites. We are very grateful to all the members of the (now defunct) `edmac@mailbase.ac.uk` discussion group who helped us with smoothing out bugs and infelicities in the macros. Ron Whitney and our anonymous reviewer at the TUG were both of great help in ironing out last-minute wrinkles, while Ron made some important suggestions which may help to make future versions of EDMAC even more efficient. Wayne Sullivan, in particular, provided several important fixes and contributions, including adapting the Mittelbach/Schöpf ‘New Font Selection Scheme’ for use with PLAIN T<sub>E</sub>X and EDMAC. Another project Wayne has worked on is a DVI post-processor which works with an EDMAC that has been slightly modified to output `\specials`. This combination enables you to recover to some extent the text of each line, as ASCII code, facilitating the creation of concordances, an *index verborum*, etc.

At the time of writing (1994), we are pleased to be able to say that EDMAC is being used for real-life book production of several interesting editions, such as the Latin texts of Euclid’s *Elements*,<sup>2</sup> an edition of the letters of Nicolaus Copernicus,<sup>3</sup> Simon Bredon’s *Arithmetica*,<sup>4</sup> a Latin translation by Plato of Tivoli of an Arabic astrolabe text,<sup>5</sup> a Latin translation of part II of the Arabic *Algebra* by Abū Kāmil Shujā’ b. Aslam,<sup>6</sup> the Latin *Rithmachia* of Werinher von Tegernsee,<sup>7</sup> a middle-Dutch romance epic on the Crusades,<sup>8</sup> a seventeenth-century Hungarian politico-philosophical tract,<sup>9</sup> an anonymous Latin compilation from Hungary entitled *Sermones Compilati in Studio Generali Quinqueecclesiensi in Regno Ungarie*,<sup>10</sup> the collected letters and papers of Leibniz,<sup>11</sup> Theodosius’s *Spherics*, the German *Algorismus* of Sacrobosco, the Sanskrit text of the *Kāśikāvṛtti* of Vāmana and Jayāditya,<sup>12</sup> and the English texts of Thomas Middleton’s collected works.

<sup>2</sup>Gerhard Brey used EDMAC in the production of Hubert L. L. Busard and Menso Folkerts, *Robert of Chester’s (?) Redaction of Euclid’s Elements, the so-called Adelard II Version*, 2 vols., (Basel, Boston, Berlin: Birkhäuser, 1992).

<sup>3</sup>Being prepared at the German Copernicus Research Institute, Munich.

<sup>4</sup>Being prepared by Menso Folkerts *et al.*, at the Institut für Geschichte der Naturwissenschaften in Munich.

<sup>5</sup>Richard Lorch, Gerhard Brey *et al.*, at the same Institute.

<sup>6</sup>Richard Lorch, ‘Abū Kāmil on the Pentagon and Decagon’ in *Vestigia Mathematica*, ed. M. Folkerts and J. P. Hogendijk (Amsterdam, Atlanta: Rodopi, 1993).

<sup>7</sup>Menso Folkerts, ‘Die *Rithmachia* des Werinher von Tegernsee’, *ibid.*

<sup>8</sup>Geert H. M. Claassens, *De Middelnederlandse Kruisvaartromans*, (Amsterdam: Schiphoewer en Brinkman, 1993).

<sup>9</sup>Emil Hargittay, *Csáky István: Politica philosophiai Okoskodás-szerint való rendes életnek példája (1664–1674)* (Budapest: Argumentum Kiadó, 1992).

<sup>10</sup>Being produced, as was the previous book, by Gyula Mayer in Budapest.

<sup>11</sup>Leibniz, *Sämtliche Schriften und Briefe*, series I, III, VII, being edited by Dr. H. Breger, Dr. N. Gädeke and others, at the Leibniz-Archiv, Niedersächsische Landesbibliothek, Hannover. (see <http://www.nlb-hannover.de/Leibniz>)

<sup>12</sup>Being prepared at Poona and Lausanne Universities.

### 1.2.2 eledmac

Version 1.0 of **TABMAC** was released by Herbert Breger in October 1996. This added the capability for typesetting tabular material.

Version 0.01 of **EDSTANZA** was released by Wayne Sullivan in June 1992, to help a colleague with typesetting Irish verse.

In March 2003 Peter Wilson started an attempt to port **EDMAC** from TeX to LaTeX. The starting point was **EDMAC** version 3.16 as documented on 19 July 1994 (available from CTAN). In August 2003 the **TABMAC** functions were added; the starting point for these being version 1.0 of October 1996. The **EDSTANZA** (v0.01) functions were added in February 2004. Sidenotes and regular footnotes in numbered text were added in April 2004.

This port was called *ledmac*.

Since July 2011, *ledmac* is maintained by Maïeul Rouquette.

Important changes were put in version 1.0, to make *eledmac* more easily extensible (see 4.3 p.18). These changes can trigger small problems with the old customization. That is why a new name was selected: *eledmac*. To migrate from *ledmac* to *eledmac*, please read Appendix A.1 (p.210).

### 1.2.3 List of works edited with (e)ledmac

A collaborative list of works edited with (e)ledmac is available on [https://www.zotero.org/groups/critical\\_editions\\_typeset\\_with\\_edmac\\_ledmac\\_and\\_eledmac/items](https://www.zotero.org/groups/critical_editions_typeset_with_edmac_ledmac_and_eledmac/items). Please add your own edition made with (e)ledmac.

## 2 The eledmac package

*eledmac* is a three-pass package like L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X itself. Although your textual apparatus and line numbers will be printed even on the first run, it takes two more passes through L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X to be sure that everything gets to its right place. Any changes you make to the input file may similarly require three passes to get everything to the right place, if the changes alter the number of lines or notes. *eledmac* will tell you that you need to make more runs, when it notices, but it does not expend the labor to check this thoroughly. If you have problems with a line or two misnumbered at the top of a page, try running L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X once or twice more.

A file may mix *numbered* and *unnumbered* text. Numbered text is printed with marginal line numbers and can include footnotes and endnotes that are referenced to those line numbers: this is how you'll want to print the text that you're editing. Unnumbered text is not printed with line numbers, and you can't use *eledmac*'s note commands with it: this is appropriate for introductions and other material added by the editor around the edited text.

## 3 Numbering text lines and paragraphs

`\beginnumbering` Each section of numbered text must be preceded by `\beginnumbering` and fol-  
`\endnumbering`

lowed by `\endnumbering`, like:

```
\beginnumbering
<text>
\endnumbering
```

The `\beginnumbering` macro resets the line number to zero, reads an auxiliary file called `<jobname>.nn` (where `<jobname>` is the name of the main input file for this job, and `nn` is 1 for the first numbered section, 2 for the second section, and so on), and then creates a new version of this auxiliary file to collect information during this run. The first instance of `\beginnumbering` also opens a file called `<jobname>.end` to receive the text of the endnotes. `\endnumbering` closes the `<jobname>.nn` file.

If the line numbering of a text is to be continuous from start to end, then the whole text will be typed between one pair of `\beginnumbering` and `\endnumbering` commands. But your text will most often contain chapter or other divisions marking sections that should be independently numbered, and these will be appropriate places to begin new numbered sections. `eledmac` has to read and store in memory a certain amount of information about the entire section when it encounters a `\beginnumbering` command, so it speeds up the processing and reduces memory use when a text is divided into a larger number of sections (at the expense of multiplying the number of external files that are generated).

`\pstart`      Within a numbered section, each paragraph of numbered text must be marked  
`\pend`      using the `\pstart` and `\pend` commands:

```
\pstart
<paragraph of text>
\pend
```

Text that appears within a numbered section but isn't marked with `\pstart` and `\pend` will not be numbered.

The following example shows the proper section and paragraph markup, and the kind of output that would typically be generated:

<pre> \beginnumbering \pstart This is a sample paragraph, with lines numbered automatically. \pend  \pstart This paragraph too has its lines automatically numbered. \pend  The lines of this paragraph are not numbered.  \pstart And here the numbering begins again. \pend \endnumbering </pre>	<pre> 1 This is a sample paragraph 2 with lines numbered 3 automatically. 4 This paragraph too 5 has its lines automatically 6 numbered.  The lines of this paragraph are not numbered.  7 And here the numbering 8 begins again. </pre>
--	--

Both `\pstart` and `\pend` can take a optional argument, in brackets. Its content will be printed before the beginning of the `\pstart` / after the end of the `\pend`. If you need to start a `\pstart` by brackets, or to add brackets after a `\pend`, just add a `\` between `\pstart`/`\pend` and the brackets.

This feature is not needed for normal use of `eledmac`, but it is needed when using verse (see 5 p. 24) or `eledpar` (see 17.3 p. 41).

A `\noindent` is automatically added before this argument.

`\autopar` You can use `\autopar` to avoid the nuisance of this paragraph markup and still have every paragraph automatically numbered. The scope of the `\autopar` command needs to be limited by keeping it within a group, as follows:

<pre> \begingroup \beginnumbering \autopar  A paragraph of numbered text.  Another paragraph of numbered text.  \endnumbering \endgroup </pre>	<pre> 1 A paragraph of numbered 2 text. 3 Another paragraph of 4 numbered text. </pre>
--	--

`\autopar` fails, however, on paragraphs that start with a `{` or with any other command that starts a new group before it generates any text. Such paragraphs need to be started explicitly, before the new group is opened, using `\indent`, `\noindent`, or `\leavevmode`, or using `\pstart` itself.<sup>13</sup>

`\firstlinenum` By default, `eledmac` numbers every 5th line. There are two counters,  
`\linenumincrement`

---

<sup>13</sup>For a detailed study of the reasons for this restriction, see Barbara Beeton, 'Initiation rites', *TUGboat* **12** (1991), pp. 257–258.

`firstlinenum` and `linenumincrement`, that control this behaviour; they can be changed using `\firstlinenum{<num>}` and `\linenumincrement{<num>}`. `\firstlinenum` specifies the first line that will have a printed number, and `\linenumincrement` is the difference between successive numbered lines. For example, to start printing numbers at the first line and to have every other line numbered:

```
\firstlinenum{1} \linenumincrement{2}
```

```
\firstsublinenum
\sublinenumincrement
\numberpstarttrue
```

There are similar commands, `\firstsublinenum{<num>}` and `\sublinenumincrement{<num>}` for controlling sub-line numbering.

You can use the command `\numberpstarttrue` to insert a number on every `\pstart`. To stop the numbering, you must use `\numberpstartfalse`. To reset the numbering of `\pstarts`, insert

```
\setcounter{pstart}{0}
```

```
\pausenumbering
\resumenumbering
```

`eledmac` stores a lot of information about line numbers and footnotes in memory as it goes through a numbered section. But at the end of such a section, it empties its memory out, so to speak. If your text has a very long numbered section it is possible that your  $\text{\LaTeX}$  may reach its memory limit. There are two solutions to this. The first is to get a larger  $\text{\LaTeX}$  with increased memory. The second solution is to split your long section into several smaller ones. The trouble with this is that your line numbering will start again at zero with each new section. To avoid this problem, we provide `\pausenumbering` and `\resumenumbering` which are just like `\endnumbering ... \beginnumbering`, except that they arrange for your line numbering to continue across the break. Use `\pausenumbering` only between numbered paragraphs:

```
\beginnumbering
\pstart
Paragraph of text.
\pend
\pausenumbering
\resumenumbering
\pstart
Another paragraph.
\pend
\endnumbering
```

1 Paragraph of  
2 text.  
3 Another paragraph.

We have defined these commands as two macros, in case you find it necessary to insert text between numbered sections without disturbing the line numbering. But if you are really just using these macros to save memory, you might as well say

```
\newcommand{\memorybreak}{\pausenumbering\resumenumbering}
```

and say `\memorybreak` between the relevant `\pend` and `\pstart`.

It's possible to insert a number at every `\pstart` command. You must use `\numberpstarttrue` the `\numberpstarttrue` command to have it. You can stop the numbering with

`\numberpstartfalse` `\numberpstartfalse`. You can redefine the command `\thepstart` to change style. On each `\beginnumbering` the numbering restarts.

With the `\sidepstartnumtrue` command, the number of `\pstart` will be printed in side. In this case, the line number will be not printed.

With the `\labelpstarttrue` command, a `\label` added just after a `\pstart` will refer to the number of this `pstart`.

### 3.1 Lineation commands

`\numberlinefalse` Line numbering can be disabled with `\numberlinefalse`. It can be enabled again with `\numberlinetrue`. Lines can be numbered either by page, by `pstart` or by section; you specify this using the `\lineation{<arg>}` macro, where `<arg>` is either `page`, `pstart` or `section`. You may only use this command at places where numbering is not in effect; you can't change the lineation system within a section. You can change it between sections: they don't all have to use the same lineation system. The package's standard setting is `\lineation{section}`. If the lineation is by `pstart`, the `pstart` number will be printed before the line number in the notes.

`\linenummargin` The command `\linenummargin<location>` specifies the margin where the line (or `pstart`) numbers will be printed. The permissible value for `<location>` is one out of the list `left`, `right`, `inner`, or `outer`, for example `\linenummargin{inner}`. The package's default setting is

`\linenummargin{left}`

to typeset the numbers in the left hand margin. You can change this whenever you're not in the middle of making a paragraph.

More precisely, the value of `\linenummargin` used is that in effect at the `\pend` of a numbered paragraph. Apart from an initial setting for `\linenummargin`, only change it after a `\pend`, whereupon it will apply to all following numbered paragraphs, until changed again (changing it between a `\pstart` and `\pend` pair will apply the change to all the current paragraph).

`\firstlinenum` In most cases, you will not want a number printed for every single line of the text. Four L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X counters control the printing of marginal numbers and they can be set by the macros `\firstlinenum{<num>}`, etc. `\firstlinenum` specifies the number of the first line in a section to number, and `\linenumincrement` is the increment between numbered lines. `\firstsublinenum` and `\sublinenumincrement` do the same for sub-lines. Initially, all these are set to 5 (e.g., `\firstlinenum{5}`).

`\linenumberlist` You can define `\linenumberlist` to specify a non-uniform distribution of printed line numbers. For example:

`\def\linenumberlist{1,2,3,5,7,11,13,17,19,23,29}`

to have numbers printed on prime-numbered lines only. There must be no spaces within the definition which consists of comma-separated decimal numbers. The numbers can be in any order but it is easier to read if you put them in numerical order. Either omitting the definition of `\linenumberlist` or following the vacuous definition

`\def\linenumberlist{}`

the standard numbering sequence is applied. The standard sequence is that specified by the combination of the `firstlinenum`, `linenumincrement`, `firstsublinenum`

and `linenumincrement` counter values.

`\leftlinenum`      When a marginal line number is to be printed, there are a lot of ways to  
`\rightlinenum`    display it. You can redefine `\leftlinenum` and `\rightlinenum` to change the  
`\linenumsep`      way marginal line numbers are printed in the left and right margins respectively;  
the initial versions print the number in font `\numlabfont` (described below) at a  
distance `\linenumsep` (initially set to one pica) from the text.

### 3.2 Changing the line numbers

Normally the line numbering starts at 1 for the first line of a section and steps up by one for each line thereafter. There are various common modifications of this system, however; the commands described here allow you to put such modifications into effect.

`\startsub`      You insert the `\startsub` and `\endsub` commands in your text to turn sub-  
`\endsub`          lineation on and off. In plays, for example, stage directions are often numbered  
with sub-line numbers: as line 10.1, 10.2, 10.3, rather than as 11, 12, and 13.  
Titles and headings are sometimes numbered with sub-line numbers as well.

When sub-lineation is in effect, the line number counter is frozen and the sub-line counter advances instead. If one of these commands appears in the middle of a line, it doesn't take effect until the next line; in other words, a line is counted as a line or sub-line depending on what it started out as, even if that changes in the middle.

`\startlock`      The `\startlock` command, used in running text, locks the line number at its  
`\endlock`          current value, until you say `\endlock`. It can tell for itself whether you are in a  
patch of line or sub-line numbering. One use for line-number locking is in printing  
poetry: there the line numbers should be those of verse lines rather than of printed  
lines, even when a verse line requires several printed lines.

`\lockdisp`      When line-number locking is used, several printed lines may have the same line  
number, and you have to specify whether you want the number attached to the  
first printed line or the last, or whether you just want the number printed by them  
all. (This assumes that, on the basis of the settings of the previous parameters,  
it is necessary to display a line number for this line.) You specify your preference  
using `\lockdisp{<arg>}`; its argument is a word, either `first`, `last`, or `all`. The  
package initially sets this as `\lockdisp{first}`.

`\setline`          In some cases you may want to modify the line numbers that are automatically  
`\advanceline`    calculated: if you are printing only fragments of a work but want to print line  
numbers appropriate to a complete version, for example. The `\setline{<num>}` and  
`\advanceline{<num>}` commands may be used to change the current line's num-  
ber (or the sub-line number, if sub-lineation is currently on). They change both  
the marginal line numbers and the line numbers passed to the notes. `\setline`  
takes one argument, the value to which you want the line number set; it must be  
0 or greater. `\advanceline` takes one argument, an amount that should be added  
to the current line number; it may be positive or negative.

`\setlinenum`      The `\setline` and `\advanceline` macros should only be used within a  
`\pstart...pend` group. The `\setlinenum{<num>}` command can be used out-  
side such a group, for example between a `pend` and a `\pstart`. It sets the line

number to  $\langle num \rangle$ . It has no effect if used within a `\pstart... \pend` group

`\linenumberstyle` Line numbers are normally printed as arabic numbers. You can use `\linenumberstyle{\langle style \rangle}`

`\sublinenumberstyle` to change the numbering style.  $\langle style \rangle$  must be one of:

`Alph` Uppercase letters (A...Z).

`alph` Lowercase letters (a...z).

`arabic` Arabic numerals (1, 2, ...)

`Roman` Uppercase Roman numerals (I, II, ...)

`roman` Lowercase Roman numerals (i, ii, ...)

Note that with the `Alph` or `alph` styles, ‘numbers’ must be between 1 and 26 inclusive.

Similarly `\sublinenumberstyle{\langle style \rangle}` can be used to change the numbering style of sub-line numbers, which is normally arabic numerals.

`\skipnumbering` When inserted into a numbered line the macro `\skipnumbering` causes the numbering of that particular line to be skipped; that is, the line number is unchanged and no line number will be printed.

## 4 The apparatus

### 4.1 Commands

`\edtext` Within numbered paragraphs, all footnotes and endnotes are generated by the `\edtext` macro:

`\edtext{\langle lemma \rangle}{\langle commands \rangle}`

The  $\langle lemma \rangle$  argument is the lemma in the main text: `\edtext` both prints this as part of the text, and makes it available to the  $\langle commands \rangle$  you specify to generate notes.

For example:

<code>I saw my friend \edtext{Smith}{</code> <code>\Afootnote{Jones C, D.}}</code> <code>on Tuesday.</code>	1 I saw my friend 2 Smith on Tuesday. 2 Smith] Jones C, D.
---	--

The lemma `Smith` is printed as part of this sentence in the text, and is also made available to the footnote that specifies a variant, `Jones C, D`. The footnote macro is supplied with the line number at which the lemma appears in the main text.

The  $\langle lemma \rangle$  may contain further `\edtext` commands. Nesting makes it possible to print an explanatory note on a long passage together with notes on variants for individual words within the passage. For example:

<pre> \edtext{I saw my friend \edtext{Smith}{\Afootnote{Jones C, D.}} on Tuesday.}{ \Bfootnote{The date was July 16, 1954.} } </pre>	<pre> 1 I saw my friend 2 Smith on Tuesday. 2 Smith] Jones C, D. 1-2 I saw my friend Smith on Tuesday.] The date was July 16, 1954. </pre>
--	--

However, `\edtext` cannot handle overlapping but unnested notes—for example, one note covering lines 10–15, and another covering 12–18; a `\edtext` that starts in the `\lemma` argument of another `\edtext` must end there, too. (The `\lemma` and `\linenum` commands may be used to generate overlapping notes if necessary.)

**Commands used in `\edtext`’s second argument** The second argument of the `\edtext` macro, `\langle commands \rangle`, may contain a series of subsidiary commands that generate various kinds of notes.

<pre> \Afootnote \Bfootnote \Cfootnote \Dfootnote \Efootnote </pre>	<p>Five separate series of the footnotes are maintained; each macro taking one argument like <code>\Afootnote{\langle text \rangle}</code>. When all five are used, the A notes appear in a layer just below the main text, followed by the rest in turn, down to the E notes at the bottom. These are the main macros that you will use to construct the critical apparatus of your text. The package provides five layers of notes in the belief that this will be adequate for the most demanding editions. But it is not hard to add further layers of notes should they be required.</p>
---	---

An optional argument can be added before the text of the footnote. Its value is a comma separated list of options. The available options are:

- `nonum` to disable line numbering for this note.
- `nosep` to disable the lemma separator for this note.

Example: `\Afootnote[nonum]{\langle text \rangle}`.

<pre> \Aendnote \Bendnote \Cendnote \Dendnote \Eendnote </pre>	<p>The package also maintains five separate series of endnotes. Like footnotes each macro takes a single argument like <code>\Aendnote{\langle text \rangle}</code>. Normally, none of them are printed: you must use the <code>\doendnotes</code> macro described below (p.28) to call for their output at the appropriate point in your document.</p> <p>By default, no paragraph can be made in the notes of critical apparatus. You can allow it by adding the options <code>parapparatus</code> when loading the package :</p>
--	---

```
\usepackage[parapparatus]{eledmac}
```

<pre>\lemma</pre>	<p>If you want to change the lemma that gets passed to the notes, you can do this by using <code>\lemma{\langle alternative \rangle}</code> within the second argument to <code>\edtext</code>, before the note commands. The most common use of this command is to abbreviate the lemma that’s printed in the notes. For example:</p>
-------------------	--

<code>\edtext{I saw my friend</code>	1 I saw my friend
<code>\edtext{Smith}{\Afootnote{Jones</code>	2 Smith on Tuesday.
<code>C, D.}} on Tuesday.}</code>	
<code>{\lemma{I \dots\ Tuesday.}}</code>	<u>2 Smith] Jones C, D.</u>
<code>\Bfootnote{The date was</code>	<u>1-2 I ... Tuesday.]</u>
<code>July 16, 1954.}</code>	
<code>}</code>	The date was July 16, 1954.

`\linenum` You can use `\linenum{⟨arg⟩}` to change the line numbers passed to the notes. The notes are actually given seven parameters: the page, line, and sub-line number for the start of the lemma; the same three numbers for the end of the lemma; and the font specifier for the lemma. As the argument to `\linenum`, you specify those seven parameters in that order, separated by vertical bars (the `|` character). However, you can retain the value computed by `eledmac` for any number by simply omitting it; and you can omit a sequence of vertical bars at the end of the argument. For example, `\linenum{||23}` changes one number, the ending page number of the current lemma.

This command doesn't change the marginal line numbers in any way; it just changes the numbers passed to the footnotes. Its use comes in situations that `\edtext` has trouble dealing with for whatever reason. If you need notes for overlapping passages that aren't nested, for instance, you can use `\lemma` and `\linenum` to generate such notes despite the limitations of `\edtext`. If the `⟨lemma⟩` argument to `\edtext` is extremely long, you may run out of memory; here again you can specify a note with an abbreviated lemma using `\lemma` and `\linenum`. The numbers used in `\linenum` need not be entered manually; you can use the 'x-' symbolic cross-referencing commands below (p. 29) to compute them automatically.

Similarly, being able to manually change the lemma's font specifier in the notes might be important if you were using multiple scripts or languages. The form of the font specifier is three separate codes separated by `/` characters, giving the family, series, and shape codes as defined within NFSS.

**Changing the names of these commands** The commands for generating the apparatus have been given rather bland names, because editors in different fields have widely divergent notions of what sort of notes are required, where they should be printed, and what they should be called. But this doesn't mean you have to type `\Afootnote` when you'd rather say something you find more meaningful, like `\variant`. We recommend that you create a series of such aliases and use them instead of the names chosen here; all you have to do is put commands of this form at the start of your file <sup>14</sup>:

```
\newcommandx{\variant}[2][1,usedefault]{\Afootnote[#1]{#2}}
\newcommandx{\explanatory}[2][1,usedefault]{\Bfootnote[#1]{#2}}
\newcommandx{\trivial}[1]{\Aendnote{#1}}
```

<sup>14</sup>We use `\newcommand` and `\newcommandx` instead of classical `\let` command because the edtable environments have to modify the notes definition, and we need to use the newest definition of notes. Read the handbook of `xargs` to know more about `\newcommandx`.

```
\newcommandx{\testimonia}[2][1,usedefault]{\Cfootnote[#1]{#2}}
```

## 4.2 Alternate footnote formatting

If you just launch into `eledmac` using the commands outlined above, you will get a standard layout for your text and notes. You may be happy to accept this at the very beginning, while you get the hang of things, but the standard layout is not particularly pretty, and you will certainly want to modify it in due course. The package provides ways of changing the fonts and layout of your text, but these are not aimed at being totally comprehensive. They are enough to deal with simple variations from the norm, and to exemplify how you might go on to make more significant changes.

`\footparagraph` By default, all footnotes are formatted as a series of separate paragraphs in one column. Three other formats are also available for notes, and using these macros you can select a different format for a series of notes.

- `\footparagraph` formats all the footnotes of a series as a single paragraph;
- `\foottwocol` formats them as separate paragraphs, but in two columns;
- `\footthreecol`, in three columns.

Each of these macros takes one argument: a letter (between **A** and **E**) for the series of notes you want changed. So a text with three layers of notes might begin thus:

```
\footnormal{A}
\footthreecol{B}
\footparagraph{C}
```

This would make the A-notes ordinary, B-notes would be in three columns, and the bottom layer of notes would be formed into a paragraph on each page.

## 4.3 Display options

Since version 1.0, some commands can be used to change the display of the footnotes. All can have an optional argument `[\langle s \rangle]`, which is the letter of the series — or a list of letters separated by comma — depending on which option is applied.

When a length, noted  $\langle l \rangle$ , is used, it can be stretchable: **a plus b minus c**. The final length **m** is calculated by  $\text{\LaTeX}$  to have:  $a - c \leq m \leq a + b$ . If you use relative unity<sup>15</sup>, it will be relative to fontsize of the footnote.

### 4.3.1 Control line number printing

`\numberonlyfirstinline` By default, the line number is printed in every note. If you want to print it only the first time for a value (i.e one time for line 1, one time for line 2 etc.), you can use

---

<sup>15</sup>Like `em` which is the width of a M.

	<code>\numberonlyfirstinline[⟨s⟩]</code> . Use <code>\numberonlyfirstinline[⟨s⟩][⟨false⟩]</code> to cancel it ( <code>&lt;s&gt;</code> can be empty if you want to disable it for every series).
<code>\numberonlyfirstintwolines</code>	Suppose you have a lemma on line 2 and a lemma between line 2 and line 3. With <code>\numberonlyfirstinline</code> , the second lemma is considered to be on the same line as the first lemma. But if you use both <code>\numberonlyfirstinline[⟨s⟩]</code> and <code>\numberonlyfirstintwolines[⟨s⟩]</code> , the distinction is made. Use <code>\numberonlyfirstintwolines[⟨s⟩][⟨false⟩]</code> to cancel it ( <code>&lt;s&gt;</code> can be empty if you want to disable it for every series).
<code>\symlinenum</code>	For setting a particular symbol in place of the line number, you can use <code>\symlinenum[⟨s⟩]{⟨symbol⟩}</code> in combination with <code>\numberonlyfirstinline[⟨s⟩]</code> . From the second lemma of the same line, the symbol will be used instead of line number.
<code>\nonumberinfootnote</code>	You can use <code>\nonumberinfootnote[⟨s⟩]</code> if you don't want to have the line number in a footnote. To cancel it, use <code>\nonumberinfootnote[⟨s⟩][⟨false⟩]</code> .
<code>\pstartinfootnote</code>	You can use <code>\pstartinfootnote[⟨s⟩]</code> if you want to print the pstart number in the footnote, before the line and subline number. Use <code>\pstartinfootnote[⟨s⟩][⟨false⟩]</code> to cancel it ( <code>&lt;s&gt;</code> can be empty if you want to disable it for every series). Note that when you change the lineation system, the option is automatically switched : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you use lineation by pstart, the option is enabled.</li> <li>• If you use lineation by section or by page, the option is disabled.</li> </ul>
<code>\onlypstartinfootnote</code>	In combination with <code>\pstartinfootnote</code> , you can use <code>\onlypstartinfootnote[⟨s⟩]</code> if you want to print only the pstart number in the footnote, and not the line and subline number. Use <code>\onlypstartinfootnote[⟨s⟩][⟨false⟩]</code> to cancel it ( <code>&lt;s&gt;</code> can be empty if you want to disable it for every series).
<code>\beforenumberinfootnote</code>	With <code>\beforenumberinfootnote[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}</code> , you can add some space before the line number in a footnote. If the line number is not printed, the space is not either. The default value is 0 pt.
<code>\afternumberinfootnote</code>	With <code>\afternumberinfootnote[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}</code> you can add some space after the line number in a footnote. If the line number is not printed, the space is not either. The default value is 0.5 em.
<code>\nonbreakableafternumber</code>	By default, the space defined by <code>\afternumberinfootnote</code> is breakable. With <code>\nonbreakableafternumber[⟨s⟩]</code> it becomes nonbreakable. Use <code>\nonbreakableafternumber[⟨s⟩][⟨false⟩]</code> to cancel it ( <code>&lt;s&gt;</code> can be empty if you want to disable it for every series).
<code>\beforesymlinenum</code>	With <code>\beforesymlinenum[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}</code> you can add some space before the line symbol in a footnote. The default value is value set by <code>\beforenumberinfootnote</code> .
<code>\aftersymlinenum</code>	With <code>\aftersymlinenum[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}</code> you can add some space after the line symbol in a footnote. The default value is value set by <code>\afternumberinfootnote</code> .
<code>\inplaceofnumber</code>	If no number or symbolic line number is printed, you can add a space, with <code>\inplaceofnumber[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}</code> . The default value is 1 em.
<code>\boxlinenum</code>	It could be useful to put the line number inside a fixed box: the content of the note will be printed after this box. You can use <code>\boxlinenum[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}</code> to do that. To subsequently disable this feature, use <code>\boxlinenum</code> with length equal to 0 pt. One use of this feature is to print line number in a column, and the note in an other column:

```
\Xhangindent{1em}
\afternumberinfootnote{0em}
\boxlinenum{1em}
```

`\boxsymlinenum`      `\boxsymlinenum[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}` is the same as `\boxlinenum` but for the line number symbol.

### 4.3.2 Separator between the lemma and the note content

`\lemmaseparator`      By default, in a footnote, the separator between the lemma and thenote is a right bracket (`\rbracket`). You can use `\lemmaseparator[⟨s⟩]{⟨lemmaseparator⟩}` to change it. The optional argument can be used to specify in which series it is applied. Note that there is a non-breakable space between lemma and separator, but **breakable** space between separator and lemma.

`\beforelemmaseparator`      Using `\beforelemmaseparator[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}` you can add some space between lemma and separator. If your lemma separator is empty, this space won't be printed. The default value is 0 em.

`\afterlemmaseparator`      Using `\afterlemmaseparator[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}` you can add some space between separator and note. If your lemma separator is empty, this space won't be printed. The default value is 0.5 em.

`\nolemmaseparator`      You can suppress the lemma separator, using `\nolemmaseparator[⟨s⟩]`, which is simply a alias of `\lemmaseparator[⟨s⟩]{}`.

`\inplaceoflemmaseparator`      With `\inplaceoflemmaseparator[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}` you can add a space if no lemma separator is printed. The default value is 1 em.

### 4.3.3 Font style

`\Xnotenumfont`      `\Xnotenumfont[⟨s⟩]{⟨command⟩}` is used to change the font style for line numbers in critical footnotes ; `⟨command⟩` must be one (or more) switching command, like `\bfseries`.

`\Xendnotenumfont`      `\Xendnotenumfont[⟨s⟩]{⟨command⟩}` is used to change the font style for line numbers in critical footnotes. `⟨command⟩` must be one (or more) switching command, like `\bfseries`.

`\notenumfontX`      `\notenumfontX[⟨s⟩]{⟨command⟩}` is used to change the font style for note numbers in familiar footnotes. `⟨command⟩` must be one (or more) switching command, like `\bfseries`.

`\Xnotefontsize`      `\Xnotefontsize[⟨s⟩]{⟨command⟩}` is used to define the font size of critical footnotes of the series. The default value is `\footnotesize`. The `⟨command⟩` must not be a size in pt, but a standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X size, like `\small`.

`\notefontsizeX`      `\notefontsizeX[⟨s⟩]{⟨command⟩}` is used to define the font size of critical footnotes of the series. The default value is `\footnotesize`. The `⟨command⟩` must not be a size in pt, but a standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X size, like `\small`.

`\Xendnotefontsize`      `\Xendnotefontsize[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}` is used to define the font size of end critical footnotes of the series. The default value is `\footnotesize`. The `⟨command⟩` must not be a size in pt, but a standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X size, like `\small`.

#### 4.3.4 Font of the lemma

`\lemmadisablefontselection` By default, font of the lemma in footnote is the same as font of the lemma in the main text. For example, if the lemma is in italic in the main text, it is also in italic in note. The `\Xlemmadisablefontselection[s]` command allows to disable it for a specific series.

`\endlemmadisablefontselection` By default, font of the lemma in endnote is the same as font of the lemma in the main text. For example, if the lemma is in italic in the main text, it is also in italic in note. The command allows `\Xendlemmadisablefontselection[s]` to disable it for a specific series.

#### 4.3.5 Styles of notes content

`\Xhangindent` For critical notes NOT paragraphed you can define an indent with `\Xhangindent[s]{l}`, which will be applied in the second line of notes. It can help to make distinction between a new note and a break in a note. The default value is 0 pt.

`\hangindentX` For familiar notes NOT paragraphed you can define an indent with `\Xhangindent[s]{l}`, which will be applied in the second line of notes. It can help to make a distinction between a new note and a break in a note.

#### 4.3.6 Arbitrary code at the beginning of notes

The three next commands add an arbitrary code at the beginning of notes. As the name's space is local to the notes, you can use it to redefine some style inside the notes. For example, if you don't want the `pstart` number to be in bold, use :

```
\bhookXnote{\renewcommand{\thepstart}{\arabic{pstart}.}}
```

`\bhookXnote` `\bhookXnote[s]{code}` is to be used at the beginning of the critical footnotes.

`\bhooknoteX` `\bhooknoteX[s]{code}` is to be used at the beginning of the familiar footnotes.

`\bhookXendnote` `\bhookXendnote[s]{code}` is to be used at the beginning of the end-notes.

#### 4.3.7 Options for notes in columns

For the following four macros, be careful that the columns are made from right to left.

`\hsizetwocol` `\hsizetwocol[s]{l}` is used to change width of a column when critical notes are displaying in two columns. Default value is `.45 \hsizetwocol`.

`\hsizethreecol` `\hsizethreecol[s]{l}` is used to change width of a column when critical notes are displaying in three columns. Default value is `.3 \hsizethreecol`.

`\hsizetwocolX` `\hsizetwocolX[s]{l}` is used to change width of a column when familiar notes are displaying in two columns. Default value is `.45 \hsizetwocolX`.

`\hsizethreecolX` `\hsizethreecolX[s]{l}` is used to change width of a column when familiar notes are displaying in three columns. Default value is `.3 \hsizethreecolX`.

### 4.3.8 Options for paragraphed footnotes

<code>\afternote</code>	You can add some space after a note by using <code>\afternote[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}</code> . The default value is <code>1em plus.4em minus.4em</code> .
<code>\parafootsep</code>	For paragraphed footnotes (see below), you can choose the separator between each note by <code>\parafootsep[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}</code> . A common separator is a double pipe ( <code>\$  \$</code> ), which you can set by <code>\parafootsep{\$  \$}</code> .
<code>\Xragged</code>	Text in paragraphed critical notes is justified, but you can use <code>\Xragged[⟨s⟩]+L+</code> if you want it to be ragged left, or <code>\Xragged[⟨s⟩]+R</code> if you want it to be ragged right.
<code>\raggedX</code>	Text in paragraphed footnotes is justified, but you can use <code>\raggedX[⟨s⟩]+L+</code> if you want it to be ragged left, or <code>\raggedX[⟨s⟩]+R</code> if you want it to be ragged right.

### 4.3.9 Options for block of notes

<code>\txtbeforeXnotes</code>	You can add some text before critical notes with <code>\txtbeforeXnotes[⟨s⟩]{⟨text⟩}</code> .
<code>\beforeXnotes</code>	You can change the vertical space printed before the rule of the critical notes with <code>\beforeXnotes[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}</code> . The default value is <code>1.2em plus .6em minus .6em</code> . <b>Be careful, the standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X footnote rule, which is used by eledmac, decreases by 3pt. This 3pt decrease is not changed by this command..</b>
<code>\beforenotesX</code>	You can change the vertical space printed before the rule of the familiar notes with <code>\beforenotesX[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}</code> . The default value is <code>1.2em plus .6em minus .6em</code> . <b>Be careful, the standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X footnote rule, which is used by eledmac, decreases 3pt. These 3pt are not changed by this command.</b>
<code>\afterXrule</code>	You can change the vertical space printed after the rule of the critical notes with <code>\afterXrule[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}</code> . The default value is <code>0pt</code> . <b>Be careful, the standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X footnote rule, which is used by eledmac, adds 2.6pt. These 2.6pt are not changed by this command.</b>
<code>\afterruleX</code>	Be careful with this setting: it can place notes by the page number, at the bottom of the page. You can change the vertical space printed after the rule of the familiar notes with <code>\beforenotesX[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}</code> . The default value is <code>0pt</code> . <b>Be careful, the standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X footnote rule, which is used by eledmac, adds 2.6pt. These 2.6pt are not changed by this command.</b>
<code>\preXnotes</code>	Be careful with this setting: it can place notes by the page number, at the bottom of the page. You can set the space before the first series of critical notes printed on each page and set a different amount of space for subsequent the series on the page. You can do it with <code>\preXnotes{⟨l⟩}</code> . Default value is <code>0pt</code> . You can disable this feature by setting the length to <code>0pt</code> . Be careful with this setting: it can place notes by the page number, at the bottom of the page.
<code>\prenotesX</code>	You can want the space before the first printed (in a page) series of familiar notes not to be the same as before other series. Default value is <code>0pt</code> . You can

do it with `\prenotesX{<l>}`. You can disable this feature by setting the length to 0 pt.

`\maxhXnotes` Be careful with this setting: it could make the notes be written on the bottom pages number. By default, one series of critical notes can take 80% of the page size, before being broken to the next page. If you want to change the size use `\maxhXnotes[<s>]{<l>}`. Be careful : the length can't be flexible, and is relative to the the current font. For example, if you want the note to take, at most, 33 of the text height, do `\maxhXnotes{.33\textheight}`.

`\maxhnotesX` `\maxhnotesX[<s>]{<l>}` is the same as previous, but for familiar footnotes.

Be careful with the two previous commands. Actually, for technical purposes, one paragraphed note is considered as one block. Consequently, it can't be broken between two pages, even if you used these commands. The debug is in the todolist.

## 4.4 Page layout

You should set up the page layout parameters, and in particular the `\baselineskip` of the footnotes (this is done for you if you use the standard `\notefontsetup`), before you call any of these macros because their action depends on these; too much or too little space will be allotted for the notes on the page if these macros use the wrong values.<sup>16</sup>

## 4.5 Fonts

One of the most important features of the appearance of the notes, and indeed of your whole document, will be the fonts used. We will first describe the commands that give you control over the use of fonts in the different structural elements of the document, especially within the notes, and then in subsequent sections specify how these commands are used.

For those who are setting up for a large job, here is a list of the complete set of eledmac macros relating to fonts that are intended for manipulation by the user: `\endashchar`, `\fullstop`, `\numlabfont`, and `\rbracket`.

`\numlabfont` Line numbers for the main text are usually printed in a smaller font in the margin. The `\numlabfont` macro is provided as a standard name for that font: it is initially defined as

```
\newcommand{\numlabfont}{\normalfont\scriptsize}
```

You might wish to use a different font if, for example, you preferred to have these line numbers printed using old-style numerals.

`\endashchar` A relatively trivial matter relates to punctuation. In your footnotes, there will sometimes be spans of line numbers like this: 12–34, or lines with sub-line numbers like this: 55.6. The en-dash and the full stop are taken from the same font as the numbers, and it all works nicely. But what if you wanted to use old-style numbers, like 12 and 34? These look nice in an edition, but when you use the fonts provided

<sup>16</sup>There is one tiny proviso about using paragraphed notes: you shouldn't force any explicit line-breaks inside such notes: do not use `\par`, `\break`, or `\penalty=-10000`. If you must have a line-break for some obscure reason, just suggest the break very strongly: `\penalty=-9999` will do the trick. Page 110 explains why this restriction is necessary.

by PLAIN T<sub>E</sub>X they are taken from a math font which does not have the en-dash or full stop in the same places as a text font. If you (or your macros) just typed `\oldstyle 12--34$` or `\oldstyle 55.6$` you would get ‘12”34’ and ‘55▷6’. So we define `\endashchar` and `\fullstop`, which produce an en-dash and a full stop respectively from the normal document font, whatever font you are using for the numbers. These two macros are used in the macros which format the line numbers in the margins and footnotes, instead of explicit punctuation. We also define an `\rbracket` macro for the right square bracket printed at the end of the lemma in many styles of textual notes (including `eledmac`’s standard style). For `polyglossia`, when the lemma is RTL, the bracket automatically switches to a left bracket.

`\select@lemmafnt`

We will briefly discuss `\select@lemmafnt` here because it is important to know about it now, although it is not one of the macros you would expect to change in the course of a simple job. Hence it is ‘protected’ by having the `@`-sign in its name.

When you use the `\edtext` macro to mark a word in your text as a lemma, that word will normally be printed again in your apparatus. If the word in the text happens to be in a font such as italic or bold you would probably expect it to appear in the apparatus in the same font. This becomes an absolute necessity if the font is actually a different script, such as Arabic or Cyrillic. `\select@lemmafnt` does the work of decoding `eledmac`’s data about the fonts used to print the lemma in the main text and calling up those fonts for printing the lemma in the note.

`\select@lemmafnt` is a macro that takes one long argument—the cluster of line numbers passed to the note commands. This cluster ends with a code indicating what fonts were in use at the start of the lemma. `\select@lemmafnt` selects the appropriate font for the note using that font specifier.

`eledmac` uses `\select@lemmafnt` in a standard footnote format macro called `\normalfootfmt`. The footnote formats for each of the layers A to E are `\let` equal to `\normalfootfmt`. So all the layers of the footnotes are formatted in the same way.

## 4.6 Create a new series

If you need more than 5 series of critical footnotes you can create extra series, using `\newseries` command. For example to create G and H series `\newseriesG,H`.

## 5 Verse

In 1992 Wayne Sullivan<sup>17</sup> wrote the EDSTANZA macros [Sul92] for typesetting verse in a critical edition. More specifically they were for handling poetry stanzas which use indentation to indicate rhyme or metre.

With Wayne Sullivan’s permission the majority of this section has been taken from [Sul92]. Peter has made a few changes to enable his macros to be used in the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X `ledmac`, and now in `eledmac`. package.

`\stanza`  
`\&`

Use `\stanza` at the start of a stanza. Each line in a stanza is ended by an

---

<sup>17</sup>Department of Mathematics, University College, Dublin 4, Ireland

ampersand (&), and the stanza itself is ended by putting \& at the end of the last line.

**Be careful: you must have NO space between the end of your verse and & or \&.** In most cases, you will see no difference, but if your verse is exactly the same length as a line, then you will have an empty hanging verse.

`\stanzaindentbase` Lines within a stanza may be indented. The indents are integer multiples of the length `\stanzaindentbase`, whose default value is 20pt.

`\setstanzaindents` In order to use the stanza macros, one must set the indentation values. First the value of `\stanzaindentbase` should be set, unless the default value 20pt is desired. Every stanza line indentation is a multiple of this.

To specify these multiples one invokes, for example  
`\setstanzaindents{3,1,2,1,2}`.

The numerical entries must be whole numbers, 0 or greater, separated by commas without embedded spaces. The first entry gives the hanging indentation to be used if the stanza line requires more than one print line.

If it is known that each stanza line will fit on more than one print line, then this first entry should be 0;  $\TeX$  does less work in this case, but no harm ensues if the hanging indentation is not 0 but is never used.

If you want the hanging verse to be flush right, you can use `\hanginsymbol:` see p. 26.

Enumeration is by stanza lines, not by print lines. In the above example the lines are indented one unit, two units, one unit, two units, with 3 units of hanging indentation in case a stanza line is too long to fit on one print line.

## 5.1 Repeating stanza indents

Since version 0.13, if the indentation is repeated every  $n$  verses of the stanza, you can define only the  $n$  first indentations, and say they are repeated, defining the value of the `stanzaindentsrepetition` counter at  $n$ . For example:

```
\setstanzaindents{5,1,0}
\setcounter{stanzaindentsrepetition}{2}
```

is like

```
\setstanzaindents{0,1,0,1,0,1,0,1,0,1,0}
```

**Be careful: the feature change in eledmac 1.5.1. See Appendix A.2 p. 210.**

If you don't use the `stanzaindentsrepetition` counter, make sure you have at least one more numerical entry in `\setstanzavalues` than the number of lines in the stanza.

If you want to disable this feature again, just put the counter to 0:

```
\setcounter{stanzaindentsrepetition}{0}
```

The macros make no restriction on the number of lines in a stanza. Stanza indentation values (and penalty values) obey T<sub>E</sub>X's grouping conventions, so if one stanza among several has a different structure, its indentations (penalties) may be set within a group; the prior values will be restored when the group ends.

## 5.2 Stanza breaking

`\setstanzapenalties` When the stanzas run over several pages, it is often desirable that page breaks should arise between certain lines in the stanza, so a facility for including penalties after stanza lines is provided. If you are satisfied with the page breaks, you need not set the penalty values.

The command

```
\setstanzapenalties{1,5000,10100,5000,0}
```

results in a penalty of 5000 being placed after the first and third lines of the stanza, and a penalty of −100 after the second.

The first entry “1” is a control value. If it is zero, then no penalties are passed on to T<sub>E</sub>X, which is the default. Values between 0 and 10000 are penalty values; values between 10001 and 20000 have 10000 subtracted and the result is given as a negative penalty. The mechanism used for indentations and penalties requires unsigned values less than 32768. No penalty is placed after the last line, so the final ,0 in then example above could be omitted. The control sequence `\endstanzaextra` can be defined to include a penalty. A penalty of 10000 will prevent a page break; such a penalty is included automatically where there is stanza hanging indentation. A penalty of −10000 (corresponding to the entry value 20000 in this context) forces a page break. Values in between act as suggestions as to the desirability of a page break at a given line. There is a subtle interaction between penalties and *glue*, so it may take some adjustment of skips and penalties to achieve the best results.

## 5.3 Hanging symbol

`\hangingsymbol` It's possible to insert a symbol in each line of hanging verse, as in French typography for ‘[’. To insert in eledmac, redefine macro `\hangingsymbol` with this code:

```
\renewcommand{\hangingsymbol}{[\,}
```

You can also use it to force hanging verse to be flush right:

```
\renewcommand{\hangingsymbol}{\protect\hfill}
```

## 5.4 Long verse and page break

If you want to prevent page breaks inside long verses, use the option `nopbinverse` when loading package, or use `\lednopbinversetrue`. Read 16 p. 38 for further details.

## 5.5 Various tools

<code>\ampersand</code>	If you need to print an & symbol in a stanza, use the <code>\ampersand</code> macro, not <code>\&amp;</code> which will end the stanza.
<code>\endstanzaextra</code>	The macro <code>\endstanzaextra</code> , if it is defined, is called at the end of a stanza. You could define this, for example, to add extra space between stanzas (by default there is no extra space between stanzas); if you are using the <code>memoir</code> class, it provides a length <code>\stanzaaskip</code> which may come in handy.
<code>\startstanzahook</code>	Similarly, if <code>\startstanzahook</code> is defined, it is called by <code>\stanza</code> at the start. This can be defined to do something.
<code>\flagstanza</code>	Putting <code>\flagstanza[⟨len⟩]{⟨text⟩}</code> at the start of a line in a stanza (or elsewhere) will typeset <code>⟨text⟩</code> at a distance <code>⟨len⟩</code> before the line. The default <code>⟨len⟩</code> is <code>\stanzaindentbase</code> .

For example, to put a verse number before the first line of a stanza you could proceed along the lines:

```

\newcounter{stanzanum}
\setcounter{stanzanum}{0}
\newcommand*{\startstanzahook}{\refstepcounter{stanzanum}}
\newcommand{\numberit}{\flagstanza{\thestanzanum}}
...
\stanza
\numberit First line...&
    rest of stanza&

\stanza
\numberit First line, second stanza...

```

## 5.6 Hanging symbol

<code>\hangingsymbol</code>	It's possible to insert a symbol on each line of hanging verse, as in French typography for ‘[’. To insert in <code>eledmac</code> , redefine macro <code>\hangingsymbol</code> with this code:
-----------------------------	---

```
\renewcommand{\hangingsymbol}{[,]}
```

## 5.7 Text before/after verses

It is possible to add text, like a subtitle, before or after verse:

- `\stanza` command can take a optional argument (in brackets). Its content will be printed before the stanza.
- `&` can be replaced by `\newverse` with two optional arguments (in brackets). The first will be printed after the current verse, the second before the next verse.
- `\&` can take a optional argument (in brackets). Its content will be printed after the stanza.

## 6 Grouping

In a `minipage` environment L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X changes `\footnote` numbering from arabic to alphabetic and puts the footnotes at the end of the minipage.

`minipage` You can put numbered text with critical footnotes in a minipage and the footnotes are set at the end of the minipage.

You can also put familiar footnotes (see section 11) in a minipage but unlike with `\footnote` the numbering scheme is unaltered.

`ledgroup` Minipages, of course, aren't broken across pages. Footnotes in a `ledgroup` environment are typeset at the end of the environment, as with minipages, but the environment includes normal page breaks. The environment makes no change to the textwidth so it appears as normal text; it just might be that footnotes appear in the middle of a page, with text above and below.

`ledgroupsize` The `ledgroupsize` environment is similar to `ledgroup` except that you must specify a width for the environment, as with a minipage.

`\begin{ledgroupsize}[\langle pos \rangle]{\langle width \rangle}`.

The required `\langle width \rangle` argument is the text width for the environment. The optional `\langle pos \rangle` argument is for positioning numbered text within the normal textwidth. It may be one of the characters:

l (left) numbered text is flush left with respect to the normal textwidth. This is the default.

c (center) numbered text is in the center of the textwidth.

r (right) numbered text is flush right with respect to the normal textwidth.

Note that normal text, footnotes, and so forth are all flush left.

`\begin{ledgroupsize}{\textwidth}` is effectively the same as `\begin{ledgroup}`

## 7 Crop marks

The `eledmac` package does not provide crop marks. These are available with either the `memoir` class [Wil02] or the `crop` package.

## 8 Endnotes

`\doendnotes` `\doendnotes{\langle letter \rangle}` closes the `.end` file that contains the text of the endnotes, if it's open, and prints one series of endnotes, as specified by a series-letter argument, e.g., `\doendnotes{A}`. `\endprint` is the macro that's called to print each note. It uses `\select@lemmafnt` to select fonts, just as the footnote macros do (see p. 98 above).

As endnotes may be printed at any point in the document they always start with the page number of where they were specified. The macro `\printnpnum{\langle num \rangle}` is used to print these numbers. Its default definition is:

`\newcommand*\printnpnum[1]{p.#1} }`

`\noendnotes` If you aren't going to have any endnotes, you can say `\noendnotes` in your file, before the first `\beginnumbering`, to suppress the generation of an unneeded `.end` file.

## 9 Cross referencing

The package provides a simple cross-referencing facility that allows you to mark places in the text with labels, and generate page and line number references to those places elsewhere using those labels.

`\edlabel` First you place a label in the text using the command `\edlabel{<lab>}`. `<lab>` can be almost anything you like, including letters, numbers, punctuation, or a combination—anything but spaces; you might say `\edlabel{toves-3}`, for example.<sup>18</sup>

`\edpageref` Elsewhere in the text, either before or after the `\edlabel`, you can refer to its location via `\edpageref{<lab>}`, or `\lineref{<lab>}`, `\sublineref{<lab>}`, or `\pstartref{<lab>}`. These commands will produce, respectively, the page, line, sub-line and pstart on which the `\edlabel{<lab>}` command occurred.

An `\edlabel` command may appear in the main text, or in the first argument of `\edtext`, but not in the apparatus itself. But `\edpageref`, `\lineref`, `\sublineref`, `\pstartref` commands can also be used in the apparatus to refer to `\edlabels` in the text.

The `\edlabel` command works by writing macros to `LATEX.aux` file. You will need to process your document through `LATEX` twice in order for the references to be resolved.

You will be warned if you say `\edlabel{foo}` and `foo` has been used as a label before. The `ref` commands will return references to the last place in the file marked with this label. You will also be warned if a reference is made to an undefined label. (This will also happen the first time you process a document after adding a new `\edlabel` command: the auxiliary file will not have been updated yet.)

If you want to refer to a word inside an `\edtext{...}{...}` command, the `\edlabel` should be defined inside the first argument, e.g.,

```
The \edtext{creature\edlabel{elephant} was quite
unafraid}{\Afootnote{Of the mouse, that is.}}
```

`\xpageref` However, there are situations in which you'll want `eledmac` to return a number without displaying any warning messages about undefined labels or the like: if you want to use the reference in a context where `LATEX` is looking for a number, such a warning will lead to a complaint that the number is missing. This is the case for references used within the argument to `\linenum`, for example. For this situation, three variants of the reference commands, with the `x` prefix, are supplied: `\xpageref`, `\xlineref`, `\xsublineref` and `\xpstartref`. They have these limitations:

<sup>18</sup>More precisely, you should stick to characters in the `TEX` categories of 'letter' and 'other'.

- They will not tell you if the label is undefined.
- They must be preceded in the file by at least one of the four other cross-reference commands—e.g., a `\edlabel{foo}` command, even if you never refer to that label—since those commands can all do the necessary processing of the `.aux` file, and the `\x...` ones cannot.
- When `hyperref` is loaded, the `hyperref` link won't be added. (Indeed, it's not a limitation, but a feature.

`\xxref`      The macros `\xxref` and `\edmakelabel` let you manipulate numbers and labels in ways which you may find helpful in tricky situations.

The `\xxref{<lab1>}{<lab2>}` command generates a reference to a sequence of lines, for use in the second argument of `\edtext`. It takes two arguments, both of which are labels: e.g., `\xxref{mouse}{elephant}`. It calls `\linenum` (q.v., p.17 above) and sets the beginning page, line, and sub-line numbers to those of the place where `\edlabel{mouse}` was placed, and the ending numbers to those where `\edlabel{elephant}` occurs.

`\edmakelabel`      Sometimes the `\edlabel` command cannot be used to specify exactly the page and line desired—for example, if you want to refer to a page and line number in another volume of your edition. In such cases, you can use the `\edmakelabel{<lab>}{<numbers>}` macro so that you can 'roll your own' label. For example, if you say '`\edmakelabel{elephant}{10|25|0}`' you will create a new label, and a later call to `\edpageref{elephant}` would print '10' and `\lineref{elephant}` would print '25'. The sub-line number here is zero. It is usually best to collect your `\edmakelabel` statements near the top of your document, so that you can see them at a glance.

`\label`      The normal `\label`, `\ref` and `\pageref` macros may be used within numbered text, and operate in the familiar fashion.

`\ref`

`\pageref`

## 10 Side notes

The `\marginpar` command does not work in numbered text. Instead the package provides for non-floating sidenotes in either margin.

`\ledinnernote`      `\ledleftnote{<text>}` will put `<text>` into the inner margin level with where the command was issued. Similarly, `\ledouternote{<text>}` puts `<text>` in the outer margin.

`\ledouternote`

`\ledleftnote`      `\ledsidenote{<text>}` will put `<text>` into the margin specified by the current setting of `\sidenotemargin{<location>}`. The permissible value for `<location>` is one out of the list `left`, `right`, `inner`, or `outer`, for example `\sidenotemargin{outer}`. The package's default setting is `\sidenotemargin{right}`

`\ledrightnote`

`\ledsidenote`

`\sidenotemargin`

to typeset `\ledsidenotes` in the right hand margin. This is the opposite to the default margin for line numbers. The style for a `\ledsidenote` follows that for a `\ledleftnote` or a `\ledrightnote` depending on the margin it is put in.

If two, say, `\ledleftnote`, commands are called in the same line the second *<text>* will obliterate the first. There is no problem though with having both a left and a right sidenote on the same line.

`\ledlsnotewidth`      The left sidenote text is put into a box of width `\ledlsnotewidth` and the  
`\ledrsnotewidth`      right text into a box of width `\ledrsnotewidth`. These are initially set to the  
                          value of `\marginparwidth`.  
`\rightnoteupfalse`      By default, Sidenotes are placed to align with the last line of the note to which  
`\leftnoteupfalse`      it refers. If you want they to be placed to align with the first line of the note to  
                          which it refers, use `\leftnoteupfalse` (for left note) and/or `\rightnoteupfalse`  
                          (for right note).  
`\ledlsnotesep`          The texts are put a distance `\ledlsnotesep` (or `\ledrsnotesep`) into the left  
`\ledrsnotesep`          (or right) margin. These lengths are initially set to the value of `\linenumsep`.  
`\ledlsnotefontsetup`      These macros specify how the sidenote texts are to be typeset. The initial  
`\ledrsnotefontsetup`      definitions are:  
                          `\newcommand*{\ledlsnotefontsetup}{\raggedleft\footnotesize}% left`  
                          `\newcommand*{\ledrsnotefontsetup}{\raggedright\footnotesize}% right`

These can of course be changed to suit.

`\sidenotesep`          If you have two or more sidenotes for the same line, they are separated by a  
                          comma. But if you want to change this separator, you can redefine the macro  
                          `\sidenotesep`.

## 11 Familiar footnotes

The `footmisc` package [Fai03] by Robin Fairbairns has an option whereby sequential footnote marks in the text can be separated by commas<sup>3,4</sup> like so. As a convenience `eledmac` provides this automatically.

`\multfootsep`          `\multfootsep` is used as the separator between footnote markers. Its default  
                          definition is:  
                          `\providecommand*{\multfootsep}{\textsuperscript{\normalfont,}}`  
                          and can be changed if necessary.  
`\footnoteA`              As well as the standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X footnotes generated via `\footnote`, the pack-  
`\footnoteB`              age also provides five series of additional footnotes called `\footnoteA` through  
`\footnoteC`              `\footnoteE`. These have the familiar marker in the text, and the marked text at  
`\footnoteD`              the foot of the page can be formatted using any of the styles described for the  
`\footnoteE`              critical footnotes. Note that the ‘regular’ footnotes have the series letter at the  
                          end of the macro name whereas the critical footnotes have the series letter at the  
                          start of the name.  
`\footnormalX`            Each of the `\foot...X` macros takes one argument which is the series letter  
`\footparagraphX`        (e.g., B). `\footnormalX` is the typical footnote format. With `\footparagraphX`  
`\foottwocolX`            the series is typeset a one paragraph, with `\foottwocolX` the notes are in two  
`\foothreecolX`          columns, and are in three columns with `\foothreecolX`.  
`\thefootnoteA`           As well as using the `\foot...X` macros to specify the general footnote arrange-  
`\bodyfootmarkA`        ment for a series, each series uses a set of macros for styling the marks. The mark  
`\footfootmarkA`

numbering scheme is defined by the `\thefootnoteA` macro; the default is:

```
\renewcommand*{\thefootnoteA}{\arabic{footnoteA}}
```

The appearance of the mark in the text is controlled by `\bodyfootmarkA` which is defined as:

```
\newcommand*{\bodyfootmarkA}{%
  \hbox{\textsuperscript{\normalfont\@nameuse{@thefnmarkA}}}}
```

The command `\footfootmarkA` controls the appearance of the mark at the start of the footnote text. It is defined as:

```
\newcommand*{\footfootmarkA}{\textsuperscript{\@nameuse{@thefnmarkA}}}
```

There are similar command triples for the other series.

Additional footnote series can be easily defined: you just have to use `\newseries`, defined above (see 4.6 p.24).

## 11.1 Position of the familiar footnotes

`\fnpos` There is a historical incoherence in (e)ledmac. The familiar footnotes are before  
`\mpfnpos` the critical footnotes in a normal page, but after in a minipage or in a ledgroup. However, it is possible to change the relative position of both types of footnotes. If you want to have familiar footnotes after critical footnotes in a normal page, use:

```
\fnpos{critical-familiar}
```

Or, if you want a minipage or ledgroup to have critical footnotes after familiar footnotes, use:

```
\mpfnpos{familiar-critical}
```

## 12 Indexing

`\edindex` L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X provides the `\index{<item>}` command for specifying that *<item>* and the current page number should be added to the raw index (`idx`) file. The `\edindex{<item>}` macro can be used in numbered text to specify that *<item>* and the current page & linenummer should be added to the raw index file.

If the `memoir` class or the `imakeidx` package is used then the macro takes an optional argument, which is the name of a raw index file. For example `\edindex[line]{item}` will use `line.idx` as the raw file instead of `\jobname.idx`.

The minimal version of `imakeidx` package to be used is the version 1.3a uploaded on CTAN on 2013/07/11.

Be careful with the order of package loading and index declaration. You must use this order:

1. Load `imakeidx`.
2. Load `eledmac`.

3. Declare the index with the macro `\makeindex` of `imakeidx`.

`\pagelinesep` The page & linenum combination is written as `page\pagelinesep line`, where the default definition is `\newcommand{\pagelinesep}{-}` so that an item on page 3, line 5 will be noted as being at 3-5. You can renew `\pagelinesep` to get a different separator (but it just so happens that `-` is the default separator used by the MAKEINDEX program).

`\edindexlab` The `\edindex` process uses a `\label/\ref` mechanism to get the correct line number. It automatically generates labels of the form `\label{\edindexlab N}`, where N is a number, and the default definition of `\edindexlab` is:  
`\newcommand*{\edindexlab}{\&}`  
 in the hopes that this will not be used by any other labels (`\edindex`'s labels are like `\label{\&27}`). You can change `\edindexlab` to something else if you need to.

## 13 Tabular material

L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X's normal `tabular` and `array` environments cannot be used where line numbering is being done; more precisely, they can be used but with odd results, so don't use them. However, `eledmac` provides some simple tabulation environments that can be line numbered. The environments can also be used in normal unnumbered text.

`edarrayl` There are six environments; the `edarray*` environments are for math and  
`edarrayc` `edtabular*` for text entries. The final `l`, `c`, or `r` in the environment names indicate  
`edarrayr` that the entries will be flushleft (`l`), centered (`c`) or flushright (`r`). There is  
`edtabularl` no means of specifying different formats for each column, nor for specifying a  
`edtabularc` fixed width for a column. The environments are centered with respect to the  
`edtabularr` surrounding text.

```

\begin{edtabularc}
1 & 2 & 3 \\
a & bb & ccc \\
AAA & BB & C
\end{edtabularc}
```

1	2	3
a	bb	ccc
AAA	BB	C

Entries in the environments are the same as for the normal `array` and `tabular` environments but there must be no ending `\\` at the end of the last row. *There must be the same number of column designators (the  $\mathcal{C}$ ) in each row.* There is no equivalent to any line drawing commands (such as `\hline`). However, unlike the normal environments, the `ed...` environments can cross page breaks.

Macros like `\edtext` can be used as part of an entry.

For example:

```

\beginnumbering
\pstart
\begin{edtabularl}
\textbf{\Large I} & wish I was a little bug\edindex{bug} &
\textbf{\Large I} & eat my peas with honey\edindex{honey} \\

```

```

& With whiskers \edtext{round}{\Afootnote{around}} my tummy &
& I've done it all my life. \\
& I'd climb into a honey\edindex{honey} pot &
& It makes the peas taste funny \\
& And get my tummy gummy.\edindex{gummy} &
& But it keeps them on the knife.
\end{edtabularr}
\pend
\endnumbering

```

produces the following parallel pair of verses.

1	<b>I</b> wish I was a little bug	<b>I</b> eat my peas with honey
2	With whiskers round my tummy	I've done it all my life.
3	I'd climb into a honey pot	It makes the peas taste funny
4	And get my tummy gummy.	But it keeps them on the knife.

`\edtabcolsep` The distance between the columns is controlled by the length `\edtabcolsep`.  
`\spreadmath` `\spreadmath{<math>}` typesets `{<math>}` but the `{<math>}` has no effect on  
`\spreadtext` the calculation of column widths. `\spreadtext{<text>}` is the analagous command  
for use in `edtabular` environments.

<code>\begin{edarrayl}</code>	1 & 2 & & 3 & & 4 & \\	1	2	3	4
	& \spreadmath{F+G+C} & & & & \\			$F + G + C$	
	a & bb & & ccc & & dddd	a	bb	ccc	dddd
<code>\end{edarrayl}</code>					

`\edrowfill` The macro `\edrowfill{<start>}{<end>}{<fill>}` fills columns number `<start>` to `<end>` inclusive with `<fill>`. The `<fill>` argument can be any horizontal 'fill'. For example `\hrulefill` or `\upbracefill`.

Note that every row must have the same number of columns, even if some would not appear to be necessary.

The `\edrowfill` macro can be used in both tabular and array environments. The typeset appearance of the following code is shown below.

```

\begin{edtabularr}
1          & 2      & 3      & 4      & 5      & \\
Q          &        & fd & h      & qwertziohg & \\
v          & wptz   & x    & y      & vb      & \\
g          & nnn    & \edrowfill{3}{5}{\upbracefill} & & & \\
\edrowfill{1}{3}{\downbracefill} &        &      & pq      & dgh      & \\
k          &        & 1    & co      & ghweropjklmnbvcxys & \\
1          & 2      & 3      & \edrowfill{4}{5}{\hrulefill} & & \\
\end{tabularr}

```

1	2	3	4	5
Q		fd	h	qwertziohg
v	wptz	x	y	vb
g	nnn			
k		1	pq	dgh
1	2	3	co	ghweropjklmnbvcxys

You can also define your own ‘fill’. For example:

```
\newcommand*{\upbracketfill}{%
  \vrule height 4pt depth 0pt\hrulefill\vrule height 4pt depth 0pt}
```

is a fill like `\upbracefill` except it has the appearance of a (horizontal) bracket instead of a brace. It can be used like this:

```
\begin{edarrayc}
1 & 2 & & & 3 & 4 & \\
a & \edrowfill{2}{3}{\upbracketfill} & & & d & \\
A & B & & & C & D & \\
\end{edarrayc}
```

1	2	3	4
a	└───		d
A	B	C	D

`\edatleft`      `\edatleft[ $\langle math \rangle\{\langle symbol \rangle\}\langle halfheight \rangle$ ]` typesets the math  $\langle symbol \rangle$  as `\left<symbol>` with the optional  $\langle math \rangle$  centered before it. The  $\langle symbol \rangle$  is twice  $\langle halfheight \rangle$  tall. The `\edatright` macro is similar and it typesets `\right<symbol>` with  $\langle math \rangle$  centered after it.

```
\begin{edarrayc}
& 1 & 2 & 3 & & \\
& 4 & 5 & 6 & & \\
\edatleft[left =]{\{ }\{1.5\baselineskip}
& 7 & 8 & 9 & & \\
\edatright[= right]{\} }\{1.5\baselineskip}
\end{edarrayc}
```

$$left = \left( \begin{array}{ccc} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 7 & 8 & 9 \end{array} \right) = right$$

`\edbeforetab`      `\edbeforetab{\text}\{<entry>\}`, where  $\langle entry \rangle$  is an entry in the leftmost column, typesets  $\langle text \rangle$  left justified before the  $\langle entry \rangle$ . Similarly `\edaftertab{\langle entry \rangle}\{<text>\}`,

where  $\langle entry \rangle$  is an entry in the rightmost column, typesets  $\langle text \rangle$  right justified after the  $\langle entry \rangle$ .

For example:

```
\begin{edarrayl}
      A & 1 & 2 & 3 \\
\edbeforetab{Before}{B} & 1 & 3 & 6 \\
      C & 1 & 4 & \edaftertab{8}{After} \\
      D & 1 & 5 & 0
\end{edarrayl}
```

	$A$ 1 2 3 $B$ 1 3 6 $C$ 1 4 8 $D$ 1 5 0	After
--	--	-------

`\edvertline`      The macro `\edvertline{ $\langle height \rangle$ }` draws a vertical line  $\langle height \rangle$  high (contrast this with `\edatright` where the size argument is half the desired height).

`\edvertdots`

```
\begin{edarrayr}
a & b & C & d & \\
v & w & x & y & \\
m & n & o & p & \\
k & & L & cvb & \edvertline{4pc}
\end{edarrayr}
```

$a$	$b$	$C$	$d$	
$v$	$w$	$x$	$y$	
$m$	$n$	$o$	$p$	
$k$		$L$	$cvb$	

The `\edvertdots` macro is similar to `\edvertline` except that it produces a vertical dotted instead of a solid line.

## 14 Sectioning commands

The standard sectioning command (`\chapter`, `\section` etc.) can be used inside a numbered text. But the line which contains it won't be numbered, and you can't add critical notes inside. In the past (between versions 1.1.0 and 1.12.0), these following commands were provided:

- `\ledchapter[ $\langle text \rangle$ ]{ $\langle critical text \rangle$ }`
- `\ledchapter*`
- `\ledsection[ $\langle text \rangle$ ]{ $\langle critical text \rangle$ }`

- `\ledsection*`
- `\ledsubsection[⟨text⟩]{⟨critical text⟩}`
- `\ledsubsection*`
- `\ledsubsubsection[⟨text⟩]{⟨critical text⟩}`
- `\ledsubsubsection*`

These commands are deprecated, and won't be maintained anymore, because of a bad conception. Since version 1.12.0, you have to use the following commands:

- `\eledchapter[⟨text⟩]{⟨critical text⟩}`
- `\eledchapter*`
- `\eledsection[⟨text⟩]{⟨critical text⟩}`
- `\eledsection*`
- `\eledsubsection[⟨text⟩]{⟨critical text⟩}`
- `\eledsubsection*`
- `\eledsubsubsection[⟨text⟩]{⟨critical text⟩}`
- `\eledsubsubsection*`

Which are equivalent to the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X commands. Each individual command must be called alone in a `\pstart... \pend`:

```
\pstart
\eledsection*{xxxx\ledsidenote{section}}
\pend
\pstart
\eledsubsection*{xxxx\ledsidenote{sub}}
\pend
\pstart
normal text
\pend
```

At the first run, you will see only the text. It's normal. At the second run, you will see the formatting. And consequently, at the third run, you will see the table of contents.

For technical reason, the page break before `\elechapter` can't be added automatically. You have to insert it manually via `\beforeeledchapter`, which must be called outside of a numbering section. If you aren't going to have any `\eledxxx` commands, you can say `\noeledsec` in your file, before the first `\beginnumbering`, to suppress the generation of unneeded `.eledsec` file.

## 15 Quotation environments

The `quotation` and `quote` environment can be used so that same definition/note appears both inside and outside a numbered section. The typographical consequences will resemble the outside numbered sections, based on the styles of the *book* class. However, if you use a package that redefines these environments, these redefinitions won't be available inside the numbering section. You must open the quotation environments inside a `\start-\pend` block, not outside.

In some case, you don't want these environments be redefined in numbered section. You can load the package with the option `noquotation` to prevent this redefinition.

## 16 Page breaks

`Eledmac` and `eledpar` break pages automatically. However, you may sometimes want to either force page breaks or prevent them. The packages provide two macros:

- `\ledpb` adds a page break.
- `\lednopb` prevents a page break, by adding one line to the current page if needed.

**These commands have effect only at the second run.**

These two commands take effect at the beginning of line in which they are called. For example, if you call `\ledpb` at l. 444, the l. 443 will be at the p.  $n$ , and the l. 444 at the p.  $n + 1$ . However you can change the behavior, and decide they will have effect after the end of the line, adding `\ledpbsetting{after}` at the beginning of your file (better: in your preamble). With the previous example, the l. 444 will be at the p.  $n$  and the l. 445 will be at the p.  $n + 1$ .

If you are using `eledpar` to typeset parallel pages you must use `\lednopb` on both sides in the two corresponding lines. This is especially important when you are using stanzas; otherwise the pages will run out of sync. You can also decide to prevent page breaks between two lines of a long verse. To do this, use `nopbinverse` when loading package, or add `\lednopbinversetrue` in the beginning of your file (better: in your preamble). This feature works only with verse of 2 lines, not more. It works at the third run, or at fourth run with `eledpar`. By default, when a long verse runs normally between two pages, a page break will be placed at the beginning of the verse. However, if you have added `\ledpbsetting{after}`, the page break will be placed at the end of the long verse, and the page containing the long verse will have one extra line.

## 17 Miscellaneous

`\extensionchars` When the package assembles the name of the auxiliary file for a section, it prefixes `\extensionchars` to the section number. This is initially defined to be

empty, but you can add some characters to help distinguish these files if you like; what you use is likely to be system-dependent. If, for example, you said `\renewcommand{\extensionchars}{!}`, then you would get temporary files called `jobname.!1`, `jobname.!2`, etc.

`\ifledfinal` The package can take options. The option ‘final’, which is the default is for final typesetting; this sets `\ifledfinal` to TRUE. The other option, ‘draft’, may be useful during earlier stages and sets `\ifledfinal` to FALSE.

`\showlemma` The lemma within the text is printed via `\showlemma{lemma}`. Normally, or with the ‘final’ option, the definition of `\showlemma` is:

```
\newcommand*{\showlemma}[1]{#1}
```

so it just produces its argument. With the ‘draft’ option it is defined as

```
\newcommand*{\showlemma}[1]{\textit{#1}}
```

so that its argument is typeset in an italic font, which may make it easier to check that all lemmas have been treated.

If you would prefer some other style, you could put something like this in the preamble:

```
\ifledfinal\else
  \renewcommand{\showlemma}[1]{\textbf{#1}}% or simply ...[1]{#1}
\fi
```

## 17.1 Known and suspected limitations

In general, `eledmac`’s system for adding marginal line numbers breaks anything that makes direct use of the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X insert system, which includes marginpars, footnotes and floats.

However, you can use both `\footnote` and the familiar footnote series notes in numbered text. A `\marginpar` in numbered text will throw away its contents and send a warning message to the terminal and log file, but will do no harm.

`\parshape` cannot be used within numbered text, except in a very restricted way.

`\ballast` L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X is a three-pass system, but even after a document has been processed three times, there are some tricky situations in which the page breaks decided by T<sub>E</sub>X never settle down. At each successive run, `eledmac` may oscillate between two different sets of page decisions. To stop this happening, should it arise, Wayne Sullivan suggested the inclusion of the quantity `\ballast`. The amount of `\ballast` will be subtracted from the penalties which apply to the page breaks calculated on the *previous* run through T<sub>E</sub>X, thus reinforcing these breaks. So if you find your page breaks oscillating, say

```
\setcounter{ballast}{100}
```

or some such figure, and with any luck the page breaks will settle down. Luckily, this problem doesn’t crop up at all often.

The restriction on explicit line-breaking in paragraphed footnotes, mentioned in a footnote 16, p. 23, and described in more detail on p. 110, really is a nuisance if that’s something you need to do. There are some possible solutions, described by Michael Downes, but this area remains unsatisfactory.

L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X has a reputation for putting things in the wrong margin after a page break. The `eledmac` package does nothing to improve the situation — in fact it just makes it more obvious if numbered text crosses a page (or column) boundary and the numbers are meant to flip from side to side. Try and keep the numbers in the same margin all the time. Another aspect of TeX’s page breaking mechanism is that when numbering lines by the page, the first few numbers after a page break may continue as though the lines were still on the previous page.

`\pageparbreak`

If you can’t resist flipping the numbers or numbering by the page, then you might find that judicious use of `\pageparbreak` may help if numbering goes awry across a page (or column) break. It tries to force TeX into partitioning the current paragraph into two invisibly joined paragraphs with a page break between them. Insert the command between the last word on one page and the first word on the next page. If later you change something earlier in the document the natural page break may be in a different place, and you will have to adjust the location of `\pageparbreak` accordingly.

`\footfudgefiddle`

For paragraphed footnotes TeX has to estimate the amount of space required. If it underestimates this then the notes may get too long and run off the bottom of the text block. `\footfudgefiddle` can be increased from its default 64 (say to 68) to increase the estimate. You have to use `\renewcommand` for this, like:

```
\renewcommand{\footfudgefiddle}{68}
```

Help, suggestions and corrections will be gratefully received.

## 17.2 Use with other packages

Because of `eledmac`’s complexity it may not play well with other packages. In particular `eledmac` is sensitive to commands in the arguments to the `\edtext` and `\*footnote` macros (this is discussed in more detail in section 22, and in particular the discussion about `\no@expands` and `\morenoexpands`). You will have to see what works or doesn’t work in your particular case.

It is possible that `eledmac` and the `hyperref` package may work together. I have not tried this combination but past experience with `hyperref` suggests that cooperation is unlikely; `hyperref` changes many L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X internals and `eledmac` does things that are not normally seen in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

If you want to use the option *bottom* of the `footmisc` package, you must load this package *before* the `eledmac` package.

`\morenoexpands`

You can define the macro `\morenoexpands` to modify macros that you call within `\edtext`. Because of the way `eledmac` numbers the lines the arguments to `\edtext` can be processed more than once and in some cases a macro should only be processed once. One example is the `\colorbox` macro from the `color` package, which you might use like this:

```
... \edtext{\colorbox{mycolor}{lemma}}{\Afootnote{... \colorbox{...}}}
```

If you actually try this<sup>19</sup> you will find L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X whinging ‘Missing { inserted’, and

<sup>19</sup>Reported by Dirk-Jan Dekker in the CTT thread ‘Incompatibility of “color” package’ on 2003/08/28.

then things start to fall apart. The trick in this case is to specify either:

```
\newcommand{\morenoexpands}{\let\colorbox=0}
```

or

```
\makeatletter
\newcommand{\morenoexpands}{\let\colorbox\@secondoftwo}
\makeatother
```

(`\@secondoftwo` is an internal L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X macro that takes two arguments and throws away the first one.) The first incantation lets color show in both the main text and footnotes whereas the second one shows color in the main text but kills it in the lemma and footnotes. On the other hand if you use `\textcolor` instead, like

```
... \edtext{\textcolor{mycolor}{lemma}}{\Afootnote{... \textcolor{...}}}
```

there is no need to fiddle with `\morenoexpands` as the color will naturally be displayed in both the text and footnotes. To kill the color in the lemma and footnotes, though, you can do:

```
\makeatletter
\newcommand{\morenoexpands}{\let\textcolor\@secondoftwo}
\makeatother
```

It took me a little while to discover all this. If you run into this sort of problem you may have to spend some time experimenting before hitting on a solution.

## 17.3 Parallel typesetting

Peter Wilson has developed the `Ledpar` package as an extension to `eledmac` specifically for parallel typesetting of critical texts. This also cooperates with the `babel` / `polyglossia` packages for typesetting in multiple languages. The package has been called *eledpar* since September 2012.

He also developed the `ledarab` package for handling parallel Arabic text in critical editions. However, this package is not maintained by Maïeul Rouquette. You should use the capabilities of a modern TeX processor, like Xe(La)TeX

## 17.4 Notes for EDMAC users

If you have never used EDMAC, ignore this section. If you have used EDMAC and are starting on a completely new document, ignore this section. Only read this section if you are converting an original EDMAC document to use `eledmac`.

The package still provides the original `\text` command, but it is (a) deprecated, and (b) its name has been changed<sup>20</sup> to `\critext`; use the `\edtext` macro instead.

<sup>20</sup>A name like `\text` is likely to be defined by other L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X packages (it certainly is by the AMS packages) and it seems sensible to try and avoid clashes with other definitions.

However, if you do use `\critext` (the new name for `\text`), the following is a reminder.

`\critext` Within numbered paragraphs, footnotes and endnotes are generated by forms of the `\critext` macro:

```
\critext{⟨lemma⟩}⟨commands⟩/
```

The `⟨lemma⟩` argument is the lemma in the main text: `\critext` both prints this as part of the text, and makes it available to the `⟨commands⟩` you specify to generate notes. The `/` at the end terminates the command; it is part of the macro's definition so that spaces after the macro will be treated as significant.

For example:

<pre>I saw my friend \critext{Smith} \Afootnote{Jones C, D.}/ on Tuesday.</pre>	<pre>1 I saw my friend 2 Smith on Tuesday. 2 Smith] Jones C, D.</pre>
---	---

The lemma `Smith` is printed as part of this sentence in the text, and is also made available to the footnote that specifies a variant, `Jones C, D`. The footnote macro is supplied with the line number at which the lemma appears in the main text.

The `⟨lemma⟩` may contain further `\critext` commands. Nesting makes it possible to print an explanatory note on a long passage together with notes on variants for individual words within the passage. For example:

<pre>\critext{I saw my friend   \critext{Smith}{\Afootnote{Jones     C, D.}/ on Tuesday.}   \Bfootnote{The date was     July 16, 1954.} /</pre>	<pre>1 I saw my friend 2 Smith on Tuesday. 2 Smith] Jones C, D. 1–2 I saw my friend Smith on Tuesday.] The date was July 16, 1954.</pre>
---	--

However, `\critext` cannot handle overlapping but unnested notes—for example, one note covering lines 10–15, and another covering 12–18; a `\critext` that starts in the `⟨lemma⟩` argument of another `\critext` must end there, too. (The `\lemma` and `\linenum` commands may be used to generate overlapping notes if necessary.)

The second argument of the `\critext` macro, `⟨commands⟩`, is the same as the second argument to the `\edtext` macro.

It is possible to define aliases for `\critext`, which can be easier to type. You can make a single character substitute for `\critext` by saying this:

```
\catcode'\<=\active
\let<=\critext
```

Then you might say `<{Smith}\variant{Jones}/`. This of course destroys the ability to use `<` in any new macro definitions, so long as it remains in effect; hence it should be used with care.

Changing the character at the end of the command requires more work:

```
\catcode'\<=\active
```

```
\def\xtext#1#2>{\critext{#1}{#2}/}  
\let<=\xtext
```

This allows you to say <{Smith}\Afootnote{Jones}>.

Aliases for `\critext` of the first kind shown here also can't be nested—that is, you can't use the alias in the text that forms the first argument to `\critext`. (See section 22 to find out why.) Aliases of the second kind may be nested without any problem.

If you really have to use `\critext` in any of the tabular or array environments, then `\edtext` must not be used in the same environment. If you use `\critext` in one of these environments then you have to issue the declaration `\usingcritext` beforehand. The declaration `\usingedtext` must be issued to revert to the default assumption that `\edtext` will be used.

## 18 Implementation overview

We present the `eledmac` code in roughly the order in which it's used during a run of  $\text{\TeX}$ . The order is *exactly* that in which it's read when you load The `eledmac` package, because the same file is used to generate this manual and to generate the  $\text{\LaTeX}$  package file. Most of what follows consists of macro definitions, but there are some commands that are executed immediately—especially at the start of the code. The documentation generally describes the code from the point of view of what happens when the macros are executed, though. As each macro is introduced, its name is printed in the margin.

We begin with the commands you use to start and stop line numbering in a section of text (Section 19). Next comes the machinery for writing and reading the auxiliary file for each section that helps us count lines, and for creating list macros encoding the information from that file (Section 21); this auxiliary file will be read at the start of each section, to create those list macros, and a new version of the file will be started to collect information from the body of the section.

Next are commands for marking sections of the text for footnotes (Section 22), followed by the macros that take each paragraph apart, attach the line numbers and insertions, and send the result to the vertical list (Section 23). The footnote commands (Section 24) and output routine (Section 28) finish the main part of the processing; cross-referencing (Section 29) and endnotes (Section 26) complete the story.

In what follows, macros with an `@` in their name are more internal to the workings of `eledmac` than those made up just of ordinary letters, just as in `PLAIN \TeX` (see *The TeXbook*, p.344). You are meant to be able to make free with ordinary macros, but the '`@`' ones should be treated with more respect, and changed only if you are pretty sure of what you are doing.

## 19 Preliminaries

We try and use `l@d` in macro names to help avoid name clashes, but this is not a hard and fast rule. For example, if an original `EDMAC` macro includes `edmac` We will simply change that to `eledmac`.

Announce the name and version of the package, which is targetted for  $\text{\LaTeX}2\epsilon$ .

```
1 (*code)
2 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}
3 \ProvidesPackage{eledmac}[2014/09/12 v1.12.8 LaTeX port of EDMAC]%
```

Generally, these are the modifications to the original. `EDMAC` code:

- Replace as many `\def`'s by `\newcommand`'s as possible to avoid overwriting  $\text{\LaTeX}$  macros.
- Replace user-level  $\text{\TeX}$  counts by  $\text{\LaTeX}$  counters.
- Use the  $\text{\LaTeX}$  font handling mechanisms.

- Use L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X messaging and file facilities.

`\ifledfinal` Use this to remember which option is used, set and execute the options with final  
`\ifparapparatus@` as the default.

```

4 \newif\ifledfinal
5 \newif\ifparapparatus@
6 \newif\ifnoquotation@
7 \newif\iflednopbinverse
8 \newif\ifparledgroup
9 \newif\ifledsecnolinenumber
10 \parapparatus@false
11 \DeclareOption{noquotation}{\noquotation@true}
12 \DeclareOption{final}{\ledfinaltrue}
13 \DeclareOption{draft}{\ledfinalfalse}
14 \DeclareOption{parapparatus}{\parapparatus@true}
15 \DeclareOption{nopbinverse}{\lednopbinversetrue}
16 \DeclareOption{ledsecnolinenumber}{\ledsecnolinenumbertrue}
17 \ExecuteOptions{final}

```

Use the starred form of `\ProcessOptions` which executes options in the order listed in the source file: class options, then listed package options, so a package option can override a class option with the same name. This was suggested by Dan Luecking in the `ctt` thread *Class/package option processing*, on 27 February 2004.

```

18 \ProcessOptions*\relax
19

```

Loading package *xargs* to declare commands with optional arguments. *Etoolbox* is also used to make code clearer - for example, in dynamic command names (which can replace `\csname` etc.). Use *suffix* to declare commands with a starred version, *xstring* to work with strings and *iflutex* to test if LuaLaTeX is running, and *ragged2e* to manage ragging for paragraphed notes.

```

20 \RequirePackage{xargs}
21 \RequirePackage{etoolbox}
22 \reserveinserts{32}
23 \RequirePackage{suffix}
24 \RequirePackage{xstring}
25 \RequirePackage{iflutex}
26 \RequirePackage{ragged2e}

```

`\if@RTL` The `\if@RTL` is defined by the *bidi* package, which is sometimes loaded by *polyglossia*. But we define it if the *bidi* package is not loaded.

```

27 \ifcsdef{if@RTL}{\newif\if@RTL}

```

`\showlemma` `\showlemma{<lemma>}` typesets the lemma text in the body. It depends on the option.

```

28 \ifledfinal
29   \newcommand*{\showlemma}[1]{#1}
30 \else

```

```

31 \newcommand*{\showlemma}[1]{\underline{#1}}
32 \fi
33
\linenumberlist The code for the \linenumberlist mechanism was given to Peter Wilson by
Wayne Sullivan on 2004/02/11.
Initialize it as \empty
34 \let\linenumberlist=\empty
35
\@l@tempcnta In imitation of LATEX, we create a couple of scratch counters.
\@l@tempcntb LATEX already defines \@tempcnta and \@tempcntb but Peter Wilson have
found in the past that it can be dangerous to use these (for example one of the
AMS packages did something nasty to the ccaption package's use of one of these).
36 \newcount\@l@tempcnta \newcount\@l@tempcntb

\ifl@dmemoir Define a flag for if the memoir class has been used.
37 \newif\ifl@dmemoir
38 \ifclassloaded{memoir}{\l@dmemoirtrue}{\l@dmemoirfalse}
39

\ifl@imakeidx Define a flag for if the imakeidx package has been used.
40 \newif\ifl@imakeidx
41 \ifpackageloaded{imakeidx}{\l@imakeidxtrue}{\l@imakeidxfalse}

```

## 19.1 Messages

All the messages are grouped here as macros. This saves TeX's memory when the same message is repeated and also lets them be edited easily.

```

\eledmac@warning Write a warning message.
42 \newcommand{\eledmac@warning}[1]{\PackageWarning{eledmac}{#1}}

\eledmac@error Write an error message.
43 \newcommand{\eledmac@error}[2]{\PackageError{eledmac}{#1}{#2}}

\led@err@NumberingStarted
\led@err@NumberingNotStarted 44 \newcommand*{\led@err@NumberingStarted}{%
\led@err@NumberingShouldHaveStarted 45 \eledmac@error{Numbering has already been started}{\@ehc}}
46 \newcommand*{\led@err@NumberingNotStarted}{%
47 \eledmac@error{Numbering was not started}{\@ehc}}
48 \newcommand*{\led@err@NumberingShouldHaveStarted}{%
49 \eledmac@error{Numbering should already have been started}{\@ehc}}

\led@mess@NotesChanged
50 \newcommand*{\led@mess@NotesChanged}{%
51 \typeout{eledmac reminder: }%
52 \typeout{ The number of the footnotes in this section

```

```

53         has changed since the last run.}%
54 \typeout{ You will need to run LaTeX two more times
55         before the footnote placement}%
56 \typeout{ and line numbering in this section are
57         correct.}}

\led@mess@SectionContinued

58 \newcommand*{\led@mess@SectionContinued}[1]{%
59 \message{Section #1 (continuing the previous section)}}

\led@err@LineationInNumbered

60 \newcommand*{\led@err@LineationInNumbered}{%
61 \eledmac@error{You can't use \string\lineation\space within
62         a numbered section}\@ehc}}

\led@warn@BadLineation
\led@warn@BadLinenummargin
\led@warn@BadLockdisp
\led@warn@BadSublockdisp

63 \newcommand*{\led@warn@BadLineation}{%
64 \eledmac@warning{Bad \string\lineation\space argument}}
65 \newcommand*{\led@warn@BadLinenummargin}{%
66 \eledmac@warning{Bad \string\linenummargin\space argument}}
67 \newcommand*{\led@warn@BadLockdisp}{%
68 \eledmac@warning{Bad \string\lockdisp\space argument}}
69 \newcommand*{\led@warn@BadSublockdisp}{%
70 \eledmac@warning{Bad \string\sublockdisp\space argument}}

\led@warn@NoLineFile

71 \newcommand*{\led@warn@NoLineFile}[1]{%
72 \eledmac@warning{Can't find line-list file #1}}

\led@warn@BadAdvancelineSubline
\led@warn@BadAdvancelineLine

73 \newcommand*{\led@warn@BadAdvancelineSubline}{%
74 \eledmac@warning{\string\advanceline\space produced a sub-line
75         number less than zero.}}
76 \newcommand*{\led@warn@BadAdvancelineLine}{%
77 \eledmac@warning{\string\advanceline\space produced a line
78         number less than zero.}}

\led@warn@BadSetline
\led@warn@BadSetlinenum

79 \newcommand*{\led@warn@BadSetline}{%
80 \eledmac@warning{Bad \string\setline\space argument}}
81 \newcommand*{\led@warn@BadSetlinenum}{%
82 \eledmac@warning{Bad \string\setlinenum\space argument}}

\led@err@PstartNotNumbered
\led@err@PstartInPstart
\led@err@PendNotNumbered
\led@err@PendNoPstart
\led@err@AutoparNotNumbered

83 \newcommand*{\led@err@PstartNotNumbered}{%
84 \eledmac@error{\string\pstart\space must be used within a
85         numbered section}\@ehc}}
86 \newcommand*{\led@err@PstartInPstart}{%
87 \eledmac@error{\string\pstart\space encountered while another

```

```

88         \string\pstart\space was in effect}{\@ehc}}
89 \newcommand*{\led@err@PendNotNumbered}{%
90   \eledmac@error{\string\pend\space must be used within a
91     numbered section}{\@ehc}}
92 \newcommand*{\led@err@PendNoPstart}{%
93   \eledmac@error{\string\pend\space must follow a \string\pstart}{\@ehc}}
94 \newcommand*{\led@err@AutoparNotNumbered}{%
95   \eledmac@error{\string\autopar\space must be used within a
96     numbered section}{\@ehc}}

\led@warn@BadAction
97 \newcommand*{\led@warn@BadAction}{%
98   \eledmac@warning{Bad action code, value \next@action.}}

\led@warn@DuplicateLabel
\led@warn@RefUndefined 99 \newcommand*{\led@warn@DuplicateLabel}[1]{%
100   \eledmac@warning{Duplicate definition of label ‘#1’ on page \the\pageno.}}
101 \newcommand*{\led@warn@RefUndefined}[1]{%
102   \eledmac@warning{Reference ‘#1’ on page \the\pageno\space undefined.
103     Using ‘000’.}}

\led@warn@NoMarginpars
104 \newcommand*{\led@warn@NoMarginpars}{%
105   \eledmac@warning{You can’t use \string\marginpar\space in numbered text}}

\led@warn@BadSidenotemargin
106 \newcommand*{\led@warn@BadSidenotemargin}{%
107   \eledmac@warning{Bad \string\sidenotemmargin\space argument}}

\led@warn@NoIndexFile
108 \newcommand*{\led@warn@NoIndexFile}[1]{%
109   \eledmac@warning{Undefined index file #1}}

\led@warn@AddfootinsXobsolete
\led@warn@Addfootinsobsolete 110 \newcommand{\led@warn@AddfootinsXobsolete}{%
111   \eledmac@warning{AddfootinsX is obsolete in eledmac 1.0. Use newseries instead.}%
112 }%
113 \newcommand{\led@warn@AddfootinsObsolete}{%
114   \eledmac@warning{Addfootins is obsolete in eledmac 1.0. Use newseries instead.}%
115 }%

\led@warn@SeriesStillExist
116 \newcommand{\led@warn@SeriesStillExist}[1]{%
117   \eledmac@warning{Series #1 is still existing !}}%
118 }%

\led@err@ManySidenotes
\led@err@ManyLeftnotes 119 \newcommand{\led@err@ManySidenotes}{%
\led@err@ManyRightnotes 120   \ifledRcol%
```

```

121 \eledmac@warning{\itemcount@space sidenotes on line \the\line@numR\space p. \the\page@numR}%
122 \else%
123 \eledmac@warning{\itemcount@space sidenotes on line \the\line@num\space p. \the\page@num}%
124 \fi%
125 }%
126 \newcommand{\led@err@ManyLeftnotes}{%
127 \ifledRcol@%
128 \eledmac@warning{\itemcount@space leftnotes on line \the\line@numR\space p. \the\page@numR}%
129 \else%
130 \eledmac@warning{\itemcount@space leftnotes on line \the\line@num\space p. \the\page@num}%
131 \fi%
132 }%
133 \newcommand{\led@err@ManyRightnotes}{%
134 \ifledRcol@%
135 \eledmac@warning{\itemcount@space rightnotes on line \the\line@numR\space p. \the\page@numR}%
136 \else%
137 \eledmac@warning{\itemcount@space rightnotes on line \the\line@num\space p. \the\page@num}%
138 \fi%
139 }%

```

@war@FalseverseDeprecated

```

\led@war@ledxxxDeprecated 140 \newcommand{\led@war@FalseverseDeprecated}{%
141 \eledmac@warning{\string\falseverse\space deprecated. Look at \string\newverse\space instead.}%
142 }%
143 \newcommand{\led@war@ledxxxDeprecated}[1]{%
144 \eledmac@warning{\string\led#1\space deprecated. Look at \string\led#1 instead.}%
145 }%

```

\led@err@TooManyColumns

```

\led@err@UnequalColumns 146 \newcommand*\led@err@TooManyColumns{%
\led@err@LowStartColumn 147 \eledmac@error{Too many columns}{\@ehc}}
\led@err@HighEndColumn 148 \newcommand*\led@err@UnequalColumns{%
\led@err@ReverseColumns 149 \eledmac@error{Number of columns is not equal to the number
150 in the previous row (or \protect\\ \space forgotten?)}{\@ehc}}
151 \newcommand*\led@err@LowStartColumn{%
152 \eledmac@error{Start column is too low}{\@ehc}}
153 \newcommand*\led@err@HighEndColumn{%
154 \eledmac@error{End column is too high}{\@ehc}}
155 \newcommand*\led@err@ReverseColumns{%
156 \eledmac@error{Start column is greater than end column}{\@ehc}}

```

err@EdtextWithoutFootnote

```

157 \newcommand{\led@err@EdtextWithoutFootnote}{%
158 \eledmac@error{edtext without Xfootnote. Check syntax.}{\@ehd}%
159 }%

```

rror@ImakeidxAfterEledmac

```

160 \newcommand{\led@error@ImakeidxAfterEledmac}{%
161 \eledmac@error{Imakeidx must be loaded beforeeledmac.}{\@ehd}%
162 }%

```

## 20 Sectioning commands

<code>\section@num</code>	You use <code>\beginnumbering</code> and <code>\endnumbering</code> to begin and end a line-numbered section of the text; the pair of commands may be used as many times as you like within one document to start and end multiple, separately line-numbered sections. L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X will maintain and display a ‘section number’ as a count named <code>\section@num</code> that counts how many <code>\beginnumbering</code> and <code>\resumenumbers</code> commands have appeared; it needn’t be related to the logical divisions of your text.
<code>\extensionchars</code>	Each section will read and write an associated ‘line-list file’, containing information used to do the numbering; the file will be called <code>&lt;jobname&gt;.nn</code> , where <code>nn</code> is the section number. However, you may direct that an extra string be added before the <code>nn</code> in that filename, in order to distinguish these temporary files from others: that string is called <code>\extensionchars</code> . Initially it’s empty, since different operating systems have greatly varying ideas about what characters are permitted in file names. So <code>\renewcommand{\extensionchars}{-}</code> gives temporary files called <code>jobname.-1</code> , <code>jobname.-2</code> , etc.  <pre> 163 \newcount\section@num 164 \section@num=0 165 \let\extensionchars=\empty </pre>
<code>\ifnumbering</code> <code>\numberingtrue</code> <code>\numberingfalse</code>	The <code>\ifnumbering</code> flag is set to <code>true</code> if we’re within a numbered section (that is, between <code>\beginnumbering</code> and <code>\endnumbering</code> ). You can use <code>\ifnumbering</code> in your own code to check whether you’re in a numbered section, but don’t change the flag’s value.  <pre> 166 \newif\ifnumbering </pre>
<code>\ifnumberingR</code> <code>\ifl@dpairing</code> <code>\l@dpairingtrue</code> <code>\l@dpairingfalse</code>	In preparation for the <code>eledpar</code> package, these are related to the ‘left’ text of parallel texts (when <code>\ifl@dpairing</code> is <code>TRUE</code> ). They are explained in the <code>eledpar</code> manual.  <pre> 167 \newif\ifl@dpairing 168 \l@dpairingfalse 169 \newif\ifpst@rtedL 170 \pst@rtedLfalse 171 \newcount\l@dnumpstartsL </pre>
<code>\ifl@dpairingtrue</code> <code>\ifl@dpairingfalse</code> <code>\pst@rtedLtrue</code> <code>\pst@rtedLfalse</code> <code>\l@dnumpstartsL</code> <code>\ifledRcol</code> <code>\ifledRcol@</code>	<code>\ifledRcol</code> is set to <code>true</code> in the <code>Rightside</code> environnement. It must be distinguished from <code>\ifledRcol@</code> which is set to <code>true</code> when a right line is processed, in <code>\Pages</code> or <code>\Columns</code> .  <pre> 172 \newif\ifledRcol 173 \newif\ifledRcol@ </pre>
	The <code>\ifnumberingR</code> flag is set to <code>true</code> if we’re within a right text numbered section.  <pre> 174 \newif\ifnumberingR </pre>

`\beginnumbering` `\beginnumbering` begins a section of numbered text. When it's executed we increment the section number, initialize our counters, send a message to your terminal, and call macros to start the lineation machinery and endnote files.

The initializations here are trickier than they look. `\line@list@stuff` will use all of the counters that are zeroed here when it assembles the line-list and other lists of information about the lineation. But it will do all of this locally and within a group, and when it's done the lists will remain but the counters will return to zero. Those same counters will then be used as we process the text of this section, but the assignments will be made globally. These initializations actually apply to both uses, though in all other respects there should be no direct interaction between the use of these counters and variables in the two processing steps.

For parallel processing :

- zero `\l@dnumpstartsL` — the number of chunks to be processed.
- set `\ifpst@rtedL` to FALSE.

```

175 \newcommand*{\beginnumbering}{%
176   \ifnumbering
177     \led@err@NumberingStarted
178     \endnumbering
179   \fi
180   \global\numberingtrue
181   \global\advance\section@num \@ne
182   \initnumbering@reg
183   \message{Section \the\section@num }%
184   \line@list@stuff{\jobname.\extensionchars\the\section@num}%
185   \l@dend@stuff
186   \setcounter{pstart}{1}
187   \ifl@dpairing
188     \global\l@dnumpstartsL \z@
189     \global\pst@rtedLfalse

```

The tools for section's title commands are called:

- Define old (deprecated) sectioning commands.
- Define an empty list of pstart number where sectioning commands are called.
- Input auxiliary file with the description of section titles.
- Open the same auxiliary file to write in.

```

190 \else
191   \begingroup
192   \initnumbering@sectcmd
193   \fi
194   \gdef\eled@sections@{ }%
195   \if@noeled@sec\else%
196     \makeatletter\inputIfFileExists{\jobname.eledsec\the\section@num}{-}{ }\makeatother%
197     \immediate\openout\eled@sectioning@out=\jobname.eledsec\the\section@num\relax%

```

```

198 \fi%
199 }
200 \newcommand*{\initnumbering@reg}{%
201 \global\pst@rtedLfalse
202 \global\l@dnumpstartsL \z@
203 \global\absline@num \z@
204 \gdef\normal@page@break{}
205 \gdef\l@prev@pb{}
206 \gdef\l@prev@nopb{}
207 \global\line@num \z@
208 \global\subline@num \z@
209 \global\@lock \z@
210 \global\sub@lock \z@
211 \global\sublines@false
212 \global\let\next@page@num=\relax
213 \global\let\sub@change=\relax
214 \resetprevline@
215 \resetprevpage@num
216 }
217

```

`\endnumbering` `\endnumbering` must follow the last text for a numbered section. It takes care of notifying you when changes have been noted in the input that require running the file through again to move everything to the right place.

```

218 \def\endnumbering{%
219 \ifnumbering
220 \global\numberingfalse
221 \normal@pars
222 \ifl@dpairing
223 \global\pst@rtedLfalse
224 \else
225 \ifx\insertlines@list\empty\else
226 \global\noteschanged@true
227 \fi
228 \ifx\line@list\empty\else
229 \global\noteschanged@true
230 \fi
231 \fi
232 \ifnoteschanged@
233 \led@mess@NotesChanged
234 \fi
235 \else
236 \led@err@NumberingNotStarted
237 \fi
238 \autoparfalse
239 \if@noeled@sec\else%
240 \immediate\closeout\eled@sectioning@out%
241 \fi%
242 \ifl@dpairing\else
243 \endgroup

```

```

244 \fi
245 }

```

`\pausenumbering` The `\pausenumbering` macro is just the same as `\endnumbering`, but with the `\ifnumbering` flag set to true, to show that numbering continues across the gap.<sup>21</sup>

```

246 \newcommand{\pausenumbering}{%
247 \ifautopar\global\autopar@pausetrue\fi%
248 \endnumbering\global\numberingtrue}

```

The `\resumenumbering` macro is a bit more involved, but not much. It does most of the same things as `\beginnumbering`, but without resetting the various counters. Note that no check is made by `\resumenumbering` to ensure that `\pausenumbering` was actually invoked.

```

249 \newcommand*{\resumenumbering}{%
250 \ifnumbering
251 \ifautopar@pause\autopar\fi
252 \global\pst@rtedLtrue
253 \global\advance\section@num \@ne
254 \led@mess@SectionContinued{\the\section@num}%
255 \line@list@stuff{\jobname.\extensionchars\the\section@num}%
256 \l@dend@stuff
257 \begingroup
258 \initnumbering@sectcmd
259 \else
260 \led@err@NumberingShouldHaveStarted
261 \endnumbering
262 \beginnumbering
263 \fi}
264
265

```

## 21 Line counting

### 21.1 Choosing the system of lineation

Sometimes you want line numbers that start at 1 at the top of each page; sometimes you want line numbers that start at 1 at each `\pstart`; other times you want line numbers that start at 1 at the start of each section and increase regardless of page breaks. `eledmac` can do it either way, and you can switch from one to the other within one work. But you have to choose one or the other for all line numbers and line references within each section. Here we will define internal codes for these systems and the macros you use to select them.

`\ifbypstart@` The `\ifbypage@` and `\ifbypstart@` flag specify the current lineation system:

<code>\bypstart@true</code>	• line-of-page: <code>bypstart@ = false</code> and <code>bypage@ = true</code> .
<code>\bypstart@false</code>	
<code>\ifbypage@</code>	
<code>\bypage@true</code>	
<code>\bypage@false</code>	

---

<sup>21</sup>Our thanks to Wayne Sullivan, who suggested the idea behind these macros.

- line-of-pstart: `bypstart@ = true` and `bypage@ = false`.

`eledmac` will use the line-of-section system unless instructed otherwise.

```
266 \newif\ifbypage@
267 \newif\ifbypstart@
```

`\lineation` `\lineation{<word>}` is the macro you use to select the lineation system. Its argument is a string: either `page` or `section` or `pstart`.

```
268 \newcommand*{\lineation}[1]{%
269   \ifnumbering
270     \led@err@LineationInNumbered
271   \else
272     \def\@tempa{#1}\def\@tempb{page}%
273     \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
274       \global\bypage@true
275       \global\bypstart@false
276       \pstartinfootnote[] [false]
277     \else
278       \def\@tempb{pstart}%
279       \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
280         \global\bypage@false
281         \global\bypstart@true
282         \pstartinfootnote
283       \else
284         \def\@tempb{section}
285         \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
286           \global\bypage@false
287           \global\bypstart@false
288           \pstartinfootnote[] [false]
289         \else
290           \led@warn@BadLineation
291       \fi
292     \fi
293   \fi
294 \fi}}
```

`\linenummargin` You call `\linenummargin{<word>}` to specify which margin you want your line numbers in; it takes one argument, a string. You can put the line numbers in the same margin on every page using `left` or `right`; or you can use `inner` or `outer` to get them in the inner or outer margins. (These last two options assume that even-numbered pages will be on the left-hand side of every opening in your book.) You can change this within a numbered section, but the change may not take effect just when you'd like; if it's done between paragraphs nothing surprising should happen.

The selection is recorded in the count `\line@margin`: 0 for left, 1 for right, 2 for outer, and 3 for inner.

```
295 \newcount\line@margin
296 \newcommand*{\linenummargin}[1]{%
297   \l@getline@margin{#1}%
```

```

298 \ifnum\@l@dtmpcntb>\m@ne
299   \global\line@margin=\@l@dtmpcntb
300 \fi}}
301 \newcommand*{\l@getline@margin}[1]{%
302   \def\@tempa{#1}\def\@tempb{left}%
303   \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
304     \@l@dtmpcntb \z@
305   \else
306     \def\@tempb{right}%
307     \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
308       \@l@dtmpcntb \@ne
309     \else
310       \def\@tempb{outer}%
311       \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
312         \@l@dtmpcntb \tw@
313       \else
314         \def\@tempb{inner}%
315         \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
316           \@l@dtmpcntb \thr@@
317         \else
318           \led@warn@BadLinenummargin
319           \@l@dtmpcntb \m@ne
320         \fi
321       \fi
322     \fi
323 \fi}
324

```

`\c@firstlinenum` The following counters tell `eledmac` which lines should be printed with line numbers. `firstlinenum` is the number of the first line in each section that gets a number; `linenumincrement` is the difference between successive numbered lines. The initial values of these counters produce labels on lines 5, 10, 15, etc. `linenumincrement` must be at least 1.

```

325 \newcounter{firstlinenum}
326 \setcounter{firstlinenum}{5}
327 \newcounter{linenumincrement}
328 \setcounter{linenumincrement}{5}

```

`\c@firstsublinenum` The following parameters are just like `firstlinenum` and `linenumincrement`, but  
`\c@sublinenumincrement` for sub-line numbers. `sublinenumincrement` must be at least 1.

```

329 \newcounter{firstsublinenum}
330 \setcounter{firstsublinenum}{5}
331 \newcounter{sublinenumincrement}
332 \setcounter{sublinenumincrement}{5}
333

```

`\firstlinenum` These macros can be used to set the corresponding counters.  
`\linenumincrement` 334 \newcommand\*{\firstlinenum}[1]{\setcounter{firstlinenum}{#1}}  
`\firstsublinenum` 335 \newcommand\*{\linenumincrement}[1]{\setcounter{linenumincrement}{#1}}  
`\sublinenumincrement`

```

336 \newcommand*{\firstsublinenum}[1]{\setcounter{firstsublinenum}{#1}}
337 \newcommand*{\sublinenumincrement}[1]{\setcounter{sublinenumincrement}{#1}}
338

```

`\lockdisp` When line locking is being used, the `\lockdisp{<word>}` macro specifies whether a line number—if one is due to appear—should be printed on the first printed line or on the last, or by all of them. Its argument is a word, either **first**, **last**, or **all**. Initially, it is set to **first**.

`\lock@disp` encodes the selection: 0 for first, 1 for last, 2 for all.

```

339 \newcount\lock@disp
340 \newcommand{\lockdisp}[1]{%
341   \l@dgetlock@disp{#1}%
342   \ifnum\@l@dttempcntb>\m@ne
343     \global\lock@disp=\@l@dttempcntb
344   \else
345     \led@warn@BadLockdisp
346   \fi}}
347 \newcommand*{\l@dgetlock@disp}[1]{
348   \def\@tempa{#1}\def\@tempb{first}%
349   \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
350     \@l@dttempcntb \z@
351   \else
352     \def\@tempb{last}%
353     \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
354       \@l@dttempcntb \@ne
355     \else
356       \def\@tempb{all}%
357       \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
358         \@l@dttempcntb \tw@
359       \else
360         \@l@dttempcntb \m@ne
361       \fi
362     \fi
363   \fi}
364

```

`\sublockdisp` The same questions about where to print the line number apply to sub-lines, and these are the analogous macros for dealing with the problem.

```

365 \newcount\sublock@disp
366 \newcommand{\sublockdisp}[1]{%
367   \l@dgetlock@disp{#1}%
368   \ifnum\@l@dttempcntb>\m@ne
369     \global\sublock@disp=\@l@dttempcntb
370   \else
371     \led@warn@BadSublockdisp
372   \fi}}
373

```

`\linenumberstyle` We provide a mechanism for using different representations of the line numbers, not just the normal arabic.

`\linenumrep`

`\linenumr@p`

`\sublinenumberstyle`

`\sublinenumrep`

`\sublinenumr@p`

NOTE: In v0.7 `\linenumrep` and `\sublinenumrep` replaced the internal `\linenumr@p` and `\sublinenumr@p`.

`\linenumberstyle` and `\sublinenumberstyle` are user level macros for setting the number representation (`\linenumrep` and `\sublinenumrep`) for line and sub-line numbers.

```
374 \newcommand*{\linenumberstyle}[1]{%
375   \def\linenumrep##1{\@nameuse{##1}}
376 \newcommand*{\sublinenumberstyle}[1]{%
377   \def\sublinenumrep##1{\@nameuse{##1}}}
```

Initialise the number styles to arabic.

```
378 \linenumberstyle{arabic}
379 \let\linenumr@p\linenumrep
380 \sublinenumberstyle{arabic}
381 \let\sublinenumr@p\sublinenumrep
382
```

<code>\leftlinenum</code> <code>\rightlinenum</code> <code>\linenumsep</code> <code>\numlabfont</code> <code>\ledlinenum</code>	<p><code>\leftlinenum</code> and <code>\rightlinenum</code> are the macros that are called to print marginal line numbers on a page, for left- and right-hand margins respectively. They're made easy to access and change, since you may often want to change the styling in some way. These standard versions illustrate the general sort of thing that will be needed; they're based on the <code>\leftheadline</code> macro in <i>The TeXbook</i>, p. 416.</p>
---	--

Whatever these macros output gets printed in a box that will be put into the appropriate margin without any space between it and the line of text. You'll generally want a kern between a line number and the text, and `\linenumsep` is provided as a standard way of storing its size. Line numbers are usually printed in a smaller font, and `\numlabfont` is provided as a standard name for that font. When called, these macros will be executed within a group, so font changes and the like will remain local.

`\ledlinenum` typesets the line (and subline) number.

The original `\numlabfont` specification is equivalent to the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X `\scriptsize` for a 10pt document.

```
383 \newlength{\linenumsep}
384 \setlength{\linenumsep}{1pc}
385 \newcommand*{\numlabfont}{\normalfont\scriptsize}
386 \newcommand*{\ledlinenum}{%
387   \numlabfont\linenumrep{\line@num}%
388   \ifsublines@
389     \ifnum\subline@num>0\relax
390       \unskip\fullstop\sublinenumrep{\subline@num}%
391     \fi
392   \fi}
393 \newcommand*{\leftlinenum}{%
394   \ledlinenum
395   \kern\linenumsep}
396 \newcommand*{\rightlinenum}{%
397   \kern\linenumsep}
```

```

398 \ledlinenum}
399

```

## 21.2 List macros

Reminder: compare these with the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X list macros in case they would be suitable instead.

We will make heavy use of lists of information, which will be built up and taken apart by the following macros; they are adapted from *The TeXbook*, pp. 378–379, which discusses their use in more detail.

These macros consume a large amount of the run-time of this code. We intend to replace them in a future version, and in anticipation of doing so have defined their interface in such a way that it is not sensitive to details of the underlying code.

```

\list@create The \list@create macro creates a new list. In this version of eledmac this macro
              doesn't do anything beyond initializing an empty list macro, but in future versions
              it may do more.
400 \newcommand*{\list@create}[1]{\global\let#1=\empty}

\list@clear The \list@clear macro just initializes a list to the empty list; in this version of
            eledmac it is no different from \list@create.
401 \newcommand*{\list@clear}[1]{\global\let#1=\empty}

\xright@appenditem \xright@appenditem expands an item and appends it to the right end of a list
\led@toksa         macro. We want the expansion because we'll often be using this to store the
\led@toksb         current value of a counter. \xright@appenditem creates global control sequences,
                  like \xdef, and uses two temporary token-list registers, \@toksa and \@toksb.
402 \newtoks\led@toksa \newtoks\led@toksb
403 \global\led@toksa={\}
404 \long\def\xright@appenditem#1\to#2{%
405   \global\led@toksb=\expandafter{#2}%
406   \xdef#2{\the\led@toksb\the\led@toksa\expandafter{#1}}%
407   \global\led@toksb={}}

\xleft@appenditem \xleft@appenditem expands an item and appends it to the left end of a list macro;
                  it is otherwise identical to \xright@appenditem.
408 \long\def\xleft@appenditem#1\to#2{%
409   \global\led@toksb=\expandafter{#2}%
410   \xdef#2{\the\led@toksa\expandafter{#1}\the\led@toksb}%
411   \global\led@toksb={}}

\gl@p The \gl@p macro removes the leftmost item from a list and places it in a control
       sequence. You say \gl@p\l\to\z (where \l is the list macro, and \z receives the
       left item). \l is assumed nonempty: say \ifx\l\empty to test for an empty \l.
       The control sequences created by \gl@p are all global.
412 \def\gl@p#1\to#2{\expandafter\gl@poff#1\gl@poff#1#2}
413 \long\def\gl@poff\#1#2\gl@poff#3#4{\gdef#4{#1}\gdef#3{#2}}
414

```

## 21.3 Line-number counters and lists

Footnote references using line numbers rather than symbols can't be generated in one pass, because we don't know the line numbers till we ship out the pages. It would be possible if footnotes were never keyed to more than one line; but some footnotes gloss passages that may run for several lines, and they must be tied to the first line of the passage glossed. And even one-line passages require two passes if we want line-per-page numbering rather than line-per-section numbering.

So we run  $\text{\LaTeX}$  over the text several times, and each time save information about page and line numbers in a 'line-list file' to be used during the next pass. At the start of each section—whenever `\beginnumbering` is executed—the line-list file for that section is read, and the information from it is encoded into a few list macros.

We need first to define the different line numbers that are involved in these macros, and the associated counters.

`\line@num` The count `\line@num` stores the line number that's used in marginal line numbering and in notes: counting either from the start of the page or from the start of the section, depending on your choice for this section. This may be qualified by `\subline@num`.

415 `\newcount\line@num`

`\subline@num` The count `\subline@num` stores a sub-line number that qualifies `\line@num`. For example, line 10 might have sub-line numbers 1, 2 and 3, which might be printed as lines 10.1, 10.2, 10.3.

416 `\newcount\subline@num`

`\ifsublines@` We maintain an associated flag, `\ifsublines@`, to tell us whether we're within a sub-line range or not.

`\sublines@true` You may wonder why we don't just use the value of `\subline@num` to determine this—treating anything greater than 0 as an indication that sub-lineation is on. We need a separate flag because sub-lineation can be used together with line-number locking in odd ways: several pieces of a logical line might be interrupted by pieces of sub-lineated text, and those sub-line numbers should not return to zero until the next change in the major line number. This is common in the typesetting of English Renaissance verse drama, in which stage directions are given sub-line numbers: a single line of verse may be interrupted by several stage directions.

417 `\newif\ifsublines@`

`\absline@num` The count `\absline@num` stores the absolute number of lines since the start of the section: that is, the number we've actually printed, no matter what numbers we attached to them. This value is never printed on an output page, though `\line@num` will often be equal to it. It is used internally to keep track of where notes are to appear and where new pages start: using this value rather than `\line@num` is a lot simpler, because it doesn't depend on the lineation system in use.

418 `\newcount\absline@num`

We'll be calling `\absline@num` numbers 'absolute' numbers, and `\line@num` and `\subline@num` numbers 'visible' numbers.

`\@lock`    The counts `\@lock` and `\sub@lock` tell us the state of line-number and sub-line-number locking. 0 means we're not within a locked set of lines; 1 means we're at the first line in the set; 2, at some intermediate line; and 3, at the last line.

419 `\newcount\@lock`

420 `\newcount\sub@lock`

`\line@list`    Now we can define the list macros that will be created from the line-list file. We will maintain the following lists:

`\insertlines@list`  
`\actionlines@list`  
`\actions@list`

- `\line@list`: the page and line numbers for every lemma marked by `\edtext`. There are seven pieces of information, separated by vertical bars:

1. the starting page,
2. line, and
3. sub-line numbers, followed by the
4. ending page,
5. line, and
6. sub-line numbers, and then the
7. font specifier for the lemma.

These line numbers are all visible numbers. The font specifier is a set of four codes for font encoding, family, series, and shape, separated by / characters. Thus a lemma that started on page 23, line 35 and went on until page 24, line 3 (with no sub-line numbering), and was typeset in a normal roman font would have a line list entry like this:

23|35|0|24|3|0|OT1/cm/r/n.

There is one item in this list for every lemma marked by `\edtext`, even if there are several notes to that lemma, or no notes at all. `\edtext` reads the data in this list, making it available for use in the text of notes.

- `\insertlines@list`: the line numbers of lines that have footnotes or other insertions. These are the absolute numbers where the corresponding lemmas begin. This list contains one entry for every footnote in the section; one lemma may contribute no footnotes or many footnotes. This list is used by `\add@inserts` within `\do@line`, to tell it where to insert notes.
- `\actionlines@list`: a list of absolute line numbers at which we are to perform special actions; these actions are specified by the `\actions@list` list defined below.
- `\actions@list`: action codes corresponding to the line numbers in `\actionlines@list`. These codes tell `eledmac` what action it's supposed to take at each of these lines. One action, the page-start action, is generated behind the scenes by `eledmac` itself; the others, for specifying sub-lineation, line-number locking, and line-number alteration, are generated only by explicit commands in your input file. The page-start and line-number-alteration actions require arguments, to specify the new values for the page or line numbers; instead of

storing those arguments in another list, we have chosen the action-code values so that they can encode both the action and the argument in these cases. Action codes greater than  $-1000$  are page-start actions, and the code value is the page number; action codes less than  $-5000$  specify line numbers, and the code value is a transformed version of the line number; action codes between these two values specify other actions which require no argument.

Here is the full list of action codes and their meanings:

Any number greater than  $-1000$  is a page-start action: the line number associated with it is the first line on a page, and the action number is the page number. (The cutoff of  $-1000$  is chosen because negative page-number values are used by some macro packages; we assume that page-number values less than  $-1000$  are not common.) Page-start action codes are added to the list by the `\page@action` macro, which is (indirectly) triggered by the workings of the `\page@start` macro; that macro should always be called in the output routine, just before the page contents are assembled. `eledmac` calls it in `\pagecontents`.

The action code  $-1001$  specifies the start of sub-lineation: meaning that, starting with the next line, we should be advancing `\subline@num` at each start-of-line command, rather than `\line@num`.

The action code  $-1002$  specifies the end of sub-lineation. At the next start-of-line, we should clear the sub-line counter and start advancing the line number. The action codes for starting and ending sub-lineation are added to the list by the `\sub@action` macro, as called to implement the `\startsub` and `\endsub` macros.

The action code  $-1003$  specifies the start of line number locking. After the number for the current line is computed, it will remain at that value through the next line that has an action code to end locking.

The action code  $-1004$  specifies the end of line number locking.

The action code  $-1005$  specifies the start of sub-line number locking. After the number for the current sub-line is computed, it will remain at that value through the next sub-line that has an action code to end locking.

The action code  $-1006$  specifies the end of sub-line number locking.

The four action codes for line and sub-line number locking are added to the list by the `\do@lockon` and `\do@lockoff` macros, as called to implement the `\startlock` and `\endlock` macros.

An action code of  $-5000$  or less sets the current visible line number (either the line number or the sub-line number, whichever is currently being advanced) to a specific positive value. The value of the code is  $-(5000 + n)$ , where  $n$  is the value (always  $\geq 0$ ) assigned to the current line number. Action codes of this type are added to the list by the `\set@line@action` macro, as called to implement the `\advance@line` and `\set@line` macros: this action only occurs when the user has specified some change to the line numbers using those macros. Normally `eledmac` computes the visible line numbers

from the absolute line numbers with reference to the other action codes and the settings they invoke; it doesn't require an entry in the action-code list for every line.

Here are the commands to create these lists:

```

421 \list@create{\line@list}
422 \list@create{\insertlines@list}
423 \list@create{\actionlines@list}
424 \list@create{\actions@list}
425
\page@num We'll need some counts while we read the line-list, for the page number and the
\endpage@num ending page, line, and sub-line numbers. Some of these will be used again later
\endline@num on, when we are acting on the data in our list macros.
\endsubline@num
426 \newcount\page@num
427 \newcount\endpage@num
428 \newcount\endline@num
429 \newcount\endsubline@num

\ifnoteschanged@ If the number of the footnotes in a section is different from what it was during
\noteschanged@true the last run, or if this is the very first time you've run LATEX, on this file, the
\noteschanged@false information from the line-list used to place the notes will be wrong, and some
notes will probably be misplaced. When this happens, we prefer to give a single
error message for the whole section rather than messages at every point where we
notice the problem, because we don't really know where in the section notes were
added or removed, and the solution in any case is simply to run LATEX two more
times; there's no fix needed to the document. The \ifnoteschanged@ flag is set
if such a change in the number of notes is discovered at any point.
430 \newif\ifnoteschanged@

\resetprevline@ Inside the apparatus, at each note, the line number is stored in a macro called
\prevlineX, where X is the letter of the current series. This macro is called when
using \numberonlyfirstinline. This macro must be reset at the same time as
the line number. The \resetprevline@ does this resetting for every series.

\resetprevline@
431 \newcommand*{\resetprevline@}{%
432 \def\do##1{\global\csundef{prevline##1}}%
433 \dolistloop{\@series}%
434 }

\resetprevpage@num Inside the apparatus, at each note, the page number is stored in a macro called
\prevpageX@num, where X is the letter of the current series. This macro is called
when using \parafootsep. This macro must be reset at the beginning of each
numbered section The \resetprevpage@ command resets this macro for every
series.
```

`\resetprevpage@`

```
435 \newcommand*{\resetprevpage@num}{%
436   \def\do##1{\ifcsdef{prevpage##1@num}{\global\csname prevpage##1@num\endcsname=0}{}}%
437   \dolistloop{\@series}%
438 }
```

## 21.4 Reading the line-list file

`\read@linelist` `\read@linelist{<file>}` is the control sequence that's called by `\beginnumbering` (via `\line@list@stuff`) to open and process a line-list file; its argument is the name of the file.

```
439 \newread\@inputcheck
440 \newcommand*{\read@linelist}[1]{%
441   \list@clearing@reg
```

When the file is there we start a new group and make some special definitions we'll need to process it: it's a sequence of `TEX` commands, but they require a few special settings. We make `[` and `]` become grouping characters: they're used that way in the line-list file, because we need to write them out one at a time rather than in balanced pairs, and it's easier to just use something other than real braces. `@` must become a letter, since this is run in the ordinary `LATEX` context. We ignore carriage returns, since if we're in horizontal mode they can get interpreted as spaces to be printed.

Our line, page, and line-locking counters were already zeroed by `\line@list@stuff` if this is being called from within `\beginnumbering`; sub-lineation will be turned off as well in that case. On the other hand, if this is being called from `\resumenummering`, those things should still have the values they had when `\pausenumbering` was executed.

If the file is not there, we print an informative message.

Now, after these preliminaries, we start interpreting the file.

```
442 \get@linelistfile{#1}%
443 \endgroup
```

When the reading is done, we're all through with the line-list file. All the information we needed from it will now be encoded in our list macros.

Finally, we initialize the `\next@actionline` and `\next@action` macros, which specify where and what the next action to be taken is.

```
444 \global\page@num=\m@ne
445 \ifx\actionlines@list\empty
446   \gdef\next@actionline{1000000}%
447 \else
448   \glp\actionlines@list\to\next@actionline
449   \glp\actions@list\to\next@action
450 \fi}
451
```

`\list@clearing@reg` Clears the lists for `\read@linelist`

```

452 \newcommand*{\list@clearing@reg}{%
453   \list@clear{\line@list}%
454   \list@clear{\insertlines@list}%
455   \list@clear{\actionlines@list}%
456   \list@clear{\actions@list}}

```

`\get@linelistfile` `eledmac` can take advantage of the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X ‘safe file input’ macros to get the line-list file.

```

457 \newcommand*{\get@linelistfile}[1]{%
458   \InputIfFileExists{#1}{%
459     \global\noteschanged@false
460     \begingroup
461       \catcode'\[=1 \catcode'\]=2
462       \makeatletter \catcode'\^M=9}{%
463     \led@warn@NoLineFile{#1}%
464     \global\noteschanged@true
465     \begingroup}%
466 }
467

```

This version of `\read@linelist` creates list macros containing data for the entire section, so they could get rather large. It would be no more difficult to read the line-list file incrementally rather than all at once: we could read, at the start of each paragraph, only the commands relating to that paragraph. But this would require that we have two line-lists open at once, one for reading, one for writing, and on systems without version numbers we’d have to do some file renaming outside of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X for that to work. We’ve retained this slower approach to avoid that sort of hacking about, but have provided the `\pausenumbering` and `\resumenumbering` macros to help you if you run into macro memory limitations (see p. 12 above).

## 21.5 Commands within the line-list file

This section defines the commands that can appear within a line-list file. They all have very short names because we are likely to be writing very large numbers of them out. One macro, `\@nl`, is especially short, since it will be written to the line-list file once for every line of text in a numbered section. (Another of these commands, `\@lab`, will be introduced in a later section, among the cross-referencing commands it is associated with.)

When these commands modify the various page and line counters, they deliberately do not say `\global`. This is because we want them to affect only the counter values within the current group when nested calls of `\@ref` occur. (The code assumes throughout that the value of `\globaldefs` is zero.)

The macros with **action** in their names contain all the code that modifies the action-code list: again, this is so that they can be turned off easily for nested calls of `\@ref`.

```

\@nl \@nl does everything related to the start of a new line of numbered text.
\@nl@reg

```

In order to get the `\setlinenum` to work Peter Wilson had to slip in some new code at the start of the macro, to get the timing of the actions correct. The problem was that his original naive implementation of `\setlinenum` had a unfortunate tendency to change the number of the last line of the *preceding* paragraph. The new code is sort of based on the page number handling and `\setline`. It seems that a lot of fiddling with the line number internals is required.

In November 2004 in order to accurately determine page numbers Peter Wilson added these to the macro. It is now:

```
\@nl{<page counter number>}{<printed page number>}
```

I don't (yet) use the printed number (i.e., the `\thepage`) but it may come in handy later. The macro `\fix@page` checks if a new page has started.

```
468 \newcommand{\@nl}[2]{%
469   \fix@page{#1}%
470   \@nl@reg}
471 \newcommand*{\@nl@reg}{%
472   \ifx\l@dchset@num\relax \else
473     \advance\absline@num \@ne
474     \set@line@action
475     \let\l@dchset@num=\relax
476     \advance\absline@num \m@ne
477     \advance\line@num \m@ne
478   \fi
```

First increment the absolute line-number, and perform deferred actions relating to page starts and sub-lines.

```
479   \advance\absline@num \@ne
480     \ifx\next@page@num\relax \else
481       \page@action
482       \let\next@page@num=\relax
483     \fi
484   \ifx\sub@change\relax \else
485     \ifnum\sub@change>\z@
486       \sublines@true
487     \else
488       \sublines@false
489     \fi
490     \sub@action
491     \let\sub@change=\relax
492   \fi
```

Fix the lock counters, if necessary. A value of 1 is advanced to 2; 3 advances to 0; other values are unchanged.

```
493     \ifcase\@lock
494       \or
495         \@lock \tw@
496       \or \or
497         \@lock \z@
498     \fi
499     \ifcase\sub@lock
```

```

500         \or
501         \sub@lock \tw@
502         \or \or
503         \sub@lock \z@
504     \fi
    Now advance the visible line number, unless it's been locked.
505     \ifsublines@
506         \ifnum\sub@lock<\tw@
507             \advance\subline@num \@ne
508         \fi
509     \else
510         \ifnum\@lock<\tw@
511             \advance\line@num \@ne \subline@num \z@
512         \fi
513     \fi}
514

```

`\last@page@num` `\fix@page` basically replaces `\@page`. It determines whether or not a new page has been started, based on the page values held by `\@nl`.

```

515 \newcount\last@page@num
516 \last@page@num=-10000
517 \newcommand*{\fix@page}[1]{%
518     \ifnum #1=\last@page@num
519     \else
520         \ifbypage@
521             \line@num=\z@ \subline@num=\z@
522         \fi
523         \page@num=#1\relax
524         \last@page@num=#1\relax
525         \def\next@page@num{#1}%
526         \listcsxadd{normal@page@break}{\the\absline@num}
527     \fi}
528

```

`\@pend` These don't do anything at this point, but will have been added to the auxiliary file(s) if the `eledpar` package has been used. They are just here to stop `eledmac` from moaning if the `eledpar` is used for one run and then not for the following one.

```

\@lopL
\@lopR
529 \newcommand*{\@pend}[1]{%
530 \newcommand*{\@pendR}[1]{%
531 \newcommand*{\@lopL}[1]{%
532 \newcommand*{\@lopR}[1]{%
533

```

`\sub@on` The `\sub@on` and `\sub@off` macros turn sub-lineation on and off: but not directly, since such changes don't really take effect until the next line of text. Instead they set a flag that notifies `\@nl` of the necessary action.

```

534 \newcommand*{\sub@on}{\ifsublines@

```

```

535     \let\sub@change=\relax
536   \else
537     \def\sub@changes{1}%
538   \fi}
539 \newcommand*{\sub@off}{\ifsublines@
540   \def\sub@changes{-1}%
541   \else
542     \let\sub@change=\relax
543   \fi}
544

```

**\@adv** The `\@adv{<num>}` macro advances the current visible line number by the amount specified as its argument. This is used to implement `\advanceline`.

```

545 \newcommand*{\@adv}[1]{\ifsublines@
546   \advance\subline@num by #1\relax
547   \ifnum\subline@num<\z@
548     \led@warn@BadAdvancelineSubline
549     \subline@num \z@
550   \fi
551   \else
552     \advance\line@num by #1\relax
553     \ifnum\line@num<\z@
554       \led@warn@BadAdvancelineLine
555       \line@num \z@
556     \fi
557   \fi
558   \set@line@action}
559

```

**\@set** The `\@set{<num>}` macro sets the current visible line number to the value specified as its argument. This is used to implement `\setline`.

```

560 \newcommand*{\@set}[1]{\ifsublines@
561   \subline@num=#1\relax
562   \else
563     \line@num=#1\relax
564   \fi
565   \set@line@action}
566

```

**\l@d@set** The `\l@d@set{<num>}` macro sets the line number for the next `\pstart...` to the value specified as its argument. This is used to implement `\setlinenum`.

`\l@dchset@num` is a flag to the `\@l` macro. If it is not `\relax` then a linenum change is to be done.

```

567 \newcommand*{\l@d@set}[1]{%
568   \line@num=#1\relax
569   \advance\line@num \@ne
570   \def\l@dchset@num{#1}}
571 \let\l@dchset@num\relax
572

```

`\page@action` `\page@action` adds an entry to the action-code list to change the page number.

```
573 \newcommand*{\page@action}{%
574   \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@num}\to\actionlines@list
575   \xright@appenditem{\next@page@num}\to\actions@list}
```

`\set@line@action` `\set@line@action` adds an entry to the action-code list to change the visible line number.

```
576 \newcommand*{\set@line@action}{%
577   \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@num}\to\actionlines@list
578   \ifsublines@
579     \l@ldtempcnta=-\subline@num
580   \else
581     \l@ldtempcnta=-\line@num
582   \fi
583   \advance\l@ldtempcnta by -5000
584   \xright@appenditem{\the\l@ldtempcnta}\to\actions@list}
```

`\sub@action` `\sub@action` adds an entry to the action-code list to turn sub-lineation on or off, according to the current value of the `\ifsublines@` flag.

```
585 \newcommand*{\sub@action}{%
586   \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@num}\to\actionlines@list
587   \ifsublines@
588     \xright@appenditem{-1001}\to\actions@list
589   \else
590     \xright@appenditem{-1002}\to\actions@list
591   \fi}
```

`\lock@on` `\lock@on` adds an entry to the action-code list to turn line number locking on.

`\do@lockon` The current setting of the sub-lineation flag tells us whether this applies to line numbers or sub-line numbers.

Adding commands to the action list is slow, and it's very often the case that a lock-on command is immediately followed by a lock-off command in the line-list file, and therefore really does nothing. We use a look-ahead scheme here to detect such pairs, and add nothing to the line-list in those cases.

```
592 \newcommand*{\lock@on}{\futurelet\next\do@lockon}
593 \newcommand*{\do@lockon}{%
594   \ifx\next\lock@off
595     \global\let\lock@off=\skip@lockoff
596   \else
597     \do@lockonL
598   \fi}
599 \newcommand*{\do@lockonL}{%
600   \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@num}\to\actionlines@list
601   \ifsublines@
602     \xright@appenditem{-1005}\to\actions@list
603     \ifnum\sub@lock=\z@
604       \sub@lock \@ne
605     \else
```

```

606     \ifnum\sub@lock=\thr@@
607         \sub@lock \@ne
608     \fi
609 \fi
610 \else
611     \xright@appenditem{-1003}\to\actions@list
612     \ifnum\@lock=\z@
613         \@lock \@ne
614     \else
615         \ifnum\@lock=\thr@@
616             \@lock \@ne
617         \fi
618     \fi
619 \fi}
620

```

`\lock@off` `\lock@off` adds an entry to the action-code list to turn line number locking off.

```

\do@lockoff 621 \newcommand*{\do@lockoffL}{%
\do@lockoffL 622 \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@num}\to\actionlines@list
\skip@lockoff 623 \ifsublines@
624     \xright@appenditem{-1006}\to\actions@list
625     \ifnum\sub@lock=\tw@
626         \sub@lock \thr@@
627     \else
628         \sub@lock \z@
629     \fi
630 \else
631     \xright@appenditem{-1004}\to\actions@list
632     \ifnum\@lock=\tw@
633         \@lock \thr@@
634     \else
635         \@lock \z@
636     \fi
637 \fi}
638 \newcommand*{\do@lockoff}{\do@lockoffL}
639 \newcommand*{\skip@lockoff}{\global\let\lock@off=\do@lockoff}
640 \global\let\lock@off=\do@lockoff
641

```

`\n@num` This macro implements the `\skipnumbering` command. It uses a new action code, namely 1007.

```

642 \newcommand*{\n@num}{\n@num@reg}
643 \newcommand*{\n@num@reg}{%
644     \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@num}\to\actionlines@list
645     \xright@appenditem{-1007}\to\actions@list}
646

```

`\@ref` `\@ref` marks the start of a passage, for creation of a footnote reference. It takes two arguments:

- #1, the number of entries to add to `\insertlines@list` for this reference. This value, here and within `\edtext`, which computes it and writes it to the line-list file, will be stored in the count `\insert@count`.

```
647 \newcount\insert@count
```

- #2, a sequence of other line-list-file commands, executed to determine the ending line-number. (This may also include other `\@ref` commands, corresponding to uses of `\edtext` within the first argument of another instance of `\edtext`.)

`\dummy@ref` When nesting of `\@ref` commands does occur, it's necessary to temporarily redefine `\@ref` within `\@ref`, so that we're only doing one of these at a time.

```
648 \newcommand*\@dummy@ref[2]{#2}
```

`\@ref@reg` The first thing `\@ref` (i.e. `\@ref@reg`) itself does is to add the specified number of items to the `\insertlines@list` list.

```
649 \newcommand*\@ref[2]{%
650   \@ref@reg{#1}{#2}}
651 \newcommand*\@ref@reg[2]{%
652   \global\insert@count=#1\relax
653   \loop\ifnum\insert@count>\z@
654     \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@num}\to\insertlines@list
655     \global\advance\insert@count \m@ne
656   \repeat
```

Next, process the second argument to determine the page and line numbers for the end of this lemma. We temporarily equate `\@ref` to a different macro that just executes its argument, so that nested `\@ref` commands are just skipped this time. Some other macros need to be temporarily redefined to suppress their action.

```
657 \begingroup
658   \let\@ref=\dummy@ref
659   \let\page@action=\relax
660   \let\sub@action=\relax
661   \let\set@line@action=\relax
662   \let\@lab=\relax
663   #2
664   \global\endpage@num=\page@num
665   \global\endline@num=\line@num
666   \global\endsubline@num=\subline@num
667 \endgroup
```

Now store all the information about the location of the lemma's start and end in `\line@list`.

```
668 \xright@appenditem%
669   {\the\page@num|\the\line@num}%
670   \ifsublines@ \the\subline@num \else 0\fi}%
671   \the\endpage@num|\the\endline@num}%
672   \ifsublines@ \the\endsubline@num \else 0\fi}\to\line@list
```

Finally, execute the second argument of `\@ref` again, to perform for real all the commands within it.

```
673 #2}
674
```

## 21.6 Writing to the line-list file

We’ve now defined all the counters, lists, and commands involved in reading the line-list file at the start of a section. Now we’ll cover the commands that `eledmac` uses within the text of a section to write commands out to the line-list.

`\linenum@out` The file will be opened on output stream `\linenum@out`.

```
675 \newwrite\linenum@out
```

`\iffirst@linenum@out@` Once any file is opened on this stream, we keep it open forever, or else switch to another file that we keep open. The reason is that we want the output routine to write the page number for every page to this file; otherwise we’d have to write it at the start of every line. But it’s not very easy for the output routine to tell whether an output stream is open or not. There’s no way to test the status of a particular output stream directly, and the asynchronous nature of output routines makes the status hard to determine by other means.

We can manage pretty well by means of the `\iffirst@linenum@out@` flag; its inelegant name suggests the nature of the problem that made its creation necessary. It’s set to be `true` before any `\linenum@out` file is opened. When such a file is opened for the first time, it’s done using `\immediate`, so that it will at once be safe for the output routine to write to it; we then set this flag to `false`.

```
676 \newif\iffirst@linenum@out@
677 \iffirst@linenum@out@true
```

`\line@list@stuff` The `\line@list@stuff{<file>}` macro, which is called by `\beginnumbering`, performs all the line-list operations needed at the start of a section. Its argument is the name of the line-list file.

```
678 \newcommand*\line@list@stuff[1]{%
```

First, use the commands of the previous section to interpret the line-list file from the last run.

```
679 \read@linelist{#1}%
```

Now close the current output line-list file, if any, and open a new one. The first time we open a line-list file for output, we do it using `\immediate`, and clear the `\iffirst@linenum@out@` flag.

```
680 \iffirst@linenum@out@
681 \immediate\closeout\linenum@out%
682 \global\iffirst@linenum@out@false%
683 \immediate\openout\linenum@out=#1\relax%
684 \else
```

If we get here, then this is not the first line-list we've seen, so we don't open or close the files immediately, except if we are in a minipage and this minipage is not a ledgroup.

```

685     \if@minipage%
686     \if@ledgroup%
687         \closeout\linenum@out%
688         \openout\linenum@out=#1\relax%
689     \else%
690         \immediate\closeout\linenum@out%
691         \immediate\openout\linenum@out=#1\relax%
692     \fi
693 \else%
694     \closeout\linenum@out%
695     \openout\linenum@out=#1\relax%
696 \fi%
697 \fi}
698

```

`\new@line` The `\new@line` macro sends the `\@nl` command to the line-list file, to mark the start of a new text line, and its page number.

```

699 \newcommand*{\new@line}{%
700   \IfStrEq{\led@pb@setting}{after}%
701     {\xifinlistcs{\the\absline@num}{l@prev@nopb}%
702       {\xifinlistcs{\the\absline@num}{normal@page@break}%
703         {\numgdef{\@next@page}{\thepage+1}%
704           \write\linenum@out{\string\@nl[\@next@page] [\@next@page]}}%
705       }%
706     {\write\linenum@out{\string\@nl[\the\c@page] [\thepage]}}%
707   }%
708   {\write\linenum@out{\string\@nl[\the\c@page] [\thepage]}}}%
709 }%
710 \IfStrEq{\led@pb@setting}{before}%
711   {\numdef{\next@absline}{\the\absline@num+1}%
712   \xifinlistcs{\next@absline}{l@prev@nopb}%
713     {\xifinlistcs{\the\absline@num}{normal@page@break}%
714       {\numgdef{\nc@page}{\c@page+1}%
715         \write\linenum@out{\string\@nl[\nc@page] [\nc@page]}}%
716     }%
717   {\write\linenum@out{\string\@nl[\the\c@page] [\thepage]}}%
718 }%
719 {\write\linenum@out{\string\@nl[\the\c@page] [\thepage]}}%
720 }%
721 {}%
722 \IfStrEqCase{\led@pb@setting}{{before}{\relax}{after}{\relax}}{\write\linenum@out{\string\@nl[\the\c@page] [\thepage]}}%
723 }
724

```

`\if@noneed@Footnote` We enclose a lemma marked by `\edtext` in `\flag@start` and `\flag@end`: these  
`\flag@start` send the `\@ref` command to the line-list file. `\edtext` is responsible for setting  
`\flag@end`

the value of `\insert@count` appropriately; it actually gets done by the various footnote macros.

```

725 \newif\if@noneed@Footnote%Bool to check if we have to print a error message
726
727 \newcommand*{\flag@start}{%
728   \ifledRcol%
729     \edef\next{\write\linenum@outR{%
730       \string\@ref[\the\insert@countR] []}%
731     \next%
732     \ifnum\insert@countR<1%
733       \if@noneed@Footnote\else%
734         \led@err@EdtextWithoutFootnote%
735       \fi%
736     \fi%
737   \else%
738     \edef\next{\write\linenum@out{%
739       \string\@ref[\the\insert@count] []}%
740     \next%
741     \ifnum\insert@count<1%
742       \if@noneed@Footnote\else%
743         \led@err@EdtextWithoutFootnote%
744       \fi%
745     \fi%
746   \fi}%
747

```

`\page@start` Originally the commentary was: `\page@start` writes a command to the line-list file noting the current page number; when used within an output routine, this should be called so as to place its `\write` within the box that gets shipped out, and as close to the top of that box as possible.

However, in October 2004 Alexej Krukov discovered that when processing long paragraphs that included Russian, Greek and Latin texts `eledmac` would go into an infinite loop, emitting thousands of blank pages. This was caused by being unable to find an appropriate place in the output routine. A different algorithm is now used for getting page numbers.

```

748 \newcommand*{\page@start}{}
749

```

`\startsub` `\startsub` and `\endsub` turn sub-lineation on and off, by writing appropriate instructions to the line-list file. When sub-lineation is in effect, the line number counter is frozen and the sub-line counter advances instead. If one of these commands appears in the middle of a line, it doesn't take effect until the next line; in other words, a line is counted as a line or sub-line depending on what it started out as, even if that changes in the middle.

We tinker with `\lastskip` because a command of either sort really needs to be attached to the last word preceding the change, not the first word that follows the change. This is because sub-lineation will often turn on and off in mid-line—stage directions, for example, often are mixed with dialogue in that way—and when a

line is mixed we want to label it using the system that was in effect at its start. But when sub-lineation begins at the very start of a line we have a problem, if we don't put in this code.

```

750 \newcommand*{\startsub}{\dimen0\lastskip
751   \ifdim\dimen0>0pt \unskip \fi
752   \write\linenum@out{\string\sub@on}%
753   \ifdim\dimen0>0pt \hskip\dimen0 \fi}
754 \def\endsub{\dimen0\lastskip
755   \ifdim\dimen0>0pt \unskip \fi
756   \write\linenum@out{\string\sub@off}%
757   \ifdim\dimen0>0pt \hskip\dimen0 \fi}
758

```

`\advanceline` You can use `\advanceline{<num>}` in running text to advance the current visible line-number by a specified value, positive or negative.

```

759 \newcommand*{\advanceline}[1]{\write\linenum@out{\string\@adv[#1]}}

```

`\setline` You can use `\setline{<num>}` in running text (i.e., within `\pstart... \pend`) to set the current visible line-number to a specified positive value.

```

760 \newcommand*{\setline}[1]{%
761   \ifnum#1<\z@
762     \led@warn@BadSetline
763   \else
764     \write\linenum@out{\string\@set[#1]}%
765   \fi}
766

```

`\setlinenum` You can use `\setlinenum{<num>}` before a `\pstart` to set the visible line-number to a specified positive value. It writes a `\l@d@set` command to the line-list file.

```

767 \newcommand*{\setlinenum}[1]{%
768   \ifnum#1<\z@
769     \led@warn@BadSetlinenum
770   \else
771     \write\linenum@out{\string\l@d@set[#1]}%
772   \fi}
773

```

`\startlock` You can use `\startlock` or `\endlock` in running text to start or end line number locking at the current line. They decide whether line numbers or sub-line numbers are affected, depending on the current state of the sub-lineation flags.

```

774 \newcommand*{\startlock}{\write\linenum@out{\string\lock@on}}
775 \def\endlock{\write\linenum@out{\string\lock@off}}
776

```

`\ifl@dskipnumber` In numbered text `\skipnumbering` will suspend the numbering for that particular line.  
`\l@dskipnumbertrue`  
`\l@dskipnumberfalse` 777 \newif\ifl@dskipnumber  
`\skipnumbering` 778 \l@dskipnumberfalse  
`\skipnumbering@reg`

```

779 \newcommand*{\skipnumbering}{\skipnumbering@reg}
780 \newcommand*{\skipnumbering@reg}{%
781   \write\linenum@out{\string\n@num}%
782   \advance\line{-1}}
783

```

## 22 Marking text for notes

The `\edtext` (or `\critext`) macro is used to create all footnotes and endnotes, as well as to print the portion of the main text to which a given note or notes is keyed. The idea is to have that lemma appear only once in the `.tex` file: all instances of it in the main text and in the notes are copied from that one appearance.

For convenience, I will use `\*text` when I do not need to distinguish between `\edtext` and `\critext`. The `\*text` macros take two arguments, the only difference between `\edtext` and `\critext` is how the second argument is delineated.

`\critext` requires two arguments. At any point within numbered text, you use it by saying:

```
\critext{#1}#2/
```

Similarly `\edtext` requires the same two arguments but you use it by saying:

```
\edtext{#1}{#2}
```

- `#1` is the piece of the main text being glossed; it gets added to the main text, and is also used as a lemma for notes to it.
- `#2` is a series of subsidiary macros that generate various kinds of notes. With `\critext` the `/` after `#2` *must* appear: it marks the end of the macro. (*The TeXbook*, p. 204, points out that when additional text to be matched follows the arguments like this, spaces following the macro are not skipped, which is very desirable since this macro will never be used except within text. Having an explicit terminator also helps keep things straight when nested calls to `\critext` are used.) Braces around `#2` are optional with `\critext` and required for `\edtext`.

The `\*text` macro may be used (somewhat) recursively; that is, `\*text` may be used within its own first argument. The code would be much simpler without this feature, but nested notes will commonly be necessary: it's quite likely that we'll have an explanatory note for a long passage and notes on variants for individual words within that passage. The situation we can't handle is overlapping notes that aren't nested: for example, one note covering lines 10–15, and another covering 12–18. You can handle such cases by using the `\lemma` and `\linenum` macros within `#2`: they alter the copy of the lemma and the line numbers that are passed to the notes, and hence allow you to overcome any limitations of this system, albeit with extra effort.

The recursive operation of `\*text` will fail if you try to use a copy that is called something other than `\*text`. In order to handle recursion, `\*text` needs to redefine its own definition temporarily at one point, and that doesn't work if the macro you are calling is not actually named `\*text`. There's no problem as long as `\*text` is not invoked in the first argument. If you want to call `\*text` something else, it is best to create instead a macro that expands to an invocation of `\*text`, rather than copying `\*text` and giving it a new name; otherwise you will need to add an appropriate definition for your new macro to `\morenoexpands`.

Side effects of our line-numbering code make it impossible to use the usual footnote macros directly within a paragraph whose lines are numbered (see comments to `\do@line`, p.86). Instead, the appropriate note-generating command is appended to the list macro `\inserts@list`, and when `\pend` completes the paragraph it inserts all the notes at the proper places.

Note that we don't provide previous-note information, although it's often wanted; your own macros must handle that. We can't do it correctly without keeping track of what kind of notes have gone past: it's not just a matter of remembering the line numbers associated with the previous invocation of `\*text`, because that might have been for a different kind of note. It is preferable for your footnote macros to store and recall this kind of information if they need it.

An example where some 'memory' of line numbers might be required is where there are several variant readings per line of text, and you do not wish the line number to be repeated for each lemma in the notes. After the first occurrence of the line number, you might want the symbol '||' instead of further occurrences, for instance. This can easily be done by a macro like `\printlines`, if it saves the last value of `\l@d@nums` that *it* saw, and then performs a simple conditional test to see whether to print a number or a '||'.

## 22.1 `\edtext` and `\critext` themselves

The various note-generating macros might want to request that commands be executed not at once, but in close connection with the start or end of the lemma. For example, footnote numbers in the text should be connected to the end of the lemma; or, instead of a single macro to create a note listing variants, you might want to use several macros in series to create individual variants, which would each add information to a private macro or token register, which in turn would be formatted and output when all of #2 for the lemma has been read.

`\end@lemmas` To accomodate this, we provide a list macro to which macros may add commands that should subsequently be executed at the end of the lemma when that lemma is added to the text of the paragraph. A macro should add its contribution to `\end@lemmas` by using `\xleft@appenditem`. (Anything that needs to be done at the *start* of the lemma may be handled using `\aftergroup`, since the commands specified within `\critext`'s second argument are executed within a group that ends just before the lemma is added to the main text.)

`\end@lemmas` is intended for the few things that need to be associated with the end of the lemma, like footnote numbers. Such numbers are not implemented

in the current version, and indeed no use is currently made of `\end@lemmas` or of the `\aftergroup` trick. The general approach would be to define a macro to be used within the second argument of `\critext` that would add the appropriate command to `\end@lemmas`.

Commands that are added to this list should always take care not to do anything that adds possible line-breaks to the output; otherwise line numbering could be thrown off.

```
784 \list@create{\end@lemmas}
```

`\dummy@text` We now need to define a number of macros that allow us to weed out nested instances of `\critext`, and other problematic macros, from our lemma. This is similar to what we did in reading the line-list file using `\dummy@ref` and various redefinitions—and that’s because nested `\critext` macros create nested `\@ref` entries in the line-list file.

Here’s a macro that takes the same arguments as `\critext` but merely returns the first argument and ignores the second.

```
785 \long\def\dummy@text#1#2/{#1}
```

`\dummy@edtext` L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X users are not used to delimited arguments, so we provide a `\edtext` macro as well.

```
786 \newcommand{\dummy@edtext}[2]{#1}
```

`\dummy@edtext@showlemma` Some time, we want to obtain only the first argument of `\edtext`, while also wrapping it in `\showlemma`. For example, when printing a `\eledsection`.

```
787 \newcommand{\dummy@edtext@showlemma}[2]{\showlemma{#1}}%
```

We’re going to need another macro that takes one argument and ignores it entirely. This is supplied by the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X `\@gobble{<arg>}`.

`\no@expands` We need to turn off macro expansion for certain sorts of macros we’re likely to see within the lemma and within the notes.

`\morenoexpands`

The first class is font-changing macros. We suppress expansion for them by letting them become equal to zero.<sup>22</sup> This is done because we want to pass into our notes the generic commands to change to roman or whatever, and not their expansions that will ask for a particular style at a specified size. The notes may well be in a smaller font, so the command should be expanded later, when the note’s environment is in effect.

A second sort to turn off includes a few of the accent macros. Most are not a problem: an accent that’s expanded to an `\accent` command may be harder to read but it works just the same. The ones that cause problems are: those that use alignments—T<sub>E</sub>X seems to get confused about the difference between alignment parameters and macro parameters; those that use temporary control sequences; and those that look carefully at what the current font is.

---

<sup>22</sup>Since ‘control sequences equivalent to characters are not expandable’—*The TeXbook*, answer to Exercise 20.14.

(The `\copyright` macro defined in PLAIN `TEX` has this sort of problem as well, but isn't used enough to bother with. That macro, and any other that causes trouble, will get by all right if you put a `\protect` in front of it in your file.)

We also need to eliminate all `eledmac` macros like `\edlabel` and `\setline` that write things to auxiliary files: that writing should be done only once. And we make `\critext` itself, if it appears within its own argument, do nothing but copy its first argument.

Finally, we execute `\morenoexpands`. The version of `\morenoexpands` defined here does nothing; but you may define a version of your own when you need to add more expansion suppressions as needed with your macros. That makes it possible to make such additions without needing to copy or modify the standard `eledmac` code. If you define your own `\morenoexpands`, you must be very careful about spaces: if the macro adds any spaces to the text when it runs, extra space will appear in the main text when `\critext` is used.

(A related problem, not addressed by these two macros, is that of characters whose category code is changed by any the macros used in the arguments to `\critext`. Since the category codes are set when the arguments are scanned, macros that depend on changing them will not work. We have most often encountered this with characters that are made 'active' within text in some, but not all, of the languages used within the document. One way around the problem, if it takes this form, is to ensure that those characters are *always* active; within languages that make no special use of them, their associated control sequences should simply return the proper character.)

```

788 \newcommand*{\noexpands}{%
789   \let\select@lemfont=0%
790   \let\startsub=\relax \let\endsub=\relax
791   \let\startlock=\relax \let\endlock=\relax
792   \let\edlabel=\@gobble
793   \let\setline=\@gobble \let\advanceline=\@gobble
794   \let\critext=\dummy@text
795   \let\edtext=\dummy@edtext
796   \l@dtabnoexpands
797   \morenoexpands}
798 \let\morenoexpands=\relax
799
```

`\@tag` Now, we define an empty `\@tag` command. It will be redefine by `\edtext`: its value is the first args. It will be used by the `\Xfootnote` commands.

```

800 \newcommand{\@tag}{}
801 % \end{macrocode}
802 % \end{macro}
803 % \begin{macro}{\critext}
804 % Now we begin \cs{critext} itself. The definition requires a \verb"/" after
805 % the arguments: this eliminates the possibility of problems about
806 % knowing where \verb"#2" ends. This also changes the handling of spaces
807 % following an invocation of the macro: normally such spaces are
```

```

808 % skipped, but in this case they're significant because \verb"#2" is
809 % a 'delimited parameter'. Since \cs{critext} is always used in running
810 % text, it seems more appropriate to pay attention to spaces than to
811 % skip them.
812 %
813 % When executed, \cs{critext} first ensures that we're in
814 % horizontal mode.
815 %   \begin{macrocode}
816 \long\def\critext#1#2/{\leavevmode

```

`\@tag` Our normal lemma is just argument #1; but that argument could have further invocations of `\critext` within it. We get a copy of the lemma without any `\critext` macros within it by temporarily redefining `\critext` to just copy its first argument and ignore the other, and then expand #1 into `\@tag`, our lemma.

This is done within a group that starts here, in order to get the original `\critext` restored; within this group we've also turned off the expansion of those control sequences commonly found within text that can cause trouble for us.

```

817 \begingroup
818   \global\renewcommand{\@tag}{\noexpands #1}%%

```

`\l@d@nums` Prepare more data for the benefit of note-generating macros: the line references and font specifier for this lemma go to `\l@d@nums`.

```

819   \set@line

```

`\insert@count` will be altered by the note-generating macros: it counts the number of deferred footnotes or other insertions generated by this instance of `\critext`.

```

820   \global\insert@count=0

```

Now process the note-generating macros in argument #2 (i.e., `\Afootnote`, `\lemma`, etc.). `\ignorespaces` is here to skip over any spaces that might appear at the start of #2; otherwise they wind up in the main text. Footnote and other macros that are used within #2 should all end with `\ignorespaces` as well, to skip any spaces between macros when several are used in series.

```

821   \ignorespaces #2\relax

```

Finally, we're ready to admit the first argument into the current paragraph.

It's important that we generate and output all the notes for this chunk of text *before* putting the text into the paragraph: notes that are referenced by line number should generally be tied to the start of the passage they gloss, not the end. That should all be done within the expansion of #2 above, or in `\aftergroup` commands within that expansion.

```

822   \@ifundefined{xpg@main@language}{%if not polyglossia
823     \flag@start}%
824     {\if@RTL\flag@end\else\flag@start\fi% With polyglossia, you must track whether the language re
825     }
826 \endgroup
827 \showlemma{#1}%

```

Finally, we add any insertions that are associated with the *end* of the lemma. Footnotes that are identified by symbols rather than by where the lemma begins in the main text need to be done here, and not above.

```

828 \ifx\end@lemmas\empty \else
829   \glp\end@lemmas\to\x@lemma
830   \x@lemma
831   \global\let\x@lemma=\relax
832 \fi
833 \@ifundefined{xpg@main@language}{%if not polyglossia
834   \flag@end}%
835   {\if@RTL\flag@start\else\flag@end\fi}% With polyglossia, you must track whether the
836   }
837 }

\edtext

838 \newcommand{\edtext}[2]{\leavevmode
839   \begin{group}
840     \global\renewcommand{\@tag}{\no@expands #1}%
841     \set@line
842     \global\insert@count=0
843     \ignorespaces #2\relax
844     \@ifundefined{xpg@main@language}{%if not polyglossia
845       \flag@start}%
846       {\if@RTL\flag@end\else\flag@start\fi}% With polyglossia, you must track whether the
847       }%
848   \end{group}
849   \showlemma{#1}%
850   \ifx\end@lemmas\empty \else
851     \glp\end@lemmas\to\x@lemma
852     \x@lemma
853     \global\let\x@lemma=\relax
854   \fi
855   \@ifundefined{xpg@main@language}{%if not polyglossia
856     \flag@end}%
857     {\if@RTL\flag@start\else\flag@end\fi}% With polyglossia, you must track whether the
858     }%
859   \global\@nneed@Footnotefalse%
860 }

861
862 \newcommand*{\flag@end}{%
863   \ifledRcol%
864     \write\linenum@outR{]}%
865   \else%
866     \write\linenum@out{]}%
867   \fi}%
868

```

`\ifnumberline` The `\ifnumberline` option can be set to `FALSE` to disable line numbering.

```
869 \newif\ifnumberline
870 \numberlinetrue
```

**\set@line** The **\set@line** macro is called by **\critext** to put the line-reference field and font specifier for the current block of text into **\l@d@nums**.

One instance of **\critext** may generate several notes, or it may generate none—it's legitimate for argument #2 to **\critext** to be empty. But **\flag@start** and **\flag@end** induce the generation of a single entry in **\line@list** during the next run, and it's vital to also remove one and only one **\line@list** entry here.

```
871 \newcommand*{\set@line}{%
```

If no more lines are listed in **\line@list**, something's wrong—probably just some change in the input. We set all the numbers to zeros, following an old publishing convention for numerical references that haven't yet been resolved.

```
872 \ifx\line@list\empty
873 \global\noteschanged@true
874 \xdef\l@d@nums{000|000|000|000|000|000|\edfont@info}%
875 \else
876 \gl@p\line@list\to\@tempb
877 \xdef\l@d@nums{\@tempb|\edfont@info}%
878 \global\let\@tempb=\undefined
879 \fi}
880
```

**\edfont@info** The macro **\edfont@info** returns coded information about the current font.

```
881 \newcommand*{\edfont@info}{\f@encoding/\f@family/\f@series/\f@shape}
882
```

## 22.2 Substitute lemma

**\lemma** The **\lemma{<text>}** macro allows you to change the lemma that's passed on to the notes.

```
883 \newcommand*{\lemma}[1]{\global\renewcommand{\@tag}{\no@expands #1}}
```

## 22.3 Substitute line numbers

**\linenum** The **\linenum** macro can change any or all of the page and line numbers that are passed on to the notes.

As argument **\linenum** takes a set of seven parameters separated by vertical bars, in the format used internally for **\l@d@nums** (see p.60): the starting page, line, and sub-line numbers, followed by the ending page, line, and sub-line numbers, and then the font specifier for the lemma. However, you can omit any parameters you don't want to change, and you can omit a string of vertical bars at the end of the argument. Hence **\linenum{18|4|0|18|7|1|0}** is an invocation that changes all the parameters, but **\linenum{|3}** only changes the starting line number, and leaves the rest unaltered.

We use **\** as an internal separator for the macro parameters.

```

884 \newcommand*{\linenum}[1]{%
885   \xdef\@tempa{#1|||||}\noexpand\\l@d@nums}%
886   \global\let\l@d@nums=\empty
887   \expandafter\line@set\@tempa|\\ignorespaces}

```

`\line@set` `\linenum` calls `\line@set` to do the actual work; it looks at the first number in the argument to `\linenum`, sets the corresponding value in `\l@d@nums`, and then calls itself to process the next number in the `\linenum` argument, if there are more numbers in `\l@d@nums` to process.

```

888 \def\line@set#1|#2|#3|#4\\{%
889   \gdef\@tempb{#1}%
890   \ifx\@tempb\empty
891     \l@d@add{#3}%
892   \else
893     \l@d@add{#1}%
894   \fi
895   \gdef\@tempb{#4}%
896   \ifx\@tempb\empty\else
897     \l@d@add{|\line@set#2\\#4\\}%
898   \fi}

```

`\l@d@add` `\line@set` uses `\l@d@add` to tack numbers or vertical bars onto the right hand end of `\l@d@nums`.

```

899 \newcommand{\l@d@add}[1]{\xdef\l@d@nums{\l@d@nums#1}}
900

```

## 23 Paragraph decomposition and reassembly

In order to be able to count the lines of text and affix line numbers, we add an extra stage of processing for each paragraph. We send the paragraph into a box register, rather than straight onto the vertical list, and when the paragraph ends we slice the paragraph into its component lines; to each line we add any notes or line numbers, add a command to write to the line-list, and then at last send the line to the vertical list. This section contains all the code for this processing.

### 23.1 Boxes, counters, `\pstart` and `\pend`

<pre> \raw@text \ifnumberedpar@ \numberedpar@true \numberedpar@false \num@lines \one@line \par@line </pre>	<p>Here are numbers and flags that are used internally in the course of the paragraph decomposition.</p> <p>When we first form the paragraph, it goes into a box register, <code>\raw@text</code>, instead of onto the current vertical list. The <code>\ifnumberedpar@</code> flag will be <code>true</code> while a paragraph is being processed in that way. <code>\num@lines</code> will store the number of lines in the paragraph when it's complete. When we chop it up into lines, each line in turn goes into the <code>\one@line</code> register, and <code>\par@line</code> will be the number of that line within the paragraph.</p>
--	--

```

901 \newbox\raw@text
902 \newif\ifnumberedpar@

```

```

903 \newcount\num@lines
904 \newbox\one@line
905 \newcount\par@line

```

`\pstart` `\pstart` starts the paragraph by clearing the `\inserts@list` list and other relevant variables, and then arranges for the subsequent text to go into the `\raw@text` box. `\pstart` needs to appear at the start of every paragraph that's to be numbered; the `\autopar` command below may be used to insert these commands automatically.

`\thepstart` Beware: everything that occurs between `\pstart` and `\pend` is happening within a group; definitions must be global if you want them to survive past the end of the paragraph.

```

906
907 \newcounter{pstart}
908 \renewcommand{\thepstart}{\bfseries\@arabic\c@pstart}. }
909 \newif\ifnumberpstart
910 \numberpstartfalse
911 \newif\iflabelpstart
912 \labelpstartfalse
913 \newcommandx*{\pstart}[1][1]{%
914   \ifstrepty{#1}{\noindent#1}%
915   \if@nobreak%
916     \let\@oldnobreak\@nobreaktrue%
917   \else%
918     \let\@oldnobreak\@nobreakfalse%
919   \fi%
920   \@nobreaktrue%
921   \ifnumbering \else%
922     \led@err@PstartNotNumbered%
923     \beginnumbering%
924   \fi%
925   \ifnumberedpar@%
926     \led@err@PstartInPstart%
927   \pend%
928 \fi%
929 \list@clear{\inserts@list}%
930 \global\let\next@insert=\empty%
931 \begingroup\normal@pars%
932 \global\advance \l@dnumpstartsL\@ne
933 \global\setbox\raw@text=\vbox\bgroup%
934   \ifautopar\else%
935     \ifnumberpstart%
936       \ifinstanza\else%
937         \ifsidepstartnum\else%
938           \thepstart%
939         \fi%
940       \fi%
941     \fi%
942   \fi%

```

```

943 \numberedpar@true%
944 \iflabelpstart\protected@edef\@currentlabel%
945     {\p@pstart\thepstart}
946 \fi%
947 }

```

`\pend` `\pend` must be used to end a numbered paragraph.

```

948 \newcommandx*\pend}[1][1]{\ifnumbering \else%
949     \led@err@PendNotNumbered%
950 \fi%
951 \ifnumberedpar@ \else%
952     \led@err@PendNoPstart%
953 \fi%

```

We set all the usual interline penalties to zero and then immediately call `\endgraf` to end the paragraph; this ensures that there'll be no large interline penalties to prevent us from slicing the paragraph into pieces. These penalties revert to the values that you set when the group for the `\vbox` ends. Then we call `\do@line` to slice a line off the top of the paragraph, add a line number and footnotes, and restore it to the page; we keep doing this until there aren't any more lines left.

```

954 \ld@zeropenalties%
955 \endgraf\global\num@lines=\prevgraf\egroup%
956 \global\par@line=0%

```

We check if lineation is by `pstart`: in this case, we reset line number, but only in the second line of the `pstart`, to prevent some trouble. We can't reset line number at the beginning of `\pstart` `\setline` is parsed at the end of previous `\pend`, and so, we must do it at the end of first line of `pstart`.

```

957 \csnumdef{pstartline}{0}%
958 \loop\ifvbox\raw@text%
959     \csnumdef{pstartline}{\pstartline+1}%
960     \do@line%
961     \ifbypstart@%
962         \ifnumequal{pstartline}{1}{\setline{1}\resetprevline@}{}%
963     \fi%
964 \repeat%

```

Deal with any leftover notes, and then end the group that was begun in the `\pstart`.

```

965 \flush@notes%
966 \endgroup%
967 \ignorespaces%
968 \ifnumberpstart%
969     \pstartnumtrue%
970 \fi%
971 \@oldnobreak%
972 \addtocounter{pstart}{1}%
973 \ifstrempy{#1}{\noindent#1}%
974 }
975

```

`\l@dzzeropenalties` A macro to zero penalties for `\pend`.

```

976 \newcommand*\l@dzzeropenalties{%
977   \brokenpenalty \z@ \clubpenalty \z@
978   \displaywidowpenalty \z@ \interlinepenalty \z@ \predisplaypenalty \z@
979   \postdisplaypenalty \z@ \widowpenalty \z@}
980
```

`\autopar` In most cases it's only an annoyance to have to label the paragraphs to be numbered with `\pstart` and `\pend`. `\autopar` will do that automatically, allowing you to start a paragraph with its first word and no other preliminaries, and to end it with a blank line or a `\par` command. The command should be issued within a group, after `\beginnumbering` has been used to start the numbering; all paragraphs within the group will be affected.

A few situations can cause problems. One is a paragraph that begins with a begin-group character or command: `\pstart` will not get invoked until after such a group beginning is processed; as a result the character that ends the group will be mistaken for the end of the `\vbox` that `\pstart` creates, and the rest of the paragraph will not be numbered. Such paragraphs need to be started explicitly using `\indent`, `\noindent`, or `\leavevmode`—or `\pstart`, since you can still include your own `\pstart` and `\pend` commands even with `\autopar` on.

Prematurely ending the group within which `\autopar` is in effect will cause a similar problem. You must either leave a blank line or use `\par` to end the last paragraph before you end the group.

The functioning of this macro is more tricky than the usual `\everypar`: we don't want anything to go onto the vertical list at all, so we have to end the paragraph, erase any evidence that it ever existed, and start it again using `\pstart`. We remove the paragraph-indentation box using `\lastbox` and save the width, and then skip backwards over the `\parskip` that's been added for this paragraph. Then we start again with `\pstart`, restoring the indentation that we saved, and locally change `\par` so that it'll do our `\pend` for us.

```

981 \newif\ifautopar
982 \autoparfalse
983 \newcommand*\autopar{%
984   \ifledRcol
985     \ifnumberingR \else
986       \led@err@AutoparNotNumbered
987       \beginnumberingR
988       \fi
989     \else
990       \ifnumbering \else
991         \led@err@AutoparNotNumbered
992         \beginnumbering
993         \fi
994       \fi
995       \autopartrue
996       \everypar{\setbox0=\lastbox
997         \endgraf \vskip-\parskip
```

```

998     \pstart \noindent \kern\wd0 \ifnumberpstart\ifinstanza\else\thepstart\fi\fi
999     \let\par=\pend}%
1000 \ignorespaces}

```

`\normal@pars` We also define a macro which we can rely on to turn off the `\autopar` definitions at various important places, if they are in force. We'll want to do this within a footnotes, for example.

```

1001 \newcommand*{\normal@pars}{\everypar{}\let\par\endgraf}
1002

```

`\ifautopar@pause` We define a boolean test switched to true at the beginning of the `\pausenumbering` command if the autopar is enabled. This boolean will be tested at the beginning of `\resumenumbering` to continue the autopar if needed.

```

1003 \newif\ifautopar@pause

```

## 23.2 Processing one line

`\do@line` The `\do@line` macro is called by `\pend` to do all the processing for a single line of text.

```

\l@dunhbox@line
1004 \newcommand*{\l@dunhbox@line}[1]{\unhbox #1}
1005 \newcommand*{\do@line}{%
1006   {\vbadness=10000
1007     \splittopskip=\z@
1008     \do@linehook
1009 \l@emptyd@ta
1010   \global\setbox\one@line=\vsplit\raw@text to\baselineskip}%
1011   \unvbox\one@line \global\setbox\one@line=\lastbox
1012   \getline@num
1013   \IfStrEq{\led@pb@setting}{before}{\led@check@pb\led@check@nopb}{\}
1014   \ifnum\@lock>\@ne
1015     \inserthangingsymboltrue
1016   \else
1017     \inserthangingsymbolfalse
1018   \fi
1019   \check@pb@in@verse
1020   \affixline@num

Depending wether a sectioning command is called at this pstart or not we print
sectioning command or normal line,
1021 \xifinlist{\the\l@dnumpstartsL}{\eled@sections@}%
1022   {\print@eledsection}%
1023   {\print@line}%
1024   \IfStrEq{\led@pb@setting}{after}{\led@check@pb\led@check@nopb}{\}
1025 }%

```

`\print@line`

```

1026 % \cs{print@line} is for normal line, i. e line without sectioning command.
1027 \def\print@line{
1028   \affixpstart@num%

```

```

1029 \hb@xt@ \linewidth{\do@insidelinehook\l@dld@ta%
1030 \add@inserts\affixside@note%
1031 \l@dlsn@te
1032 {\ledllfill\hb@xt@ \wd\one@line{\new@line\inserthangingsymbol \l@dunhbox@line{\one@line}}\led
1033 \l@drsn@te
1034 }}%
1035 }

```

`\print@eledsection` `\print@eledsection` to print sectioning command with line number. It sets the correct spacing, depending whether a sectioning command was called at previous `\pstart`, calls the sectioning command, prints the normal line outside of the paper, to be able to have critical footnotes. Because of how this prints, a vertical spacing correction is added.

```

1036 \def\print@eledsection{%
1037 \add@inserts\affixside@note%
1038 \numdef{\temp@}{\l@dnumpstartsL-1}%
1039 \xifinlist{\temp@}{\eled@sections@@}{\@nobreaktrue}{\@nobreakfalse}%
1040 \@eled@sectioningtrue%
1041 \csuse{eled@sectioning@the\l@dnumpstartsL}%
1042 \@eled@sectioningfalse%
1043 \global\csundef{eled@sectioning@the\l@dnumpstartsL}%
1044 \if@RTL%
1045 \hspace{-3\paperwidth}%
1046 {\hbox{\l@dunhbox@line{\one@line}}\new@line}%
1047 \else%
1048 \hspace{3\paperwidth}%
1049 {\new@line \hbox{\l@dunhbox@line{\one@line}}}%
1050 \fi%
1051 \vskip-\baselineskip%
1052 }

```

`\do@linehook` Two hooks into `\do@line`. The first is called at the beginning of `\do@line`, the `\do@insidelinehook` second is called in the line box. The second can, for example, have a `\markboth` command inside, the first can't.

```

1053 \newcommand*{\do@linehook}{}
1054 \newcommand*{\do@insidelinehook}{}

```

`\l@emptyd@ta` Nulls the `\...d@ta`, which may later hold line numbers. Similarly for `\l@dcsnotetext`, `\l@dld@ta` `\l@dcsnotetext@l`, `\l@dcsnotetext@r` for the texts of the sidenotes, left and `\l@drd@ta` right notes.

```

\l@dcsnotetext 1055 \newcommand*{\l@emptyd@ta}{}
\l@dcsnotetext@l 1056 \gdef\l@dld@ta{}%
\l@dcsnotetext@r 1057 \gdef\l@drd@ta{}%
1058 \gdef\l@dcsnotetext@l{}%
1059 \gdef\l@dcsnotetext@r{}%
1060 \gdef\l@dcsnotetext{}%
1061

```

`\l@dlsn@te` Zero width boxes of the left and right side notes, together with their kerns.  
`\l@drsn@te`

```

1062 \newcommand{\l@dlsn@te}{%
1063   \hb@xt@ \z@{\hss\box\l@dlp@rbox\kern\ledlsnotesep}}
1064 \newcommand{\l@drsn@te}{%
1065   \hb@xt@ \z@{\kern\ledrsnotesep\box\l@drp@rbox\hss}}
1066

```

`\ledllfill` These macros are called at the left (`\ledllfill`) and the right (`\ledrlfill`) of each numbered line. The initial definitions correspond to the original code for `\do@line`.

```

1067 \newcommand*{\ledllfill}{\hfil}
1068 \newcommand*{\ledrlfill}{\hfil}
1069

```

### 23.3 Line and page number computation

`\getline@num` The `\getline@num` macro determines the page and line numbers for the line we're about to send to the vertical list.

```

1070 \newcommand*{\getline@num}{%
1071   \global\advance\absline@num \@ne
1072   \do@actions
1073   \do@ballast
1074   \ifnumberline
1075   \ifsublines@
1076     \ifnum\sub@lock<\tw@
1077       \global\advance\subline@num \@ne
1078     \fi
1079   \else
1080     \ifnum\@lock<\tw@
1081       \global\advance\line@num \@ne
1082       \global\subline@num \z@
1083     \fi
1084   \fi
1085   \fi
1086 }

```

`\do@ballast` The real work in the macro above is done in `\do@actions`, but before we plunge into that, let's get `\do@ballast` out of the way. This macro looks to see if there is an action to be performed on the *next* line, and if it is going to be a page break action, `\do@ballast` decreases the count `\ballast@count` counter by the amount of `ballast`. This means, in practice, that when `\add@penalties` assigns penalties at this point, T<sub>E</sub>X will be given extra encouragement to break the page here (see p. 97).

`\ballast@count` First we set up the required counters; they are initially set to zero, and will remain so unless you say `\setcounter{ballast}{<some figure>}` in your document.

```

1087 \newcount\ballast@count
1088 \newcounter{ballast}
1089 \setcounter{ballast}{0}

```

And here is `\do@ballast` itself. It advances `\absline@num` within the protection of a group to make its check for what happens on the next line.

```

1090 \newcommand*{\do@ballast}{\global\ballast@count \z@
1091   \begingroup
1092     \advance\absline@num \@ne
1093     \ifnum\next@actionline=\absline@num
1094       \ifnum\next@action>-1001\relax
1095         \global\advance\ballast@count by -\c@ballast
1096       \fi
1097     \fi
1098   \endgroup}

```

`\do@actions` The `\do@actions` macro looks at the list of actions to take at particular absolute line numbers, and does everything that's specified for the current line.

It may call itself recursively, and to do this efficiently (using T<sub>E</sub>X's optimization for tail recursion), we define a control-sequence called `\do@actions@next` that is always the last thing that `\do@actions` does. If there could be more actions to process for this line, `\do@actions@next` is set equal to `\do@actions`; otherwise it's just `\relax`.

```

1099 \newcommand*{\do@actions}{%
1100   \global\let\do@actions@next=\relax
1101   \ifnum\absline@num<\next@actionline\else

```

First, page number changes, which will generally be the most common actions.

If we're restarting lineation on each page, this is where it happens.

```

1102     \ifnum\next@action>-1001
1103       \global\page@num=\next@action
1104       \ifbypage@
1105         \global\line@num=\z@ \global\subline@num=\z@
1106       \resetprevline@
1107     \fi

```

Next, we handle commands that change the line-number values. (We subtract 5001 rather than 5000 here because the line number is going to be incremented automatically in `\getline@num`.)

```

1108     \else
1109       \ifnum\next@action<-4999
1110         \@l@dttempcnta=-\next@action
1111         \advance\@l@dttempcnta by -5001
1112         \ifsublines@
1113           \global\subline@num=\@l@dttempcnta
1114         \else
1115           \global\line@num=\@l@dttempcnta
1116         \fi

```

It's one of the fixed codes. We rescale the value in `\@l@dttempcnta` so that we can use a case statement.

```

1117     \else
1118       \@l@dttempcnta=-\next@action
1119       \advance\@l@dttempcnta by -1000

```

```

1120      \do@actions@fixedcode
1121      \fi
1122  \fi

```

Now we get information about the next action off the list, and then set `\do@actions@next` so that we'll call ourselves recursively: the next action might also be for this line.

There's no warning if we find `\actionlines@list` empty, since that will always happen near the end of the section.

```

1123      \ifx\actionlines@list\empty
1124          \gdef\next@actionline{1000000}%
1125      \else
1126          \gl@p\actionlines@list\to\next@actionline
1127          \gl@p\actions@list\to\next@action
1128          \global\let\do@actions@next=\do@actions
1129      \fi
1130  \fi

```

Make the recursive call, if necessary.

```

1131 \do@actions@next}
1132

```

`\do@actions@fixedcode` This macro handles the fixed codes for `\do@actions`. It is one big case statement.

```

1133 \newcommand*{\do@actions@fixedcode}{%
1134   \ifcase\@l@dttempcnta
1135     \or%                               % 1001
1136       \global\sublines@true
1137     \or%                               % 1002
1138       \global\sublines@false
1139     \or%                               % 1003
1140       \global\@lock=\@ne
1141     \or%                               % 1004
1142       \ifnum\@lock=\tw@
1143         \global\@lock=\thr@@
1144       \else
1145         \global\@lock=\z@
1146       \fi
1147     \or%                               % 1005
1148       \global\sub@lock=\@ne
1149     \or%                               % 1006
1150       \ifnum\sub@lock=\tw@
1151         \global\sub@lock=\thr@@
1152       \else
1153         \global\sub@lock=\z@
1154       \fi
1155     \or%                               % 1007
1156       \l@dskipnumbertrue
1157     \else
1158       \led@warn@BadAction

```

```

1159 \fi}
1160
1161

```

## 23.4 Line number printing

`\affixline@num` `\affixline@num` originally took a single argument, a series of commands for printing the line just split off by `\do@line`; it put that line back on the vertical list, and added a line number if necessary. It now just puts a left line number into `\l@lld@ta` or a right line number into `\l@drd@ta` if required.

To determine whether we need to affix a line number to this line, we compute the following:

$$\begin{aligned}
 n &= \text{int}((\text{linenum} - \text{firstlinenum}) / \text{linenumincrement}) \\
 m &= \text{firstlinenum} + (n \times \text{linenumincrement})
 \end{aligned}$$

(where *int* truncates a real number to an integer). *m* will be equal to *linenum* only if we're to paste a number on here. However, the formula breaks down for the first line to number (and any before that), so we check that case separately: if `\line@num`  $\leq$  `\firstlinenum`, we compare the two directly instead of making these calculations.

We compute, in the scratch counter `\@l@tempcnta`, the number of the next line that should be printed with a number (*m* in the above discussion), and move the current line number into the counter `\@l@tempcntb` for comparison.

First, the case when we're within a sub-line range.

```

1162 \newcommand*{\affixline@num}{%
    No number is attached if \ifl@dskipnumber is TRUE (and then it is set to its
    normal FALSE value). No number is attached if \ifnumberline is FALSE (the
    normal value is TRUE).

1163 \ifl@dskipnumber\else\ifnumberline
1164 \ifl@dskipnumber
1165   \global\l@dskipnumberfalse
1166 \else
1167   \ifsublines@
1168     \@l@tempcntb=\subline@num
1169     \ifnum\subline@num>\c@firstsublinenum
1170       \@l@tempcnta=\subline@num
1171       \advance\@l@tempcnta by-\c@firstsublinenum
1172       \divide\@l@tempcnta by\c@sublinenumincrement
1173       \multiply\@l@tempcnta by\c@sublinenumincrement
1174       \advance\@l@tempcnta by\c@firstsublinenum
1175     \else
1176       \@l@tempcnta=\c@firstsublinenum
1177   \fi

```

That takes care of computing the values for comparison, but if line number locking is in effect we have to make a further check. If this check fails, then we

disable the line-number display by setting the counters to arbitrary but unequal values.

```
1178 \ch@cksub@l@ck
```

Now the line number case, which works the same way.

```
1179 \else
```

```
1180 \@l@tempcntb=\line@num
```

Check on the `\linenumberlist` If it's `\empty` use the standard algorithm.

```
1181 \ifx\linenumberlist\empty
```

```
1182 \ifnum\line@num>\c@firstlinenum
```

```
1183 \@l@tempcnta=\line@num
```

```
1184 \advance\@l@tempcnta by-\c@firstlinenum
```

```
1185 \divide\@l@tempcnta by\c@linenumincrement
```

```
1186 \multiply\@l@tempcnta by\c@linenumincrement
```

```
1187 \advance\@l@tempcnta by\c@firstlinenum
```

```
1188 \else
```

```
1189 \@l@tempcnta=\c@firstlinenum
```

```
1190 \fi
```

```
1191 \else
```

The `\linenumberlist` wasn't `\empty`, so here's Wayne's numbering mechanism.

This takes place in TeX's mouth.

```
1192 \@l@tempcnta=\line@num
```

```
1193 \edef\rem@inder{\,\linenumberlist,\number\line@num,}%
```

```
1194 \edef\sc@n@list{\def\noexpand\sc@n@list
```

```
1195 ####1,\number\@l@tempcnta,####2|{\def\noexpand\rem@inder{####2}}}%
```

```
1196 \sc@n@list\expandafter\sc@n@list\rem@inder|%
```

```
1197 \ifx\rem@inder\empty\advance\@l@tempcnta\@ne\fi
```

```
1198 \fi
```

A locking check for lines, just like the version for sub-line numbers above.

```
1199 \ch@ck@l@ck
```

```
1200 \fi
```

The following test is true if we need to print a line number.

```
1201 \ifnum\@l@tempcnta=\@l@tempcntb
```

If we got here, we're going to print a line number; so now we need to calculate a number that will tell us which side of the page will get the line number. We start from `\line@margin`, which asks for one side always if it's less than 2; and then if the side does depend on the page number, we simply add the page number to this side code—because the values of `\line@margin` have been devised so that this produces a number that's even for left-margin numbers and odd for right-margin numbers.

For L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X we have to consider two column documents as well. In this case I think we need to put the numbers at the outside of the column — the left of the first column and the right of the second. Do the `twocolumn` stuff before going on with the original code.

```
\l@dld@ta A left line number is stored in \l@dld@ta and a right one in \l@drd@ta.
\l@drd@ta
```

```

1202 \if@twocolumn
1203   \if@firstcolumn
1204     \gdef\l@dld@ta{\llap{\leftlinenum}}}%
1205   \else
1206     \gdef\l@drd@ta{\rlap{\rightlinenum}}}%
1207   \fi
1208 \else

```

Continuing the original code ...

```

1209   \l@dttempcntb=\line@margin
1210   \ifnum\l@dttempcntb>\@ne
1211     \advance\l@dttempcntb \page@num
1212   \fi

```

Now print the line (#1) with its page number.

```

1213   \ifodd\l@dttempcntb
1214     \gdef\l@drd@ta{\rlap{\rightlinenum}}}%
1215   \else
1216     \gdef\l@dld@ta{\llap{\leftlinenum}}}%
1217   \fi
1218 \fi
1219 \else

```

As no line number is to be appended, we just print the line as is.

```

1220 %%   #1%
1221 \fi

```

Now fix the lock counters, if necessary. A value of 1 is advanced to 2; 3 advances to 0; other values are unchanged.

```

1222 \f@x@l@cks
1223 \fi
1224 \fi
1225 \fi
1226 }
1227

```

`\ch@cksub@l@ck` These macros handle line number locking for `\affixline@num`. `\ch@cksub@l@ck`  
`\ch@ck@l@ck` checks subline locking. If it fails, then we disable the line-number display by setting  
`\f@x@l@cks` the counters to arbitrary but unequal values.

```

1228 \newcommand*{\ch@cksub@l@ck}{%
1229   \ifcase\sub@lock
1230     \or
1231       \ifnum\sublock@disp=\@ne
1232         \l@dttempcntb=\z@ \l@dttempcnta=\@ne
1233       \fi
1234     \or
1235       \ifnum\sublock@disp=\tw@ \else
1236         \l@dttempcntb=\z@ \l@dttempcnta=\@ne
1237       \fi
1238     \or

```

```

1239     \ifnum\sublock@disp=\z@
1240         \@l@dttempcntb=\z@ \@l@dttempcnta=\@ne
1241     \fi
1242 \fi}

```

Similarly for line numbers.

```

1243 \newcommand*{\ch@ck@l@ck}{%
1244     \ifcase\@lock
1245     \or
1246         \ifnum\lock@disp=\@ne
1247             \@l@dttempcntb=\z@ \@l@dttempcnta=\@ne
1248         \fi
1249     \or
1250         \ifnum\lock@disp=\tw@ \else
1251             \@l@dttempcntb=\z@ \@l@dttempcnta=\@ne
1252         \fi
1253     \or
1254         \ifnum\lock@disp=\z@
1255             \@l@dttempcntb=\z@ \@l@dttempcnta=\@ne
1256         \fi
1257 \fi}

```

Fix the lock counters. A value of 1 is advanced to 2; 3 advances to 0; other values are unchanged.

```

1258 \newcommand*{\f@x@l@cks}{%
1259     \ifcase\@lock
1260     \or
1261         \global\@lock=\tw@
1262     \or \or
1263         \global\@lock=\z@
1264     \fi
1265     \ifcase\sub@lock
1266     \or
1267         \global\sub@lock=\tw@
1268     \or \or
1269         \global\sub@lock=\z@
1270     \fi}
1271

```

**\pageparbreak** Because of TeX's asynchronous page breaking mechanism we can never be sure juust where it will make a break and, naturally, it has already decided exactly how it will typeset any remainder of a paragraph that crosses the break. This is disconcerting when trying to number lines by the page or put line numbers in different margins. This macro tries to force an invisible paragraph break and a page break.

```

1272 \newcommand{\pageparbreak}{\pend\newpage\pstart\noindent}
1273

```

## 23.5 Pstart number printing in side

In side, the printing of pstart number is running like the printing of line number. There is only some differences:

- The pstarts counter is upgrade in the `\pend` command. Consequently, the `\affixpstart@num` command has not to upgrade it, unlike the `\affixline@num` which upgrades the lines counter.
- To print the pstart number only at the beginning of a pstart, and not in every line, a boolean test is made. The `\pstartnum` boolean is set to TRUE at every `\pend`. It's tried in the `\leftpstartnum` and `\rightpstartnum` commands. After the try, it is set to FALSE.

```

\leftpstartnum
\rightpstartnum 1274
\ifsidepstartnum 1275 \newif\ifsidepstartnum
1276 \newcommand*{\affixpstart@num}{%
1277   \ifsidepstartnum
1278     \if@twocolumn
1279       \if@firstcolumn
1280         \gdef\l@dld@ta{\llap{\leftpstartnum}}}%
1281       \else
1282         \gdef\l@drd@ta{\rlap{\rightpstartnum}}}%
1283       \fi
1284     \else
1285       \@l@tempcntb=\line@margin
1286       \ifnum\@l@tempcntb>\@ne
1287         \advance\@l@tempcntb \page@num
1288       \fi
1289       \ifodd\@l@tempcntb
1290         \gdef\l@drd@ta{\rlap{\rightpstartnum}}}%
1291       \else
1292         \gdef\l@dld@ta{\llap{\leftpstartnum}}}%
1293       \fi
1294     \fi
1295   \fi
1296
1297 }
1298 %
1299
1300 \newif\ifpstartnum
1301 \pstartnumtrue
1302 \newcommand*{\leftpstartnum}{
1303   \ifpstartnum\thepstart
1304   \kern\linenumsep\fi
1305   \global\pstartnumfalse
1306 }
1307 \newcommand*{\rightpstartnum}{
1308   \ifpstartnum

```

```

1309 \kern\linenumsep
1310 \thepstart
1311 \fi
1312 \global\pstartnumfalse
1313 }

```

### 23.6 Add insertions to the vertical list

`\inserts@list` `\inserts@list` is the list macro that contains the inserts that we save up for one paragraph.

```
1314 \list@create{\inserts@list}
```

`\add@inserts` `\add@inserts` is the penultimate macro used by `\do@line`; it takes insertions saved in a list macro and sends them onto the vertical list.

It may call itself recursively, and to do this efficiently (using T<sub>E</sub>X's optimization for tail recursion), we define a control-sequence called `\add@inserts@next` that is always the last thing that `\add@inserts` does. If there could be more inserts to process for this line, `\add@inserts@next` is set equal to `\add@inserts`; otherwise it's just `\relax`.

```

1315 \newcommand*{\add@inserts}{%
1316 \global\let\add@inserts@next=\relax

```

If `\inserts@list` is empty, there aren't any more notes or insertions for this paragraph, and we needn't waste our time.

```
1317 \ifx\inserts@list\empty \else
```

The `\next@insert` macro records the number of the line that receives the next footnote or other insert; it's empty when we start out, and just after we've affixed a note or insert.

```

1318 \ifx\next@insert\empty
1319 \ifx\insertlines@list\empty
1320 \global\noteschanged@true
1321 \gdef\next@insert{100000}%
1322 \else
1323 \glp\insertlines@list\to\next@insert
1324 \fi
1325 \fi

```

If the next insert's for this line, tack it on (and then erase the contents of the insert macro, as it could be quite large). In that case, we also set `\add@inserts@next` so that we'll call ourself recursively: there might be another insert for this same line.

```

1326 \ifnum\next@insert=\absline@num
1327 \glp\inserts@list\to\@insert
1328 \@insert
1329 \global\let\@insert=\undefined
1330 \global\let\next@insert=\empty
1331 \global\let\add@inserts@next=\add@inserts

```

```
1332 \fi
1333 \fi
```

Make the recursive call, if necessary.

```
1334 \add@inserts@next}
1335
```

## 23.7 Penalties

`\add@penalties` `\add@penalties` is the last macro used by `\do@line`. It adds up the club, widow, and interline penalties, and puts a single penalty of the appropriate size back into the paragraph; these penalties get removed by the `\vsplit` operation. `\displaywidowpenalty` and `\brokenpenalty` are not restored, since we have no easy way to find out where we should insert them.

In this code, `\num@lines` is the number of lines in the whole paragraph, and `\par@line` is the line we're working on at the moment. The count `\@l@tempcnta` is used to calculate and accumulate the penalty; it is initially set to the value of `\ballast@count`, which has been worked out in `\do@ballast` above (p.88). Finally, the penalty is checked to see that it doesn't go below  $-10000$ .

```
1336 \newcommand*{\add@penalties}{\@l@tempcnta=\ballast@count
1337 \ifnum\num@lines>\@ne
1338 \global\advance\par@line \@ne
1339 \ifnum\par@line=\@ne
1340 \advance\@l@tempcnta \clubpenalty
1341 \fi
1342 \@l@tempcntb=\par@line \advance\@l@tempcntb \@ne
1343 \ifnum\@l@tempcntb=\num@lines
1344 \advance\@l@tempcnta \widowpenalty
1345 \fi
1346 \ifnum\par@line<\num@lines
1347 \advance\@l@tempcnta \interlinepenalty
1348 \fi
1349 \fi
1350 \ifnum\@l@tempcnta=\z@
1351 \relax
1352 \else
1353 \ifnum\@l@tempcnta>-10000
1354 \penalty\@l@tempcnta
1355 \else
1356 \penalty -10000
1357 \fi
1358 \fi}
1359
```

## 23.8 Printing leftover notes

`\flush@notes` The `\flush@notes` macro is called after the entire paragraph has been sliced up and sent on to the vertical list. If the number of notes to this paragraph has

increased since the last run of  $\text{\TeX}$ , then there can be leftover notes that haven't yet been printed. An appropriate error message will be printed elsewhere; but it's best to go ahead and print these notes somewhere, even if it's not in quite the right place. What we do is dump them all out here, so that they should be printed on the same page as the last line of the paragraph. We can hope that's not too far from the proper location, to which they'll move on the next run.

```

1360 \newcommand*{\flush@notes}{%
1361   \@xloop
1362     \ifx\inserts@list\empty \else
1363       \gl@p\inserts@list\to\@insert
1364       \@insert
1365       \global\let\@insert=\undefined
1366   \repeat}
1367
```

**\@xloop**  $\text{\@xloop}$  is a variant of the PLAIN  $\text{\TeX}$   $\text{\loop}$  macro, useful when it's hard to construct a positive test using the  $\text{\TeX}$   $\text{\if}$  commands—as in  $\text{\flush@notes}$  above. One says  $\text{\@xloop} \dots \text{\if} \dots \text{\else} \dots \text{\repeat}$ , and the action following  $\text{\else}$  is repeated as long as the  $\text{\if}$  test fails. (This macro will work wherever the PLAIN  $\text{\TeX}$   $\text{\loop}$  is used, too, so we could just call it  $\text{\loop}$ ; but it seems preferable not to change the definitions of any of the standard macros.)

This variant of  $\text{\loop}$  was introduced by Alois Kabešchacht in *TUGboat* 8 (1987), pp. 184–5.

```

1368 \def\@xloop#1\repeat{%
1369   \def\body{#1\expandafter\body\fi}%
1370   \body}
1371
```

## 24 Footnotes

The footnote macros are adapted from those in PLAIN  $\text{\TeX}$ , but they differ in these respects: the outer-level commands must add other commands to a list macro rather than doing insertions immediately; there are five separate levels of the footnotes, not just one; and there are options to reformat footnotes into paragraphs or into multiple columns.

### 24.1 Fonts

Before getting into the details of formatting the notes, we set up some font macros. It is the notes that present the greatest challenge for our font-handling mechanism, because we need to be able to take fragments of our main text and print them in different forms: it is common to reduce the size, for example, without otherwise changing the fonts used.

**\select@lemmafont**  $\text{\select@lemmafont}$  is provided to set the right font for the lemma in a note.  
**\select@@lemmafont** This macro extracts the font specifier from the line and page number cluster, and

issues the associated font-changing command, so that the lemma is printed in its original font.

```

1372 \def\select@lemmafонт#1|#2|#3|#4|#5|#6|#7|{\select@lemmafонт#7|}
1373 \def\select@lemmafонт#1/#2/#3/#4|{%
1374   {\fontencoding{#1}\fontfamily{#2}\fontseries{#3}\fontshape{#4}%
1375   \selectfont}
1376

```

## 24.2 Outer-level footnote commands

`\footnoteoptions@` The `\footnoteoption@` [*side*] [*options*] [*value*] change the value of on options of Xfootnote, to switch between true and false.

```

1377 \newcommandx*{\footnoteoptions@}[3][1=L,usedefault]{%
1378   \def\do##1{%
1379     \ifstrequal{#1}{L}{% In Leftside
1380       \xright@appenditem{\global\noexpand\settoggle{##1@}{#3}}\to\inserts@list% Switch toogle, in
1381       \global\advance\insert@count \@ne% Increment the left insert counter.
1382     }%
1383     {%
1384       \xright@appenditem{\global\noexpand\settoggle{##1@}{#3}}\to\inserts@listR% Switch toogle, in
1385       \global\advance\insert@countR \@ne% Increment the right insert counter insert.
1386     }%
1387   }%
1388   \notblank{#2}{\docsvlist{#2}}{}% Parsing all options
1389 }

```

`\footnotelang@lua` `\footnotelang@lua` is called to remember the information about the language of a lemma when LuaLaTeX is used.

```

1390 \newcommandx*{\footnotelang@lua}[1][1=L,usedefault]{%
1391   \ifstrequal{#1}{L}{%
1392     \xright@appenditem{{\csxdef{footnote@luatextextdir}{\the\luatextextdir}}}\to\inserts@list%Know the
1393     \global\advance\insert@count \@ne%
1394     \xright@appenditem{{\csxdef{footnote@luatexpardir}{\the\luatexpardir}}}\to\inserts@list%Know the
1395     \global\advance\insert@count \@ne%
1396   }%
1397   {%
1398     \xright@appenditem{{\csxdef{footnote@luatextextdir}{\the\luatextextdir}}}\to\inserts@listR%Know the
1399     \global\advance\insert@countR \@ne%
1400     \xright@appenditem{{\csxdef{footnote@luatexpardir}{\the\luatexpardir}}}\to\inserts@listR%Know the
1401     \global\advance\insert@countR \@ne%
1402   }%
1403 }

```

`\footnotelang@poly` `\footnotelang@poly` is called to remember the information about the language of a lemma when Polyglossia is used.

```

1404 \newcommandx*{\footnotelang@poly}[1][1=L,usedefault]{%
1405   \ifstrequal{#1}{L}{%
1406     \if@RTL%

```

```

1407     \xright@appenditem{{\csxdef{footnote@dir}{@RTLtrue}}}\to\inserts@list%Know the la
1408     \global\advance\insert@count \@ne%
1409   \else
1410     \xright@appenditem{{\csxdef{footnote@dir}{@RTLfalse}}}\to\inserts@list%Know the 1
1411     \global\advance\insert@count \@ne%
1412   \fi%
1413   \xright@appenditem{{\csxdef{footnote@lang}{\csexpandonce{language}}}\to\inserts@
1414   \global\advance\insert@count \@ne%
1415 }%
1416 {%
1417   \if@RTL
1418     \xright@appenditem{{\csxdef{footnote@dir}{@RTLtrue}}}\to\inserts@listR%Know the 1
1419     \global\advance\insert@countR \@ne%
1420   \else
1421     \xright@appenditem{{\csxdef{footnote@dir}{@RTLfalse}}}\to\inserts@listR%Know the
1422     \global\advance\insert@countR \@ne%
1423   \fi
1424   \xright@appenditem{{\csxdef{footnote@lang}{\csexpandonce{language}}}\to\inserts@
1425   \global\advance\insert@countR \@ne%
1426 }%
1427 }

```

### 24.3 Normal footnote formatting

The processing of each note is done by four principal macros: the `\vfootnote` macro takes the text of the footnote and does the `\insert`; it calls on the `\footfmt` macro to select the right fonts, print the line number and lemma, and do any other formatting needed for that individual note. Within the output routine, the two other macros, `\footstart` and `\footgroup`, are called; the first prints extra vertical space and a footnote rule, if desired; the second does any reformatting of the whole set of the footnotes in this series for this page—such as paragraphing or division into columns—and then sends them to the page.

These four macros, and the other macros and parameters shown here, are distinguished by the ‘series letter’ that indicates which set of the footnotes we’re dealing with—A, B, C, D, or E. The series letter always precedes the string `foot` in macro and parameter names. Hence, for the A series, the four macros are called `\vAfootnote`, `\Afootfmt`, `\Afootstart`, and `\Afootgroup`.

`\normalvfootnote` We now begin a series of commands that do ‘normal’ footnote formatting: a format much like that implemented in PLAIN  $\text{\TeX}$ , in which each footnote is a separate paragraph.

`\normalvfootnote` takes the series letter as #1, and the entire text of the footnote is #2. It does the `\insert` for this note, calling on the `\footfmt` macro for this note series to format the text of the note.

```

1428 \notbool{parapparatus@}{\newcommand*}{\newcommand}{\normalvfootnote}[2]{%
1429   \insert\csname #1footins\endcsname\bgroup
1430   \csuse{bhookXnote@#1}
1431   \csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}

```

```

1432 \footsplitskips
1433 \spaceskip=\z@skip \xspaceskip=\z@skip
1434 \csname #1footfmt\endcsname #2[#1]\egroup}

```

`\footsplitskips` Some setup code that is common for a variety of the footnotes.

```

1435 \newcommand*{\footsplitskips}{%
1436   \interlinepenalty=\interfootnotelinepenalty
1437   \floatingpenalty=\@MM
1438   \splittopskip=\ht\strutbox \splitmaxdepth=\dp\strutbox
1439   \leftskip=\z@skip \rightskip=\z@skip}
1440

```

`\mpnormalvfootnote` And a somewhat different version for minipages.

```

1441 \notbool{parapparatus@}{\newcommand*}{\newcommand}{\mpnormalvfootnote}[2]{%
1442   \global\setbox\@nameuse{mp#1footins}\vbox{%
1443     \unvbox\@nameuse{mp#1footins}
1444     \csuse{bhookXnote@#1}
1445     \csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}
1446     \hsize\columnwidth
1447     \@parboxrestore
1448     \color@begingroup
1449     \csname #1footfmt\endcsname #2[#1]\color@endgroup}}
1450

```

`\ledsetnormalparstuff` `\normalfootfmt` is a ‘normal’ macro to take the footnote line and page number information (see p.60), and the desired text, and output what’s to be printed. Argument #1 contains the line and page number information and lemma font specifier; #2 is the lemma; #3 is the note’s text. This version is very rudimentary—it uses `\printlines` to print just the range of line numbers, followed by a square bracket, the lemma, and the note text; it’s intended to be copied and modified as necessary.

`\par` should always be redefined to `\endgraf` within the format macro (this is what `\normal@pars` does), to override tricky material in the main text to get the lines numbered automatically (as set up by `\autopar`, for example).

```

1451 \newcommand*{\ledsetnormalparstuff}{%
1452   \ifluatex%
1453     \luatextextdir\footnote@luatextextdir%
1454     \luatexpardir\footnote@luatexpardir%
1455     \fi%
1456     \csuse{\csuse{footnote@dir}}}%
1457   \normal@pars%
1458   \noindent \parfillskip \z@ \@plus 1fil}
1459
1460 \notbool{parapparatus@}{\newcommandx*}{\newcommandx}{\normalfootfmt}[4][4=Z]{% 4th arg is optional, f
1461   \ledsetnormalparstuff%
1462   \hangindent=\csuse{Xhangindent@#4}
1463   \strut{\printlinefootnote{#1}{#4}}%
1464   {\nottoggle{Xlemmadisablefontselection@#4}{\select@lemmafont#1|#2}{#2}}%

```

```

1465 \iftoggle{nosep@}{\hskip\csuse{inplaceoflemmaseparator@#4}}{\ifcsempy{lemmaseparator@#4}}
1466     {\hskip\csuse{inplaceoflemmaseparator@#4}}}%
1467     {\nobreak\hskip\csuse{beforelemmaseparator@#4}\csuse{lemmaseparator@#4}\hskip\csuse{a
1468     }}%
1469     #3\strut\par}

```

**\endashchar** The fonts that are used for printing notes might not have the character mapping we expect: for example, the Computer Modern font that contains old-style numerals does not contain an en-dash or square brackets, and its period and comma are in odd locations. To allow use of the standard footnote macros with such fonts, we use the following macros for certain characters.

The **\endashchar** macro is simply an en-dash from the normal font and is immune to changes in the surrounding font. The same goes for the full stop. These two are used in **\printlines**. The right bracket macro is the same again; it crops up in **\normalfootfmt** and the other footnote macros for controlling the format of the footnotes.

With polyglossia, each critical note has a **\footnote@lang** which shows the language of the lemma, and which can be used to switch the bracket from right to left.

```

1470 \def\endashchar{\textnormal{--}}
1471 \newcommand*{\fullstop}{\textnormal{.}}
1472 \newcommand*{\rbracket}{\textnormal{%
1473     \csuse{text\csuse{footnote@lang}}}%
1474     \ifluatex%
1475     \ifdefstring{\footnote@luatextextdir}{TRT}{\thinspace[]\thinspace}}%
1476     \else%
1477     \thinspace}%
1478     \fi}%
1479 }%
1480 }
1481

```

**\printpstart** The **\printpstart** macro prints the pstart number for a note.

```

1482 \newcommand{\printpstart}[0]{%
1483     \ifl@dpairing%
1484         \ifledRcol%
1485             \thepstartR%
1486         \else%
1487             \thepstartL%
1488         \fi%
1489     \else%
1490         \thepstart%
1491     \fi%
1492 }

```

The **\printlines** macro prints the line numbers for a note—which, in the general case, is a rather complicated task. The seven parameters of the argument are the line numbers as stored in **\l@d@nums**, in the form described on page 60: the

starting page, line, and sub-line numbers, followed by the ending page, line, and sub-line numbers, and then the font specifier for the lemma.

The original EDMAC code used several counters at this point, saying:

To simplify the logic, we use a lot of counters to tell us which numbers need to get printed (using 1 for yes, 0 for no, so that `\ifodd` tests for ‘yes’). The counter assignments are:

- `\@pnum` for page numbers;
- `\@ssub` for starting sub-line;
- `\@elin` for ending line;
- `\@esl` for ending sub-line; and
- `\@dash` for the dash between the starting and ending groups.

There’s no counter for the line number because it’s always printed.

L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X tends to use a lot of counters and packages should try and minimise the number of new ones they create. In line with this Peter Wilson have reverted to traditional booleans.

```

\ifl@d@pnum
\ifl@d@ssub 1493 \newif\ifl@d@pnum
\ifl@d@elin 1494 \l@d@pnumfalse
\ifl@d@esl 1495 \newif\ifl@d@ssub
\ifl@d@dash 1496 \l@d@ssubfalse
1497 \newif\ifl@d@elin
1498 \l@d@elinfalse
1499 \newif\ifl@d@esl
1500 \l@d@eslfalse
1501 \newif\ifl@d@dash
1502 \l@d@dashfalse

\l@dp@rsefootsspec \l@dp@rsefootsspec{<spec>}{<lemma>}{<text>} parses a footnote specification.
\l@dp@rsefootsspec <lemma> and <text> are the lemma and text respectively. <spec> is the line and
\l@dp@rsefootsspec page number and lemma font specifier in \l@d@nums style format. The real work
\l@dp@rsefootsspec is done by \l@dp@rsefootsspec which defines macros holding the numeric values.
\l@dp@rsefootsspec 1503 \newcommand*{\l@dp@rsefootsspec}[3]{\l@dp@rsefootsspec#1|}
\l@dp@rsefootsspec 1504 \def\l@dp@rsefootsspec#1|#2|#3|#4|#5|#6|#7|{%
\l@dp@rsefootsspec 1505 \gdef\l@dp@rsefootsspecstartpage{#1}%
\l@dp@rsefootsspec 1506 \gdef\l@dp@rsefootsspecstartline{#2}%
1507 \gdef\l@dp@rsefootsspecstartsub{#3}%
1508 \gdef\l@dp@rsefootsspecendpage{#4}%
1509 \gdef\l@dp@rsefootsspecendline{#5}%
1510 \gdef\l@dp@rsefootsspecendsub{#6}%
1511 }

Initialise the several number value macros.
1512 \def\l@dp@rsefootsspecstartpage{0}%
1513 \def\l@dp@rsefootsspecstartline{0}%
1514 \def\l@dp@rsefootsspecstartsub{0}%

```

```

1515 \def\l@dparsedendpage{0}%
1516 \def\l@dparsedendline{0}%
1517 \def\l@dparsedendsub{0}%
1518

```

`\setprintlines` First of all, we print the page numbers only if: 1) we're doing the lineation by page, and 2) the ending page number is different from the starting page number.

Just a reminder of the arguments:

```

\printlines    #1      | #2 | #3   |    #4   | #5 | #6      |    #7
\printlines start-page | line | subline | end-page | line | subline | font

```

The macro `\setprintlines` does the work of deciding what numbers should be printed. Its arguments are the same as the first 6 of `\printlines`.

```

1519 \newcommand*\setprintlines[6]{%
1520   \l@d@pnumfalse \l@d@dashfalse
1521   \ifbypage@
1522     \ifnum#4=#1 \else
1523       \l@d@pnumtrue
1524       \l@d@dashtrue
1525     \fi
1526   \fi

```

We print the ending line number if: (1) we're printing the ending page number, or (2) it's different from the starting line number.

```

1527   \ifl@d@pnum \l@d@elintrue \else \l@d@elinfalse \fi
1528   \ifnum#2=#5 \else
1529     \l@d@elintrue
1530     \l@d@dashtrue
1531   \fi

```

We print the starting sub-line if it's nonzero.

```

1532   \l@d@ssubfalse
1533   \ifnum#3=0 \else
1534     \l@d@ssubtrue
1535   \fi

```

We print the ending sub-line if it's nonzero and: (1) it's different from the starting sub-line number, or (2) the ending line number is being printed.

```

1536   \l@d@eslfalse
1537   \ifnum#6=0 \else
1538     \ifnum#6=#3
1539       \ifl@d@elin \l@d@esltrue \else \l@d@eslfalse \fi
1540     \else
1541       \l@d@esltrue
1542       \l@d@dashtrue
1543     \fi
1544   \fi}

```

`\printlines` Now we're ready to print it all. If the lineation is by pstart, we print the pstart.

```

1545 \def\printlines#1|#2|#3|#4|#5|#6|#7|{\begingroup
1546   \setprintlines{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}{#6}%

```

One subtlety left here is when to print a period between numbers. But the only instance in which this is tricky is for the ending sub-line number: it could come after the starting sub-line number (in which case we want only the dash) or after an ending line number (in which case we need to insert a period).

```

1547 \ifl@d@pnum #1\fullstop\fi
1548 \linenumrep{#2}

1549 \ifl@d@ssub \fullstop \sublinenumrep{#3}\fi
1550 \ifl@d@dash \endashchar\fi
1551 \ifl@d@pnum #4\fullstop\fi
1552 \ifl@d@elin \linenumrep{#5}\fi
1553 \ifl@d@esl \ifl@d@elin \fullstop\fi \sublinenumrep{#6}\fi
1554 \endgroup}

```

`\normalfootstart` `\normalfootstart` is a standard footnote-starting macro, called in the output routine whenever there are footnotes of this series to be printed: it skips a bit and then draws a rule.

Any `footstart` macro must put onto the page something that takes up space exactly equal to the `\skip\footins` value for the associated series of notes. `TEX` makes page computations based on that `\skip` value, and the output pages will suffer from spacing problems if what you add takes up a different amount of space.

But if the skip `\preXnotes@` is greater than 0 pt, it's used instead of `\skip\footins` for the first printed series.

The `\leftskip` and `\rightskip` values are both zeroed here. Similarly, these skips are cancelled in the `vfootnote` macros for the various types of notes. Strictly speaking, this is necessary only if you are using paragraphed footnotes, but we have put it here and in the other `vfootnote` macros too so that the behavior of `eledmac` in this respect is general across all footnote types (you can change this). What this means is that any `\leftskip` and `\rightskip` you specify applies to the main text, but not the footnotes. The footnotes continue to be of width `\hsize`.

```

1555 \newcommand*{\normalfootstart}[1]{%
1556   \ifdimequal{0pt}{\preXnotes@}{}%
1557   {%
1558     \iftoggle{preXnotes@}{%
1559       \togglefalse{preXnotes@}\skip\csname #1footins\endcsname=\csuse{preXnotes@}}%
1560     }%
1561   }%
1562   \vskip\skip\csname #1footins\endcsname%
1563   \leftskip0pt \rightskip0pt
1564   \csname #1footnoterule\endcsname%
1565   \vskip\csuse{afterXrule@#1}%
1566   \noindent\leavevmode}

```

`\normalfootnoterule` `\normalfootnoterule` is a standard footnote-rule macro, for use by a `footstart` macro: just the same as the PLAIN `TEX` footnote rule.

```

1567 \let\normalfootnoterule=\footnoterule

```

`\normalfootgroup` `\normalfootgroup` is a standard footnote-grouping macro: it sends the contents of the footnote-insert box to the output page without alteration.

```
1568 \newcommand*{\normalfootgroup}[1]{\csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}\noindent\csuse{txtbeforeXnotes}
1569
```

`\mpnormalfootgroup` A somewhat different version for minipages.

```
1570 \newcommand*{\mpnormalfootgroup}[1]{\{
1571   \vskip\skip\@nameuse{mp#1footins}
1572   \ifl@dpairing\ifparledgroup%
1573     \leavevmode\marks\parledgroup@{begin}%
1574     \marks\parledgroup@series{#1}%
1575     \marks\parledgroup@type{Xfootnote}%
1576   \fi\fi\normalcolor%
1577   \ifparledgroup%
1578     \ifl@dpairing%
1579     \else%
1580       \@nameuse{#1footnoterule}%
1581       \vskip\csuse{afterXrule@#1}%
1582     \fi%
1583   \else%
1584     \@nameuse{#1footnoterule}%
1585     \vskip\csuse{afterXrule@#1}%
1586   \fi%
1587   \setlength{\parindent}{0pt}
1588   {\csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}\csuse{txtbeforeXnotes@#1}}
1589   \unvbox\csmname mp#1footins\endcsmname}}
1590
```

## 24.4 Standard footnote definitions

`\footnormal` We can now define all the parameters for the five series of footnotes; initially they use the ‘normal’ footnote formatting, which is set up by calling `\footnormal`. You can switch to another type of formatting by using `\footparagraph`, `\foottwocol`, or `\footthreecol`.

Switching to a variation of ‘normal’ formatting requires changing the quantities defined in `\footnormal`. The best way to proceed would be to make a copy of this macro, with a different name, make your desired changes in that copy, and then invoke it, giving it the letter of the footnote series you wish to control.

(We have not defined baseline skip values like `\abaselineskip`, since this is one of the quantities set in `\notefontsetup`.)

What we want to do here is to say something like the following for each footnote series. (This is an example, not part of the actual `eledmac` code.)

```
\skip\Afootins=12pt plus5pt minus5pt
\count\Afootins=1000
\dimen\Afootins=0.8\vsiz
\let\Afootnote=\normalvfootnote \let\Afootfmt=\normalfootfmt
\let\Afootstart=\normalfootstart \let\Afootgroup=\normalfootgroup
```

```
\let\Afootnoterule=\normalfootnoterule
```

Instead of repeating ourselves, we define a `\footnormal` macro that makes all these assignments for us, for any given series letter. This also makes it easy to change from any different system of formatting back to the `normal` setting.

`\ledfootinsdim` Have a constant value for the `\dimen\footins`

```
1591 \newcommand*{\ledfootinsdim}{0.8\size} % kept for backward compatibility, should'nt be used anymore.
```

`\preXnotes@` If user redefines `\preXnotes@`, via `\preXnotes` to a value greater than 0 pt, this `\preXnotes` skip will be added before first series notes instead of the notes skip.

```
1592 \newtoggle{preXnotes@}
1593 \toggletrue{preXnotes@}
1594 \newcommand{\preXnotes@}{0pt}
1595 \newcommand*{\preXnotes}[1]{\renewcommand{\preXnotes@}{#1}}
```

The same, but for familiar footnotes.

`\preXnotes`

```
\preXnotes@ 1596 \newtoggle{prenotesX@}
1597 \toggletrue{prenotesX@}
1598 \newcommand{\prenotesX@}{0pt}
1599 \newcommand*{\prenotesX}[1]{\renewcommand{\prenotesX@}{#1}}
```

Now we set up the `\footnormal` macro itself. It takes one argument: the footnote series letter.

```
1600 \newcommand*{\footnormal}[1]{%
1601   \csgdef{series@display#1}{normal}
1602   \expandafter\let\csname #1footstart\endcsname=\normalfootstart
1603   \expandafter\let\csname v#1footnote\endcsname=\normalvfootnote
1604   \expandafter\let\csname #1footfmt\endcsname=\normalfootfmt
1605   \expandafter\let\csname #1footgroup\endcsname=\normalfootgroup
1606   \expandafter\let\csname #1footnoterule\endcsname=%
1607                               \normalfootnoterule
1608   \count\csname #1footins\endcsname=1000
1609   \dimen\csname #1footins\endcsname=\csuse{maxhXnotes@#1}
1610   \skip\csname #1footins\endcsname=\csuse{beforeXnotes@#1}
```

Now do the setup for minipage footnotes. We use as much as possible of the normal setup as we can (so the notes will have a similar layout).

```
1611 \expandafter\let\csname mpv#1footnote\endcsname=\mpnormalvfootnote
1612 \expandafter\let\csname mp#1footgroup\endcsname=\mpnormalfootgroup
1613 \count\csname mp#1footins\endcsname=1000
1614 \dimen\csname mp#1footins\endcsname=\csuse{maxhXnotes@#1}
1615 \skip\csname mp#1footins\endcsname=\csuse{beforeXnotes@#1}
1616 }
1617
```

Some of these values deserve comment: the `\dimen` setting allows 80% of the page to be occupied by notes; the `\skip` setting is deliberately flexible, since pages with lots of notes attached to many of the lines can be a bit hard for `TEX` to make.

## 24.5 Paragraphed footnotes

The paragraphed-footnote option reformats all the footnotes of one series for a page into a single paragraph; this is especially appropriate when the notes are numerous and brief. The code is based on *The TeXbook*, pp.398–400, with alterations for our environment. This algorithm uses a considerable amount of save-stack space: a T<sub>E</sub>X of ordinary size may not be able to handle more than about 100 notes of this kind on a page.

**\footparagraph** The `\footparagraph` macro sets up everything for one series of the footnotes so that they'll be paragraphed; it takes the series letter as argument. We include the setting of `\count\footins` to 1000 for the footnote series just in case you are switching to paragraphed footnotes after having columnar ones, since they change this value (see below).

It is important to call `\footparagraph` only after `\hsize` has been set for the pages that use this series of notes; otherwise T<sub>E</sub>X will try to put too many or too few of these notes on each page. If you need to change the `\hsize` within the document, call `\footparagraph` again afterwards to take account of the new value. The argument of `\footparagraph` is the letter (A–E) denoting the series of notes to be paragraphed.

```

1618 \newcommand*{\footparagraph}[1]{%
1619   \csgdef{series@display#1}{paragraph}
1620   \expandafter\newcount\csname prevpage#1@num\endcsname
1621   \expandafter\let\csname #1footstart\endcsname=\parafootstart
1622   \expandafter\let\csname v#1footnote\endcsname=\para@vfootnote
1623   \expandafter\let\csname #1footfmt\endcsname=\parafootfmt
1624   \expandafter\let\csname #1footgroup\endcsname=\para@footgroup
1625   \count\csname #1footins\endcsname=1000
1626   \dimen\csname #1footins\endcsname=\csuse{maxhXnotes@#1}
1627   \skip\csname #1footins\endcsname=\csuse{beforeXnotes@#1}
1628   \para@footsetup{#1}

```

And the extra setup for minipages.

```

1629   \expandafter\let\csname mpv#1footnote\endcsname=\mppara@vfootnote
1630   \expandafter\let\csname mp#1footgroup\endcsname=\mppara@footgroup
1631   \count\csname mp#1footins\endcsname=1000
1632   \dimen\csname mp#1footins\endcsname=\csuse{maxhXnotes@#1}
1633   \skip\csname mp#1footins\endcsname=\csuse{beforeXnotes@#1}
1634 }

```

**\footfudgefiddle** For paragraphed footnotes T<sub>E</sub>X has to estimate the amount of space required. If it underestimates this then the notes may get too long and run off the bottom of the text block. `\footfudgefiddle` can be increased from its default 64 (say to 70) to increase the estimate.

```

1635 \providecommand{\footfudgefiddle}{64}

```

**\para@footsetup** `\footparagraph` calls the `\para@footsetup` macro to calculate a special fudge factor, which is the ratio of the `\baselineskip` to the `\hsize`. We assume that the proper value of `\baselineskip` for the footnotes (normally 9 pt) has been set

already, in `\notefontsetup`. The argument of the macro is again the note series letter.

Peter Wilson thinks that `\columnwidth` should be used here for L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X not `\hsize`. I've also included `\footfudgefiddle`.

```
1636 \newcommand*{\para@footsetup}[1]{\csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}
1637   \dimen0=\baselineskip
1638   \multiply\dimen0 by 1024
1639   \divide \dimen0 by \columnwidth \multiply\dimen0 by \footfudgefiddle\relax
1640   \expandafter
1641   \xdef\csname #1footfudgefactor\endcsname{%
1642     \expandafter\strip@pt\dimen0 }}
1643
```

EDMAC defines `\en@number` which does the same as the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X kernel `\strip@pt`, namely strip the characters `pt` from a `dimen` value. Eledmac use `\strip@pt`.

`\parafootstart` `\parafootstart` is the same as `\normalfootstart`, but we give it again to ensure that `\rightskip` and `\leftskip` are zeroed (this needs to be done before `\para@footgroup` in the output routine). You might have decided to change this for other kinds of note, but here it should stay as it is. The size of paragraphed notes is calculated using a fudge factor which in turn is based on `\hsize`. So the paragraph of notes needs to be that wide.

The argument of the macro is again the note series letter.

```
1644 \newcommand*{\parafootstart}[1]{%
1645   \rightskip=0pt \leftskip=0pt \parindent=0pt
1646   \ifdimequal{0pt}{\preXnotes@}{}%
1647     {%
1648       \iftoggle{preXnotes@}{%
1649         \togglefalse{preXnotes@}\skip\csname #1footins\endcsname=\csuse{preXnotes@}}%
1650       }%
1651     }%
1652   \vskip\skip\csname #1footins\endcsname%
1653   \csname #1footnoterule\endcsname%
1654   \vskip\csuse{afterXrule@#1}%
1655   \noindent\leavevmode}
```

`\para@vfootnote` `\para@vfootnote` is a version of the `\vfootnote` command that's used for paragraphed notes. It gets appended to the `\inserts@list` list by an outer-level footnote command like `\Afootnote`. The first argument is the note series letter; the second is the full text of the printed note itself, including line numbers, lemmata, and footnote text.

The initial model for this insertion is, of course, the `\insert\footins` definition in *The TeXbook*, p. 398. There, the footnotes are first collected up in `hboxes`, and these `hboxes` are later unpacked and stuck together into a paragraph.

However, Michael Downes has pointed out that because text in `hboxes` gets typeset in restricted horizontal mode, there are some undesirable side-effects if you later want to break such text across lines. In restricted horizontal mode, where T<sub>E</sub>X does not expect to have to break lines, it does not insert certain items

like `\discretionary`s. If you later unbox these hboxes and stick them together, as the *TeXbook* macros do to make these footnotes, you lose the ability to hyphenate after an explicit hyphen. This can lead to overfull `\hboxes` when you would not expect to find them, and to the uninitiated it might be very hard to see why the problem had arisen.<sup>23</sup>

Wayne Sullivan pointed out to us another subtle problem that arises from the same cause: `\TeX` also leaves the `\language` whatsit nodes out of the horizontal list.<sup>24</sup> So changes from one language to another will not invoke the proper hyphenation rules in such footnotes. Since critical editions often do deal with several languages, especially in a footnotes, we really ought to get this bit of code right.

To get around these problems, Wayne suggested emendations to the *TeXbook* versions of these macros which are broadly the same as those described by Michael: the central idea (also suggested by Donald Knuth in a letter to Michael) is to avoid collecting the text in an `\hbox` in the first place, but instead to collect it in a `\vbox` whose width is (virtually) infinite. The text is therefore typeset in unrestricted horizontal mode, as a paragraph consisting of a single long line. Later, there is an extra level of unboxing to be done: we have to unpack the `\vbox`, as well as the hboxes inside it, but that's not too hard. For details, we refer you to Michael's article, where the issues are clearly explained.<sup>25</sup> Michael's unboxing macro is called `\unvxh`: unvbox, extract the last line, and unhbox it.

Doing things this way has an important consequence: as Michael pointed out, you really can't put an explicit line-break into a note built in a `\vbox` the way we are doing.<sup>26</sup> In other words, be very careful not to say `\break`, or `\penalty-10000`, or any equivalent inside your para-footnote. If you do, most of the note will probably disappear. You *are* allowed to make strong suggestions; in fact `\penalty-9999` will be quite okay. Just don't make the break mandatory. We haven't applied any of Michael's solutions here, since we feel that the problem is exiguous, and `eledmac` is quite baroque enough already. If you think you are having this problem, look up Michael's solutions.

One more thing; we set `\leftskip` and `\rightskip` to zero. This has the effect of neutralizing any such skips which may apply to the main text (cf. p. 105 above). We need to do this, since `footfudgefactor` is calculated on the assumption that the notes are `\hsize` wide.

So, finally, here is the modified foot-paragraph code, which sets the footnote in vertical mode so that language and discretionary nodes are included.

```
1656 \newcommand*{\para@vfootnote}[2]{%
1657   \insert\csname #1footins\endcsname
1658   \bgroup
1659     \csuse{bhookXnote@#1}
1660     \csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}
1661     \footsplitskips
```

<sup>23</sup>Michael Downes, 'Line Breaking in `\unboxed` Text', *TUGboat* 11 (1990), pp. 605–612.

<sup>24</sup>See *The TeXbook*, p. 455 (editions after January 1990).

<sup>25</sup>Wayne supplied his own macros to do this, but since they were almost identical to Michael's, we have used the latter's `\unvxh` macro since it is publicly documented.

<sup>26</sup>'Line Breaking', p. 610.

```

1662 \setbox0=\vbox{\hsize=\maxdimen
1663 \noindent\csname #1footfmt\endcsname#2[#1]}%
1664 \setbox0=\hbox{\unvxh0[#1]}%
1665 \dp0=0pt
1666 \ht0=\csname #1footfudgefactor\endcsname\wd0

```

Here we produce the contents of the footnote from box 0, and add a penalty of 0 between boxes in this insert.

```

1667 \if@RTL\noindent \leavevmode\fi\box0%
1668 \penalty0
1669 \egroup}
1670

```

The final penalty of 0 was added here at Wayne's suggestion to avoid a weird page-breaking problem, which occurs on those occasions when T<sub>E</sub>X attempts to split foot paragraphs. After trying out such a split (see *The TeXbook*, p.124), T<sub>E</sub>X inserts a penalty of -10000 here, which nearly always forces the break at the end of the whole footnote paragraph (since individual notes can't be split) even when this leads to an overfull vbox. The change above results in a penalty of 0 instead which allows, but doesn't force, such breaks. This penalty of 0 is later removed, after page breaks have been decided, by the `\unpenalty` macro in `\makehboxofhboxes`. So it does not affect how the footnote paragraphs are typeset (the notes still have a penalty of -10 between them, which is added by `\parafootfmt`).

`\mppara@vfootnote` This version is for minipages.

```

1671 \newcommand*{\mppara@vfootnote}[2]{%
1672 \global\setbox\@nameuse{mp#1footins}\vbox{%
1673 \unvbox\@nameuse{mp#1footins}%
1674 \csuse{bhookXnote@#1}
1675 \csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}
1676 \footssplitsskip
1677 \setbox0=\vbox{\hsize=\maxdimen
1678 \noindent\color@begingroup\csname #1footfmt\endcsname #2[#1]\color@endgroup}%
1679 \setbox0=\hbox{\unvxh0[#1]}%
1680 \dp0=\z@
1681 \ht0=\csname #1footfudgefactor\endcsname\wd0
1682 \box0
1683 \penalty0
1684 }}
1685

```

`\unvxh` Here is (modified) Michael's definition of `\unvxh`, used above. Michael's macro also takes care to remove some unwanted penalties and glue that T<sub>E</sub>X automatically attaches to the end of paragraphs. When T<sub>E</sub>X finishes a paragraph, it throws away any remaining glue, and then tacks on the following items: a `\penalty` of 10000, a `\parfillskip` and a `\rightskip` (*The TeXbook*, pp.99-100). `\unvxh` cancels these unwanted paragraph-final items using `\unskip` and `\unpenalty`.

```

1686 \newcommandx*{\unvxh}[2][2=Z]{% 2th is optional for retro-compatibility

```

```

1687 \setbox0=\vbox{\unvbox#1%
1688   \global\setbox1=\lastbox}%
1689 \unhbox1
1690 \unskip           % remove \rightskip,
1691 \unskip           % remove \parfillskip,
1692 \unpenalty        % remove \penalty of 10000,
1693 \hskip\csuse{afternote@#2}} % but add the glue to go between the notes
1694

```

`\parafootfmt` `\parafootfmt` is `\normalfootfmt` adapted to do the special stuff needed for paragraphed notes—leaving out the `\endgraf` at the end, sticking in special penalties and kern, and leaving out the `\footstrut`. The first argument is the line and page number information, the second is the lemma, the third is the text of the footnote, and the fourth is the series (optional, for backward compatibility).

```

1695 \newcommand*{\parafootfmt}[4][4=Z]{%
1696   \insertparafootsep{#4}%
1697   \ledsetnormalparstuff%
1698   \printlinefootnote{#1}{#4}%
1699   {\nottoggle{Xlemmadisablefontselection@#4}{\select@lemmafnt#1|#2}{#2}}%
1700   \iftoggle{nosep@}{\hskip\csuse{inplaceoflemmaseparator@#4}}{\ifcsemtyp{lemmaseparator@#4}}%
1701     {\hskip\csuse{inplaceoflemmaseparator@#4}}%
1702     {\nobreak\hskip\csuse{beforelemmaseparator@#4}\csuse{lemmaseparator@#4}\hskip\csuse{afterlemmaseparator@#4}}%
1703   }%
1704   #3\penalty-10 }

```

Note that in the above definition, the penalty of  $-10$  encourages a line break between notes, so that notes have a slight tendency to begin on new lines. The `\insertparafootsep` command is used to insert the `\parafootsep@series` between each note in the *same* page.

`\para@footgroup` This `footgroup` code is modelled on the macros in *The TeXbook*, p. 399. The only difference is the `\unpenalty` in `\makehboxofhboxes`, which is there to remove the penalty of 0 which was added to the end of each footnote by `\para@vfootnote`.

The call to `\notefontsetup` is to ensure that the correct `\baselineskip` for the footnotes is used. The argument is the note series letter.

```

1705 \newcommand*{\para@footgroup}[1]{%
1706   \unvbox\csname #1footins\endcsname
1707   \ifcsstring{Xragged@#1}{L}{\RaggedLeft}{}%
1708   \ifcsstring{Xragged@#1}{R}{\RaggedRight}{}%
1709   \makehboxofhboxes
1710   \setbox0=\hbox{\csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}\csuse{txtbeforeXnotes@#1}}\unhbox0 \removehbox0
1711   \csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}
1712   \noindent\unhbox0\par}
1713

```

`\mppara@footgroup` The minipage version.

```

1714 \newcommand*{\mppara@footgroup}[1]{%
1715   \vskip\skip\@nameuse{mp#1footins}
1716   \ifl@ddpairing\ifparledgroup%

```

```

1717 \leavevmode\marks\parledgroup@{begin}%
1718 \marks\parledgroup@series{#1}%
1719 \marks\parledgroup@type{Xfootnote}%
1720 \fi\fi\normalcolor
1721 \ifparledgroup%
1722 \ifl@dpairing%
1723 \else%
1724 \@nameuse{#1footnoterule}%
1725 \vskip\csuse{afterXrule@#1}%
1726 \fi%
1727 \else%
1728 \@nameuse{#1footnoterule}%
1729 \vskip\csuse{afterXrule@#1}%
1730 \fi%
1731 \unvbox\csmname mp#1footins\endcsmname
1732 \ifcsstring{Xragged@#1}{L}{\RaggedLeft}{}%
1733 \ifcsstring{Xragged@#1}{R}{\RaggedRight}{}%
1734 \makehboxofhboxes
1735 \setbox0=\hbox{\csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}\csuse{txtbeforeXnotes@#1}}\unhbox0 \removehboxes}%
1736 \csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}
1737 \noindent\unhbox0\par}}
1738

```

\makehboxofhboxes

```

\removehboxes 1739 \newcommand*\makehboxofhboxes{\setbox0=\hbox{}%
1740 \loop
1741 \unpenalty
1742 \setbox2=\lastbox
1743 \ifhbox2
1744 \setbox0=\hbox{\box2\unhbox0}%
1745 \repeat}
1746
1747 \newcommand*\removehboxes{\setbox0=\lastbox
1748 \ifhbox0{\removehboxes}\unhbox0 \fi}
1749

```

## 24.6 Insertion of the footnotes separator

The command `\insertparafootsep{<series>}` must be called at the beginning of `\parafootftm` (and like commands).

\prevpage@num

```

\insertparafootsep 1750 \newcommand{\insertparafootsep}[1]{%
1751 \ifnumequal{\csuse{prevpage#1@num}}{\page@num}%
1752 {\ifcsdef{prevline#1}% Be sur \prevline#1 exists.
1753 {\ifnumequal{\csuse{prevline#1}}{\line@num}%
1754 {\ifcsempy{symplinenum}{\csuse{parafootsep@#1}}{}}%
1755 {\csuse{parafootsep@#1}}}%
1756 }%

```

```

1757      {\csuse{parafootsep@#1}}%
1758    }%
1759  {}%
1760  \global\csname prevpage#1@num\endcsname=\page@num%
1761 }

```

## 24.7 Columnar footnotes

`\rigidbalance` We will now define macros for three-column notes and two-column notes. Both sets of macros will use `\rigidbalance`, which splits a box (#1) into into a number (#2) of columns, each with a space (#3) between the top baseline and the top of the `\vbox`. The `\rigidbalance` macro is taken from *The TeXbook*, p. 397, with a slight change to the syntax of the arguments so that they don't depend on white space. Note also the extra unboxing in `\splitoff`, which allows the new `\vbox` to have its natural height as it goes into the alignment.

The L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X `\line` macro has no relationship to the TeX `\line`. The L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X equivalent is `\@@line`.

```

1762 \newcount\@k \newdimen\@h
1763 \newcommand*{\rigidbalance}[3]{\setbox0=\box#1 \@k=#2 \@h=#3
1764  \@@line{\splittopskip=\@h \vbadness=\@M \hfilneg
1765  \valign{##\vfil\cr\dosplits}}}
1766
1767 \newcommand*{\dosplits}{\ifnum\@k>0 \noalign{\hfil}\splitoff
1768  \global\advance\@k-1\cr\dosplits\fi}
1769
1770 \newcommand*{\splitoff}{\dimen0=\ht0
1771  \divide\dimen0 by\@k \advance\dimen0 by\@h
1772  \setbox2 \vsplit0 to \dimen0
1773  \unvbox2 }
1774

```

### Three columns

`\footthreecol` You say `\footthreecol{A}` to have the A series of the footnotes typeset in three columns. It is important to call this only after `\hsize` has been set for the document.

```

1775 \newcommand*{\footthreecol}[1]{%
1776  \csgdef{series@display#1}{threecol}
1777  \expandafter\let\csname v#1footnote\endcsname=\threecolvfootnote
1778  \expandafter\let\csname #1footfmt\endcsname=\threecolfootfmt
1779  \expandafter\let\csname #1footgroup\endcsname=\threecolfootgroup
1780  \threecolfootsetup{#1}

```

The additional setup for minipages.

```

1781  \expandafter\let\csname mpv#1footnote\endcsname=\mpnormalvfootnote
1782  \expandafter\let\csname mp#1footgroup\endcsname=\mpthreecolfootgroup
1783  \mpthreecolfootsetup{#1}
1784 }
1785

```

The `\footstart` and `\footnoterule` macros for these notes assume the normal values (p.105 above).

`\threecolfootsetup` The `\threecolfootsetup` macro calculates and sets some numbers for three-column footnotes.

We set the `\count` of the foot insert to 333. Each footnote can be thought of as contributing only one third of its height to the page, since the footnote insertion has been made as a long narrow column, which then gets trisected by the `\rigidbalance` routine (inside `\threecolfootgroup`). These new, shorter columns are saved in a box, and then that box is *put back* into the footnote insert, replacing the original collection of the footnotes. This new box is, therefore, only about a third of the height of the original one.

The `\dimen` value for this note series has to change in the inverse way: it needs to be three times the actual limit on the amount of space these notes are allowed to fill on the page, because when  $\text{\TeX}$  is accumulating material for the page and checking that limit, it doesn't apply the `\count` scaling.

```
1786 \newcommand*{\threecolfootsetup}[1]{%
1787   \count\csname #1footins\endcsname 333
1788   \multiply\dimen\csname #1footins\endcsname \thr@@}
```

`\mpthreecolfootsetup` The setup for minipages.

```
1789 \newcommand*{\mpthreecolfootsetup}[1]{%
1790   \count\csname mp#1footins\endcsname 333
1791   \multiply\dimen\csname mp#1footins\endcsname \thr@@}
1792
```

`\threecolvfootnote` `\threecolvfootnote` is the `\vfootnote` command for three-column notes. The call to `\notefontsetup` ensures that the `\splittopskip` and `\splitmaxdepth` take their values from the right `\strutbox`: the one used in a footnotes. Note especially the importance of temporarily reducing the `\hsize` to 0.3 of its normal value. This determines the widths of the individual columns. So if the normal `\hsize` is, say, 10 cm, then each column will be  $0.3 \times 10 = 3$  cm wide, leaving a gap of 1 cm spread equally between columns (i.e., .5 cm between each).

The arguments are 1) the note series letter and 2) the full text of the note (including numbers, lemma and text).

```
1793 \notbool{parapparatus@}{\newcommand*{\newcommand}{\threecolvfootnote}[2]{%
1794   \insert\csname #1footins\endcsname\bgroup
1795   \csuse{Xnotefontsize#1}
1796   \footsplitskips
1797   \csname #1footfmt\endcsname #2[#1]\egroup}
```

`\threecolfootfmt` `\threecolfootfmt` is the command that formats one note. It uses `\raggedright`, which will usually be preferable with such short lines. Setting the `\parindent` to zero means that, within each individual note, the lines begin flush left.

The arguments are 1) the line numbers, 2) the lemma and 3) the text of the `-footnote` command 4) optional (for backward compatibility): the series.

```
1798 \notbool{parapparatus@}{\newcommand*{\newcommand}{\threecolfootfmt}[4][4=Z]{%
```

```

1799 \normal@pars
1800 \hsize \csuse{hsizethreecol@#4}
1801 \parindent=0pt
1802 \tolerance=5000
1803 \raggedright
1804 \hangindent=\csuse{Xhangindent@#4}
1805 \leavevmode
1806 \strut{\printlinefootnote{#1}{#4}}%
1807 {\nottoggle{Xlemmadisablefontselection@#4}{\select@lemmafont#1|#2}{#2}}%
1808 \iftoggle{nosep@}{\hskip\csuse{inplaceoflemmaseparator@#4}}{\ifcsemtyp{lemmaseparator@#4}}%
1809 {\hskip\csuse{inplaceoflemmaseparator@#4}}%
1810 {\nobreak\hskip\csuse{beforelemmaseparator@#4}\csuse{lemmaseparator@#4}\hskip\csuse{afterlemmaseparator@#4}}%
1811 }%
1812 #3\strut\par\allowbreak}

```

`\threecolfootgroup` And here is the `footgroup` macro that's called within the output routine to re-group the notes into three columns. Once again, the call to `\notefontsetup` is there to ensure that it is the right `\splittopskip`—the one used in footnotes—which is used to provide the third argument for `\rigidbalance`. This third argument (`\@h`) is the `topskip` for the box containing the text of the footnotes, and does the job of making sure the top lines of the columns line up horizontally. In *The TeXbook*, p.398, Donald Knuth suggests retrieving the output of `\rigidbalance`, putting it back into the insertion box, and then printing the box. Here, we just print the `\line` which comes out of `\rigidbalance` directly, without any re-boxing.

```

1813 \newcommand*{\threecolfootgroup}[1]{\notefontsetup
1814 {\csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}\noindent\csuse{txtbeforeXnotes@#1}}\par
1815 \splittopskip=\ht\strutbox
1816 \expandafter
1817 \rigidbalance\csname #1footins\endcsname \thr@@ \splittopskip}

```

`\mpthreecolfootgroup` The setup for minipages.

```

1818 \newcommand*{\mpthreecolfootgroup}[1]{%
1819 \vskip\skip\@nameuse{mp#1footins}
1820 \ifl@dpairing\ifparledgroup%
1821 \leavevmode\marks\parledgroup@{begin}%
1822 \marks\parledgroup@series{#1}%
1823 \marks\parledgroup@type{Xfootnote}%
1824 \fi\fi\normalcolor
1825 \ifparledgroup%
1826 \ifl@dpairing%
1827 \else%
1828 \@nameuse{#1footnoterule}%
1829 \vskip\csuse{afterXrule@#1}%
1830 \fi%
1831 \else%
1832 \@nameuse{#1footnoterule}%
1833 \vskip\csuse{afterXrule@#1}%
1834 \fi%

```

```

1835 {\csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}\noindent\csuse{txtbeforeXnotes@#1}}\par
1836 \splittopskip=\ht\strutbox
1837 \expandafter
1838 \rigidbalance\csname mp#1footins\endcsname \thr@@ \splittopskip}}
1839

```

## Two columns

`\foottwocol` You say `\foottwocol{A}` to have the A series of the footnotes typeset in two columns. It is important to call this only after `\hsize` has been set for the document.

```

1840 \newcommand*{\foottwocol}[1]{%
1841 \csgdef{series@display#1}{twocol}
1842 \expandafter\let\csname v#1footnote\endcsname=\twocolvfootnote
1843 \expandafter\let\csname #1footfmt\endcsname=\twocolfootfmt
1844 \expandafter\let\csname #1footgroup\endcsname=\twocolfootgroup
1845 \twocolfootsetup{#1}

```

The additional setup for minipages.

```

1846 \expandafter\let\csname mpv#1footnote\endcsname=\mpnormalvfootnote
1847 \expandafter\let\csname mp#1footgroup\endcsname=\mptwocolfootgroup
1848 \mptwocolfootsetup{#1}
1849 }
1850

```

`\twocolfootsetup` Here is a series of macros which are very similar to their three-column counterparts.

`\twocolvfootnote` In this case, each note is assumed to contribute only a half a line of text. And the

`\twocolfootfmt` notes are set in columns giving a gap between them of one tenth of the `\hsize`.

```

\twocolfootgroup 1851 \newcommand*{\twocolfootsetup}[1]{%
1852 \count\csname #1footins\endcsname 500
1853 \multiply\dimen\csname #1footins\endcsname \tw@}

1854 \notbool{parapparatus@}{\newcommand*}{\newcommand}{\twocolvfootnote}[2]{\insert\csname #1footins\endcsname
1855 \csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}
1856 \footsplitskips
1857 \csname #1footfmt\endcsname #2[#1]\egroup}

1858 \notbool{parapparatus@}{\newcommand*}{\newcommandx}{\twocolfootfmt}[4][4=Z]{% 4th arg is optional, f
1859 \normal@pars
1860 \hsize \csuse{hsizetwocol@#4}
1861 \parindent=0pt
1862 \tolerance=5000
1863 \raggedright
1864 \hangindent=\csuse{Xhangindent@#4}
1865 \leavevmode
1866 \strut{\printlinefootnote{#1}{#4}}%
1867 {\nottoggle{Xlemmadisablefontselection@#4}{\select@lemmafnt#1|#2}{#2}}%
1868 \iftoggle{nosep@}{\hskip\csuse{inplaceoflemmaseparator@#4}}{\ifcempty{lemmaseparator@#4}}%
1869 {\hskip\csuse{inplaceoflemmaseparator@#4}}%
1870 {\nobreak\hskip\csuse{beforelemmaseparator@#4}\csuse{lemmaseparator@#4}\hskip\csuse{afterlemmasep

```

```

1871 }}%
1872 #3\strut\par\allowbreak}
1873 \newcommand*{\twocolfootgroup}[1]{\csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}
1874   {\csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}\noindent\csuse{txtbeforeXnotes@#1}}\par
1875   \splittopskip=\ht\strutbox
1876   \expandafter
1877   \rigidbalance\csname #1footins\endcsname \tw@ \splittopskip}}
1878

```

`\mptwocolfootsetup` The versions for minipages.

```

\mptwocolfootgroup 1879 \newcommand*{\mptwocolfootsetup}[1]{%
1880   \count\csname mp#1footins\endcsname 500
1881   \multiply\dimen\csname mp#1footins\endcsname \tw@}
1882 \newcommand*{\mptwocolfootgroup}[1]{%
1883   \vskip\skip\@nameuse{mp#1footins}
1884   \ifl@dpairing\ifparledgroup%
1885     \leavevmode\marks\parledgroup@{begin}%
1886     \marks\parledgroup@series{#1}%
1887     \marks\parledgroup@type{Xfootnote}%
1888   \fi\fi\normalcolor
1889   \ifparledgroup%
1890     \ifl@dpairing%
1891     \else%
1892       \@nameuse{#1footnoterule}%
1893       \vskip\csuse{afterXrule@#1}%
1894     \fi%
1895   \else%
1896     \@nameuse{#1footnoterule}%
1897     \vskip\csuse{afterXrule@#1}%
1898   \fi%
1899   {\csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}\noindent\csuse{txtbeforeXnotes@#1}}\par
1900   \splittopskip=\ht\strutbox
1901   \expandafter
1902   \rigidbalance\csname mp#1footins\endcsname \tw@ \splittopskip}}
1903

```

## 25 Familiar footnotes

### 25.1 Generality

The original EDMAC provided users with five series of critical footnotes (`\Afootnote`, `\Bfootnote`, `\Cfootnote`, `\Dfootnote`, `\Efootnote`), and L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X provides a single numbered footnote. The `eledmac` package uses the EDMAC mechanism to provide five series of numbered footnotes.

First, though, the `footmisc` package has an option whereby two or more consecutive `\footnotes` have their marks separated by commas. This seems such a useful ability that it is provided automatically by `eledmac`.

`\multiplefootnotemarker` These macros may have been defined by the memoir class, are provided by the `footmisc` package and perhaps by other footnote packages.

```
1904 \providecommand*\multiplefootnotemarker}{3sp}
1905 \providecommand*\multfootsep}{\textsuperscript{\normalfont,}}
1906
```

`\m@mmf@prepare` A pair of self-cancelling kerns. This may have been defined in the memoir class.

```
1907 \providecommand*\m@mmf@prepare}{%
1908   \kern-\multiplefootnotemarker
1909   \kern\multiplefootnotemarker\relax}
```

`\m@mmf@check` This may have been defined in the memoir class. If it recognises the last kern as `\multiplefootnotemarker` it typesets `\multfootsep`.

```
1910 \providecommand*\m@mmf@check}{%
1911   \ifdim\lastkern=\multiplefootnotemarker\relax
1912     \edef\x@sf{\the\spacefactor}%
1913     \unkern
1914     \multfootsep
1915     \spacefactor\x@sf\relax
1916   \fi}
1917
```

We have to modify `\@footnotetext` and `\@footnotemark`. However, if memoir is used the modifications have already been made.

```
1918 \@ifclassloaded{memoir}{}{%
```

`\@footnotetext` Add `\m@mmf@prepare` at the end of `\@footnotetext`.

```
1919 \let\l@dold@footnotetext\@footnotetext
1920 \renewcommand{\@footnotetext}[1]{%
1921   \l@dold@footnotetext{#1}%
1922   \m@mmf@prepare}
```

`\@footnotemark` Modify `\@footnotemark` to cater for adjacent footnotes.

```
1923 \renewcommand*\@footnotemark}{%
1924   \leavevmode
1925   \ifhmode
1926     \edef\x@sf{\the\spacefactor}%
1927     \m@mmf@check
1928     \nobreak
1929   \fi
1930   \@makefnmark
1931   \m@mmf@prepare
1932   \ifhmode\spacefactor\x@sf\fi
1933   \relax}
```

Finished the modifications for the non-memoir case.

```
1934 }
1935
```

`\l@doldold@footnotetext` In order to enable the regular `\footnotes` in numbered text we have to play around with its `\@footnotetext`, using different forms for when in numbered or regular text.

```
1936 \let\l@doldold@footnotetext\@footnotetext
1937 \renewcommand{\@footnotetext}[1]{%
1938   \ifnumberedpar@
1939     \edtext{\l@dbfnote{#1}}%
1940   \else
1941     \l@doldold@footnotetext{#1}%
1942   \fi}
```

`\l@dbfnote` `\l@dbfnote` adds the footnote to the insert list, and `\vl@dbfnote` calls the original `\vl@dbfnote` `\@footnotetext`.

```
1943 \newcommand{\l@dbfnote}[1]{%
1944   \ifnumberedpar@
1945     \gdef\@tag{#1}%
1946     \xright@appenditem{\noexpand\vl@dbfnote{\csexpandonce{\@tag}}{\@thefnmark}}%
1947     \to\inserts@list
1948     \global\advance\insert@count \one
1949   \fi\ignorespaces}
1950 \newcommand{\vl@dbfnote}[2]{%
1951   \def\@thefnmark{#2}%
1952   \l@doldold@footnotetext{#1}}
```

## 25.2 Footnote formats

Some of the code for the various formats is remarkably similar to that in section 24.3.

The following macros generally set things up for the ‘standard’ footnote format.

`\prebodyfootmark` Two convenience macros for use by `\...@footnotemark...` macros.  
`\postbodyfootmark`

```
1953 \newcommand*\prebodyfootmark{%
1954   \leavevmode
1955   \ifhmode
1956     \edef\x@sf{\the\spacefactor}%
1957     \m@mmf@check
1958     \nobreak
1959   \fi}
1960 \newcommand*\postbodyfootmark{%
1961   \m@mmf@prepare
1962   \ifhmode\spacefactor\x@sf\fi\relax}
1963
```

`\normal@footnotemarkX` `\normal@footnotemarkX{<series>}` sets up the typesetting of the marker at the point where the footnote is called for.

```
1964 \newcommand*\normal@footnotemarkX[1]{%
1965   \prebodyfootmark
1966   \@nameuse{bodyfootmark#1}%

```

```

1967 \postbodyfootmark}
1968

\normalbodyfootmarkX The \normalbodyfootmarkX{<series>} really typesets the in-text marker. The
style is the normal superscript.
1969 \newcommand*{\normalbodyfootmarkX}[1]{%
1970 \hbox{\textsuperscript{\normalfont\@nameuse{@thefnmark#1}}}}

\normalvfootnoteX \normalvfootnoteX{<series>}{<text>} does the \insert for the <series> and calls
the series' \footfmt... to format the <text>.
1971 \newcommand*{\normalvfootnoteX}[2]{%
1972 \insert\@nameuse{footins#1}\bgroup
1973 \csuse{bhooknoteX@#1}
1974 \csuse{notefontsizeX@#1}
1975 \footsplitskips
1976 \spaceskip=\z@skip \xspaceskip=\z@skip
1977 \csuse{\csuse{footnote@dir}}\if@RTL\else\noindent\leavevmode\fi\@nameuse{footfmt#1}{#1}{#2}\egroup
1978

\mpnormalvfootnoteX The minipage version.
1979 \newcommand*{\mpnormalvfootnoteX}[2]{%
1980 \global\setbox\@nameuse{mpfootins#1}\vbox{%
1981 \unvbox\@nameuse{mpfootins#1}
1982 \csuse{bhooknoteX@#1}
1983 \csuse{notefontsizeX@#1}
1984 \hsize\columnwidth
1985 \@parboxrestore
1986 \color@begingroup
1987 \@nameuse{footfmt#1}{#1}{#2}\color@endgroup}}
1988

\normalfootfmtX \normalfootfmtX{<series>}{<text>} typesets the footnote text, prepended by the
marker.
1989 \newcommand*{\normalfootfmtX}[2]{%
1990 \protected@edef\@currentlabel{%
1991 \@nameuse{@thefnmark#1}%
1992 }%
1993 \ledsetnormalparstuff
1994 \hangindent=\csuse{hangindentX@#1}%
1995 {{\csuse{notenumfontX@#1}\@nameuse{footfootmark#1}}\strut%\enspace
1996 #2\strut\par}}
1997

\normalfootfootmarkX \normalfootfootmarkX{<series>} is called by \normalfootfmtX to typeset the
footnote marker in the footer before the footnote text.
1998 \newcommand*{\normalfootfootmarkX}[1]{%
1999 \textsuperscript{\@nameuse{@thefnmark#1}}}
2000

```

`\normalfootstartX` `\normalfootstartX{⟨series⟩}` is the `⟨series⟩` footnote starting macro used in the output routine.

```

2001 \newcommand*{\normalfootstartX}[1]{%
2002     \ifdimequal{0pt}{\prenotesX@}{}%
2003     {%
2004         \iftoggle{prenotesX@}{%
2005             \togglefalse{prenotesX@} \skip\csname footins#1\endcsname=\csuse{prenotesX@}}%
2006         }%
2007     }%
2008     \vskip\skip\csname footins#1\endcsname%
2009     \leftskip=\z@
2010     \rightskip=\z@
2011     \@nameuse{footnoterule#1}%
2012     \vskip\csuse{afterruleX@#1}}
2013

```

`\normalfootnoteruleX` The rule drawn before the footnote series group.

```

2014 \let\normalfootnoteruleX=\footnoterule
2015

```

`\normalfootgroupX` `\normalfootgroupX{⟨series⟩}` sends the contents of the `⟨series⟩` insert box to the output page without alteration.

```

2016 \newcommand*{\normalfootgroupX}[1]{%
2017     \unvbox\@nameuse{footins#1}}
2018

```

`\mpnormalfootgroupX` The minipage version.

```

2019 \newcommand*{\mpnormalfootgroupX}[1]{%
2020     \vskip\skip\@nameuse{mpfootins#1}
2021     \ifl@dpairing\ifparledgroup%
2022         \leavevmode\marks\parledgroup@{begin}%
2023         \marks\parledgroup@series{#1}%
2024         \marks\parledgroup@type{footnoteX}%
2025     \fi\fi\normalcolor
2026     \ifparledgroup%
2027         \ifl@dpairing%
2028         \else%
2029             \@nameuse{footnoterule#1}%
2030             \vskip\csuse{afterruleX@#1}%
2031         \fi%
2032     \else%
2033         \@nameuse{footnoterule#1}%
2034         \vskip\csuse{afterruleX@#1}%
2035     \fi%
2036     \unvbox\@nameuse{mpfootins#1}}
2037

```

`\normalbfnoteX`

```

2038 \newcommand{\normalbfnoteX}[2]{%

```

```

2039 \ifnumberedpar@
2040   \protected@csxdef{thisfootnote}{\csuse{thefootnote#1}}%
2041   \xright@appenditem{\noexpand\vbfnoteX{#1}{#2}{\csexpandonce{thisfootnote}}}%
2042   \to\inserts@list
2043   \global\advance\insert@count \@ne
2044 \fi\ignorespaces}
2045

```

`\vbfnoteX`

```

2046 \newcommand{\vbfnoteX}[3]{%
2047   \@namedef{@thefnmark#1}{#3}%
2048   \@nameuse{regvfootnote#1}{#1}{#2}}
2049

```

`\vnumfootnoteX`

```

2050 \newcommand{\vnumfootnoteX}[2]{%
2051   \ifnumberedpar@
2052     \edtext{}{\normalbfnoteX{#1}{#2}}%
2053   \else
2054     \@nameuse{regvfootnote#1}{#1}{#2}%
2055   \fi}
2056

```

`\footnormalX` `\footnormalX{<series>}` initialises the settings for the `<series>` footnotes. This should always be called for each series.

```

2057 \newcommand*{\footnormalX}[1]{%
2058   \csgdef{series@displayX#1}{normalX}
2059   \expandafter\let\csname footstart#1\endcsname=\normalfootstartX
2060   \@namedef{@footnotemark#1}{\normal@footnotemarkX{#1}}
2061   \@namedef{bodyfootmark#1}{\normalbodyfootmarkX{#1}}
2062   \expandafter\let\csname regvfootnote#1\endcsname=\normalvfootnoteX
2063   \expandafter\let\csname vfootnote#1\endcsname=\vnumfootnoteX
2064   \expandafter\let\csname footfmt#1\endcsname=\normalfootfmtX
2065   \@namedef{footfootmark#1}{\normalfootfootmarkX{#1}}
2066   \expandafter\let\csname footgroup#1\endcsname=\normalfootgroupX
2067   \expandafter\let\csname footnoterule#1\endcsname=\normalfootnoteruleX
2068   \count\csname footins#1\endcsname=1000
2069   \dimen\csname footins#1\endcsname=\csuse{maxhnotesX@#1}
2070   \skip\csname footins#1\endcsname=\csuse{beforenotesX@#1}

```

Additions for minipages.

```

2071 \expandafter\let\csname mpvfootnote#1\endcsname=\mpnormalvfootnoteX
2072 \expandafter\let\csname mpfootgroup#1\endcsname=\mpnormalfootgroupX
2073 \count\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname=1000
2074 \dimen\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname=\csuse{maxhnotesX@#1}
2075 \skip\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname=\csuse{beforenotesX@#1}
2076 }
2077

```

### 25.3 Two columns footnotes

The following macros set footnotes in two columns. It is assumed that the length of each footnote is less than the column width.

```

\foottwocolX \foottwocolX{<series>}
2078 \newcommand*{\foottwocolX}[1]{%
2079   \csgdef{series@displayX#1}{twocol}
2080   \expandafter\let\csname regvfootnote#1\endcsname=\twocolvfootnoteX
2081   \expandafter\let\csname footfmt#1\endcsname=\twocolfootfmtX
2082   \expandafter\let\csname footgroup#1\endcsname=\twocolfootgroupX
2083   \twocolfootsetupX{#1}
2084   \expandafter\let\csname mpvfootnote#1\endcsname=\mpnormalvfootnoteX
2085   \expandafter\let\csname mpfootgroup#1\endcsname=\mptwocolfootgroupX
2086   \mptwocolfootsetupX{#1}}
2087

\twocolfootsetupX \twocolfootsetupX{<series>}
\mptwocolfootsetupX 2088 \newcommand*{\twocolfootsetupX}[1]{%
2089   \count\csname footins#1\endcsname 500
2090   \multiply\dimen\csname footins#1\endcsname by \tw@}
2091 \newcommand*{\mptwocolfootsetupX}[1]{%
2092   \count\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname 500
2093   \multiply\dimen\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname by \tw@}
2094

\twocolvfootnoteX \twocolvfootnoteX{<series>}
2095 \newcommand*{\twocolvfootnoteX}[2]{%
2096   \insert\csname footins#1\endcsname\bgroup
2097     \csuse{notefontsizeX@#1}
2098     \footsplitskips
2099     \spaceskip=\z@skip \xspaceskip=\z@skip
2100     \@nameuse{footfmt#1}{#1}{#2}\egroup}
2101

\twocolfootfmtX \twocolfootfmtX{<series>}
2102 \newcommand*{\twocolfootfmtX}[2]{%
2103   \protected@edef\@currentlabel{%
2104     \@nameuse{@thefnmark#1}%
2105   }%
2106   \normal@pars
2107   \hangindent=\csuse{hangindentX@#1}%
2108   \hsize \csuse{hsizetwocolX@#1}
2109   \parindent=\z@
2110   %%% \parfillskip=0pt \@plus 1fil
2111   \tolerance=5000\relax
2112   \raggedright
2113   \leavevmode
2114   {\csuse{notenunfontX@#1}\@nameuse{footfootmark#1}\strut%\enspace

```

```

2115     #2\strut\par}\allowbreak}
2116

```

```

\twocolfootgroupX \twocolfootgroupX{\series}
\mptwocolfootgroupX 2117 \newcommand*\twocolfootgroupX[1]{\csuse{notefontsizeX@#1}
2118 \splittopskip=\ht\strutbox
2119 \expandafter
2120 \rigidbalance\csname footins#1\endcsname \tw@ \splittopskip}}
2121 \newcommand*\mptwocolfootgroupX[1]{\%
2122 \vskip\skip\@nameuse{mpfootins#1}
2123 \ifl@dpairing\ifparledgroup%
2124 \leavevmode\marks\parledgroup@{begin}%
2125 \marks\parledgroup@series{#1}%
2126 \marks\parledgroup@type{footnoteX}%
2127 \fi\fi\normalcolor
2128 \ifparledgroup%
2129 \ifl@dpairing%
2130 \else%
2131 \@nameuse{footnoterule#1}%
2132 \vskip\csuse{afterruleX@#1}%
2133 \fi%
2134 \else%
2135 \@nameuse{footnoterule#1}%
2136 \vskip\csuse{afterruleX@#1}%
2137 \fi%
2138 \splittopskip=\ht\strutbox
2139 \expandafter
2140 \rigidbalance\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname \tw@ \splittopskip}}
2141

```

## 25.4 Three columns footnotes

The following macros set footnotes in three columns. It is assumed that the length of each footnote is less than the column width.

```

\footthreecolX \footthreecolX{\series}
2142 \newcommand*\footthreecolX[1]{\%
2143 \csgdef{series@displayX#1}{threecol}
2144 \expandafter\let\csname regvfootnote#1\endcsname=\threecolvfootnoteX
2145 \expandafter\let\csname footfmt#1\endcsname=\threecolfootfmtX
2146 \expandafter\let\csname footgroup#1\endcsname=\threecolfootgroupX
2147 \threecolfootsetupX{#1}
2148 \expandafter\let\csname mpvfootnote#1\endcsname=\mpnormalvfootnoteX
2149 \expandafter\let\csname mpfootgroup#1\endcsname=\mpthreecolfootgroupX
2150 \mpthreecolfootsetupX{#1}}
2151
\tthreecolfootsetupX \threecolfootsetupX{\series}
\mpthreecolfootsetupX 2152 \newcommand*\threecolfootsetupX[1]{\%

```

```

2153 \count\csname footins#1\endcsname 333
2154 \multiply\dimen\csname footins#1\endcsname by \thr@@
2155 \newcommand*\mpthreecolfootsetupX}[1]{%
2156 \count\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname 333
2157 \multiply\dimen\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname by \thr@@
2158

```

```

\threecolvfootnoteX \threecolvfootnoteX{<series>}{<text>}
2159 \newcommand*\threecolvfootnoteX}[2]{%
2160 \insert\csname footins#1\endcsname\bgroup
2161 \csuse{notefontsizeX@#1}
2162 \footsplitskips
2163 \@nameuse{footfmt#1}{#1}{#2}\egroup}
2164

```

```

\threecolfootfmtX \threecolfootfmtX{<series>}
2165 \newcommand*\threecolfootfmtX}[2]{%
2166 \protected@edef\@currentlabel{%
2167 \@nameuse{@thefnmark#1}%
2168 }%
2169 \hangindent=\csuse{hangindentX@#1}%
2170 \normal@pars
2171 \hsize \csuse{hsizethreecolX@#1}
2172 \parindent=\z@
2173 %%% \parfillskip=0pt \@plus 1fil
2174 \tolerance=5000\relax
2175 \raggedright
2176 \leavevmode
2177 {\csuse{notenunfontX@#1}\@nameuse{footfootmark#1}\strut%\enspace
2178 #2\strut\par}\allowbreak}
2179

```

```

\threecolfootgroupX \threecolfootgroupX{<series>}
\mpthreecolfootgroupX 2180 \newcommand*\threecolfootgroupX}[1]{\csuse{notefontsizeX@#1}
2181 \splittopskip=\ht\strutbox
2182 \expandafter
2183 \rigidbalance\csname footins#1\endcsname \thr@@ \splittopskip}}
2184 \newcommand*\mpthreecolfootgroupX}[1]{%
2185 \vskip\skip\@nameuse{mpfootins#1}
2186 \ifl@dpairing\ifparledgroup
2187 \leavevmode\marks\parledgroup@{begin}%
2188 \marks\parledgroup@series{#1}%
2189 \marks\parledgroup@type{footnoteX}%
2190 \fi\fi\normalcolor
2191 \ifparledgroup%
2192 \ifl@dpairing%
2193 \else%
2194 \@nameuse{footnoterule#1}%
2195 \vskip\csuse{afterruleX@#1}%

```

```

2196 \fi%
2197 \else%
2198 \@nameuse{footnoterule#1}%
2199 \vskip\csuse{afterruleX@#1}%
2200 \fi%
2201 \splittopskip=\ht\strutbox
2202 \expandafter
2203 \rigidbalance\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname \thr@@ \splittopskip}}
2204

```

## 25.5 Paragraphed footnotes

The following macros set footnotes as one paragraph.

```

\footparagraphX \footparagraphX{<series>}
2205 \newcommand*{\footparagraphX}[1]{%
2206 \csgdef{series@displayX#1}{paragraph}
2207 \expandafter\newcount\csname prevpage#1@num\endcsname
2208 \expandafter\let\csname footstart#1\endcsname=\parafootstartX
2209 \expandafter\let\csname regvfootnote#1\endcsname=\para@vfootnoteX
2210 \expandafter\let\csname footfmt#1\endcsname=\parafootfmtX
2211 \expandafter\let\csname footgroup#1\endcsname=\para@footgroupX
2212 \expandafter\let\csname footnoterule#1\endcsname=\normalfootnoteruleX
2213 \count\csname footins#1\endcsname=1000
2214 \dimen\csname footins#1\endcsname=\csuse{maxhnotesX@#1}
2215 \skip\csname footins#1\endcsname=\csuse{beforenotesX@#1}
2216 \expandafter\let\csname mpvfootnote#1\endcsname=\mppara@vfootnoteX
2217 \expandafter\let\csname mpfootgroup#1\endcsname=\mppara@footgroupX
2218 \count\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname=1000
2219 \dimen\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname=\csuse{maxhnotesX@#1}
2220 \skip\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname=\csuse{beforenotesX@#1}
2221 \para@footsetupX{#1}}
2222

\para@footsetupX \para@footsetupX{<series>}
2223 \newcommand*{\para@footsetupX}[1]{\csuse{notefontsizeX@#1}
2224 \dimen0=\baselineskip
2225 \multiply\dimen0 by 1024
2226 \divide\dimen0 by \hsize \multiply\dimen0 by \footfudgefactor\relax
2227 \expandafter
2228 \xdef\csname footfudgefactor#1\endcsname{%
2229 \expandafter\strip@pt\dimen0 }}
2230

\parafootstartX \parafootstartX{<series>}
2231 \newcommand*{\parafootstartX}[1]{%
2232 \ifdimequal{0pt}{\prenotesX@}{}%
2233 {%
2234 \iftoggle{prenotesX@}{%

```

```

2235         \togglefalse{prenotesX@}\skip\csname footins#1\endcsname=\csuse{prenotesX@}}%
2236     {}%
2237     }%
2238     \vskip\skip\csname footins#1\endcsname%
2239     \leftskip=\z@
2240     \rightskip=\z@
2241     \parindent=\z@
2242     \vskip\skip\@nameuse{footins#1}%
2243     \@nameuse{footnoterule#1}%
2244     \vskip\csuse{afterruleX@#1}%
2245     }
2246
\para@vfootnoteX \para@vfootnoteX{<series>}{<text>}
\mppara@vfootnoteX 2247 \newcommand*{\para@vfootnoteX}[2]{%
2248     \insert\csname footins#1\endcsname
2249     \bgroup
2250         \csuse{bhooknoteX@#1}
2251         \csuse{notefontsizeX@#1}
2252         \footsplitskips
2253         \setbox0=\vbox{\hsize=\maxdimen
2254             \noindent\@nameuse{footfmt#1}{#1}{#2}}%
2255         \setbox0=\hbox{\unvbox0[#1]}%
2256         \dp0=\z@
2257         \ht0=\csname footfudgefactor#1\endcsname\wd0
2258         \box0
2259         \penalty0
2260     \egroup}
2261 \newcommand*{\mppara@vfootnoteX}[2]{%
2262     \global\setbox\@nameuse{mpfootins#1}\vbox{%
2263         \unvbox\@nameuse{mpfootins#1}
2264         \csuse{bhooknoteX@#1}
2265         \csuse{notefontsizeX@#1}
2266         \footsplitskips
2267         \setbox0=\vbox{\hsize=\maxdimen
2268             \noindent\color@begingroup\@nameuse{footfmt#1}{#1}{#2}\color@endgroup}%
2269         \setbox0=\hbox{\unvbox0[#1]}%
2270         \dp0=\z@
2271         \ht0=\csname footfudgefactor#1\endcsname\wd0
2272         \box0
2273         \penalty0}}
2274
\parafootfmtX \parafootfmtX{<series>}
2275 \newcommand*{\parafootfmtX}[2]{%
2276     \protected@edef\@currentlabel{%
2277         \@nameuse{@thefnmark#1}%
2278     }%
2279     \insertparafootsep{#1}%
2280     \ledsetnormalparstuff

```

```

2281 {\csuse{notenumfontX@#1}\csuse{notenumfontX@#1}\@nameuse{footfootmark#1}\strut%\enspace
2282 #2\penalty-10}}
2283

```

```

\para@footgroupX \para@footgroupX{\series}
\mppara@footgroupX 2284 \newcommand*{\para@footgroupX}[1]{%
2285 \unvbox\csname footins#1\endcsname
2286 \ifcsstring{raggedX@#1}{L}{\RaggedLeft}{}%
2287 \ifcsstring{raggedX@#1}{R}{\RaggedRight}{}%
2288 \makehboxofhboxes
2289 \setbox0=\hbox{\unhbox0 \removehboxes}%
2290 \csuse{notefontsizeX@#1}
2291 \noindent\unhbox0\par}
2292 \newcommand*{\mppara@footgroupX}[1]{%
2293 \vskip\skip\@nameuse{mpfootins#1}
2294 \ifl@dpairing\ifparledgroup
2295 \leavevmode%
2296 \leavevmode\marks\parledgroup@{begin}%
2297 \marks\parledgroup@series{#1}%
2298 \marks\parledgroup@type{footnoteX}%
2299 \fi\fi\normalcolor
2300 \ifparledgroup%
2301 \ifl@dpairing%
2302 \else%
2303 \@nameuse{footnoterule#1}%
2304 \vskip\csuse{afterruleX@#1}%
2305 \fi%
2306 \else%
2307 \@nameuse{footnoterule#1}%
2308 \vskip\csuse{afterruleX@#1}%
2309 \fi%
2310 \unvbox\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname
2311 \ifcsstring{raggedX@#1}{L}{\RaggedLeft}{}%
2312 \ifcsstring{raggedX@#1}{R}{\RaggedRight}{}%
2313 \makehboxofhboxes
2314 \setbox0=\hbox{\unhbox0 \removehboxes}%
2315 \csuse{notefontsizeX@#1}
2316 \noindent\unhbox0\par}}
2317

```

## 25.6 Footnotes' order

\fnpos The \fnpos and \mpfnpos simply place their arguments in \@fnpos and \@mpfnpos, which will be used later in the output routine.

```

\@fnpos 2318 \def\@fnpos{familiar-critical}
\@mpfnpos 2319 \def\@mpfnpos{critical-familiar}
2320 \newcommand{\fnpos}[1]{\xdef\@fnpos{#1}}
2321 \newcommand{\mpfnpos}[1]{\xdef\@mpfnpos{#1}}

```

## 25.7 Footnotes' output

`\doxtrafeeti` We have to add all the new kinds of familiar footnotes to the output routine.  
`\doreinextrafeeti` These are the class 1 feet.

```

2322 \newcommand*{\doxtrafeeti}{%
2323   \setbox\@outputbox \vbox{%
2324     \unvbox\@outputbox
2325     \def\do##1{\ifvoid\csuse{footins##1}\else\csuse{footstart##1}{##1}\csuse{footgroup##1}%
2326     \dolistloop{\@series}%
2327   }}
2328
2329 \newcommand{\doreinextrafeeti}{%
2330   \def\do##1{\ifvoid\csuse{footins##1}\else\insert\csuse{footins##1}{\unvbox\csuse{footins##1}%
2331   \dolistloop{\@series}%
2332   }
2333
```

`\addfootinsX` Juste for backward compatibility: print a warning message.

```

2334 \newcommand*{\addfootinsX}[1]{%
2335   \led@warn@AddfootinsX@obsolete%
2336   \footnormalX{#1}%
2337   \g@addto@macro{\doxtrafeeti}{%
2338     \setbox\@outputbox \vbox{%
2339       \unvbox\@outputbox
2340       \ifvoid\@nameuse{footins#1}\else
2341         \@nameuse{footstart#1}{#1}\@nameuse{footgroup#1}{#1}\fi}}%as
2342   \g@addto@macro{\doreinextrafeeti}{%
2343     \ifvoid\@nameuse{footins#1}\else
2344       \insert\@nameuse{footins#1}{\unvbox\@nameuse{footins#1}\fi}%
2345   \g@addto@macro{\l@dfambeginmini}{%
2346     \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\let\expandafter\expandafter
2347       \csname footnote#1\endcsname \csname mpfootnote#1\endcsname}%
2348   \g@addto@macro{\l@dfamendmini}{%
2349     \ifvoid\@nameuse{mpfootins#1}\else\@nameuse{mpfootgroup#1}{#1}\fi}%
2350 }
```

## 26 Endnotes

`\l@d@end` Endnotes of all varieties are saved up in a file, typically named *<jobname>.end*.  
`\ifl@dend@` `\l@d@end` is the output stream number for this file, and `\ifl@dend@` is a flag that's  
`\l@dend@true` true when the file is open.  
`\l@dend@false` 2351 `\newwrite\l@d@end`  
 2352 `\newif\ifl@dend@`

`\l@dend@open` `\l@dend@open` and `\l@dend@close` are the macros that are used to open and close  
`\l@dend@close` the endnote file. Note that all our writing to this file is `\immediate`: all page and  
 line numbers for the endnotes are generated by the same mechanism we use for

the footnotes, so that there's no need to defer any writing to catch information from the output routine.

```
2353 \newcommand{\l@dend@open}[1]{\global\l@dend@true\immediate\openout\l@d@end=#1\relax}
2354 \newcommand{\l@dend@close}{\global\l@dend@false\immediate\closeout\l@d@end}
2355
```

`\l@dend@stuff` `\l@dend@stuff` is used by `\beginnumbering` to do everything that's necessary for the endnotes at the start of each section: it opens the `\l@d@end` file, if necessary, and writes the section number to the endnote file.

```
2356 \newcommand{\l@dend@stuff}{%
2357   \ifl@dend@\relax\else
2358     \l@dend@open{\jobname.end}%
2359   \fi
2360   \immediate\write\l@d@end{\string\l@d@section{\the\section@num}}
2361 }
```

`\endprint` The `\endprint` here is nearly identical in its functioning to `\normalfootfmt`.  
`\@gobblethree` The endnote file also contains `\l@d@section` commands, which supply the  
`\l@d@section` section numbers from the main text; standard `eledmac` does nothing with this information, but it's there if you want to write custom macros to do something with it.

```
2362 \def\endprint#1#2#3#4{{\csuse{bhookXendnote@#4}\csuse{Xendnotefontsize@#4}{\csuse{Xendnotenumfont@#4}
2363   \enspace{\nottoggle{Xendlemmadisablefontselection@#4}{\select@lemmafnt#1|#2}{#2}}\enskip#3\par
2364 \providecommand*\@gobblethree}[3]{
2365
2366 \let\l@d@section=\@gobble
2367 }
```

`\setprintendlines` The `\printendlines` macro is similar to `\printlines` but is for printing endnotes rather than footnotes.

The principal difference between foot- and endnotes is that footnotes are printed on the page where they are specified but endnotes are printed at a different point in the document. We need an indication of the source of an endnote; `\setprintendlines` provides this by always printing the page number. The coding is slightly simpler than `\setprintlines`.

First of all, we print the second page number only if the ending page number is different from the starting page number.

```
2368 \newcommand*\setprintendlines}[6]{%
2369   \l@d@pnumfalse \l@d@dashfalse
2370   \ifnum#4=#1 \else
2371     \l@d@pnumtrue
2372     \l@d@dashtrue
2373   \fi
```

We print the ending line number if: (1) we're printing the ending page number, or (2) it's different from the starting line number.

```
2374 \ifl@d@pnum \l@d@elintrue \else \l@d@elinfalse \fi
2375 \ifnum#2=#5 \else
```

```

2376 \l@d@elintrue
2377 \l@d@dashtrue
2378 \fi

```

We print the starting sub-line if it's nonzero.

```

2379 \l@d@ssubfalse
2380 \ifnum#3=0 \else
2381 \l@d@ssubtrue
2382 \fi

```

We print the ending sub-line if it's nonzero and: (1) it's different from the starting sub-line number, or (2) the ending line number is being printed.

```

2383 \l@d@eslfalse
2384 \ifnum#6=0 \else
2385 \ifnum#6=#3
2386 \ifl@d@elin \l@d@esltrue \else \l@d@eslfalse \fi
2387 \else
2388 \l@d@esltrue
2389 \l@d@dashtrue
2390 \fi
2391 \fi}

```

`\printendlines` Now we're ready to print it all.

```

2392 \def\printendlines#1|#2|#3|#4|#5|#6|#7|{\begingroup
2393 \setprintendlines{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}{#6}%

```

The only subtlety left here is when to print a period between numbers. But the only instance in which this is tricky is for the ending sub-line number: it could be coming after the starting sub-line number (in which case we want only the dash) or after an ending line number (in which case we need to insert a period).

```

2394 \printnpnum{#1} \linenumrep{#2}%
2395 \ifl@d@ssub \fullstop \sublinenumrep{#3}\fi
2396 \ifl@d@dash \endashchar\fi
2397 \ifl@d@pnum \printnpnum{#4}\fi
2398 \ifl@d@elin \linenumrep{#5}\fi
2399 \ifl@d@esl \ifl@d@elin \fullstop\fi \sublinenumrep{#6}\fi
2400 \endgroup}
2401

```

`\printnpnum` A macro to print a page number in an endnote.

```

2402 \newcommand*{\printnpnum}[1]{p.#1} }
2403

```

`\doendnotes` `\doendnotes` is the command you use to print one series of endnotes; it takes one argument: the series letter of the note series you want to print.

```

2404 \newcommand*{\doendnotes}[1]{\l@dend@close
2405 \begingroup
2406 \makeatletter
2407 \expandafter\let\csname #1end\endcsname=\endprint
2408 \input\jobname.end
2409 \endgroup}

```

`\noendnotes` You can say `\noendnotes` before the first `\beginnumbering` in your file if if you will not use any of the endnote commands: this will suppress the creation of an `.end` file. If you do have some lingering endnote commands in your file, the notes will be written to your terminal and to the log file.

```
2410 \newcommand*{\noendnotes}{\global\let\l@ndend@stuff=\relax
2411 \global\chardef\l@d@end=16 }
```

## 27 Generate series

In this section, X means the name of the series (A, B etc.)

`\series` `\series\series` creates one more newseries. It's the public command, which just loops on the private command `\newseries@`.

```
2412 \newcommand{\newseries}[1]{%
2413 \def\do##1{\newseries@{##1}}%
2414 \docsvlist{#1}
2415 }
```

`@series` The `\series@` macro is an etoolbox list, which contains the name of all series.

```
2416 \newcommand{\@series}{}%
```

The command `\newseries@\series` creates a new series of the footnote.

`\newseries@`

```
2417 \newcommand{\newseries@}[1]{%
```

### 27.1 Test if series is still existing

```
2418 \xifinlist{#1}{\@series}{\led@warn@SeriesStillExist{#1}}%
2419 {%
```

### 27.2 Create all commands to memorize display options

```
2420 \newtoggle{Xlemmadisablefontselection@#1}
2421 \newtoggle{Xendlemmadisablefontselection@#1}
2422 \csgdef{Xhangindent@#1}{0pt}%
2423 \csgdef{hangindentX@#1}{0pt}%
2424 \csgdef{Xragged@#1}{}%
2425 \csgdef{raggedX@#1}{}%
2426 \csgdef{hsizetwocol@#1}{0.45 \hsize}%
2427 \csgdef{hsizetwocolX@#1}{0.45 \hsize}%
2428 \csgdef{hsizethreecol@#1}{.3 \hsize}%
2429 \csgdef{hsizethreecolX@#1}{.3 \hsize}%
2430 \csgdef{Xnotenumfont@#1}{\notenumfont}%
2431 \csgdef{Xendnotenumfont@#1}{\notenumfont}%
2432 \csgdef{notenumfontX@#1}{\notenumfont}%
2433 \csgdef{Xnotefontsize@#1}{\notefontsetup}%
2434 \csgdef{notefontsizeX@#1}{\notefontsetup}%
2435 \csgdef{Xendnotefontsize@#1}{\notefontsetup}%
```

```

2436 \csgdef{bhooknoteX@#1}{}%
2437 \csgdef{bhookXnote@#1}{}%
2438 \csgdef{bhookXendnote@#1}{}%
2439 \csgdef{boxlinenum@#1}{0pt}%
2440 \csgdef{boxsymlinenum@#1}{0pt}%
2441 \newtoggle{numberonlyfirstinline@#1}%
2442 \newtoggle{numberonlyfirstintwolines@#1}%
2443 \newtoggle{onlypstartinfootnote@#1}%
2444 \newtoggle{pstartinfootnote@#1}%
2445 \csgdef{symlinenum@#1}{\symlinenum}%
2446 \newtoggle{nonnumberinfootnote@#1}%
2447 \csgdef{beforenumberinfootnote@#1}{0pt}%
2448 \csgdef{afternumberinfootnote@#1}{0.5em}%
2449 \newtoggle{nonbreakableafternumber@#1}%
2450 \csgdef{beforesymlinenum@#1}{\csuse{beforenumberinfootnote@#1}}%
2451 \csgdef{aftersymlinenum@#1}{\csuse{afternumberinfootnote@#1}}%
2452 \csgdef{inplaceofnumber@#1}{1em}%
2453 \global\cslet{lemmaseparator@#1}{\rbracket}%
2454 \csgdef{beforelemmaseparator@#1}{0em}%
2455 \csgdef{afterlemmaseparator@#1}{0.5em}%
2456 \csgdef{inplaceoflemmaseparator@#1}{1em}%
2457 \csgdef{afternote@#1}{1em plus .4em minus .4em}%
2458 \csgdef{parafootsep@#1}{\parafootftmsep}%
2459 \csgdef{beforeXnotes@#1}{1.2em \@plus .6em \@minus .6em}%
2460 \csgdef{beforenotesX@#1}{1.2em \@plus .6em \@minus .6em}%
2461 \csgdef{afterXrule@#1}{0pt}%
2462 \csgdef{afterruleX@#1}{0pt}%
2463 \csgdef{txtbeforeXnotes@#1}{}%
2464 \csgdef{maxhnotesX@#1}{\ledfootinsdim}%
2465 \csgdef{maxhXnotes@#1}{\ledfootinsdim}

```

### 27.3 Create inserts, needed to add notes in foot

Concerning inserts, see chapter 15 of the TeXBook by D. Knuth

```

2466
2467 \expandafter\newinsert\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname
2468 \expandafter\newinsert\csname footins#1\endcsname
2469 \expandafter\newinsert\csname #1footins\endcsname
2470 \expandafter\newinsert\csname mp#1footins\endcsname

```

### 27.4 Create commands for critical apparatus, \Xfootnote

Note the double # in command: it's because command is made inside another command.

```

2471
2472 \global\newbool{parapparatus@}{\expandafter\newcommand\expandafter *}{\expandafter\new
2473 \begingroup%
2474 \newcommand{\content}{##2}%
2475 \ifnumberedpar@
2476 \ifledRcol%

```

```

2477         \ifluatex%
2478             \footnotelang@lua[R]%
2479         \fi%
2480         \@ifundefined{xpg@main@language}%if polyglossia
2481             {}%
2482             {\footnotelang@poly[R]}%
2483         \footnoteoptions@{R}{##1}{true}%
2484         \xright@appenditem{\noexpand\prepare@edindex@fornote{\l@d@nums}%
2485 \noexpand\csuse{v#1footnote}{#1}%
2486         {\l@d@nums}{\csexpandonce{tag}}{\csexpandonce{content}}}\to\inserts@listR
2487         \footnoteoptions@{R}{##1}{false}%
2488         \global\advance\insert@countR \@ne%
2489     \else%
2490         \ifluatex%
2491             \footnotelang@lua%
2492         \fi%
2493         \@ifundefined{xpg@main@language}%if polyglossia
2494             {}%
2495             {\footnotelang@poly}%
2496         \footnoteoptions@{##1}{true}%
2497         \xright@appenditem{\noexpand\prepare@edindex@fornote{\l@d@nums}%
2498 \noexpand\csuse{v#1footnote}{#1}%
2499         {\l@d@nums}{\csexpandonce{tag}}{\csexpandonce{content}}}\to\inserts@list
2500         \global\advance\insert@count \@ne%
2501         \footnoteoptions@{##1}{false}%
2502     \fi
2503 \else
2504     \csuse{v#1footnote}{#1}{\{0|0|0|0|0|0|0\}{#1}}%
2505 \fi%
2506 \ignorespaces%
2507 \endgroup
2508 }

```

Set standard display and remember the display.

```

2509 \csgdef{series@display#1}{%
2510 \footnormal{#1}

```

## 27.5 Create tools for familiar footnotes (`\footnoteX`)

First, create the `\footnoteX` command.

```

2511
2512 \global\expandafter\newcommand\csname footnote#1\endcsname[1]{%
2513     \begingroup%
2514         \newcommand{\content}{##1}%
2515         \stepcounter{footnote#1}%
2516         \protected@csxdef{thefnmark#1}{\csuse{thefootnote#1}}%
2517         \csuse{@footnotemark#1}%
2518         \csuse{vfootnote#1}{#1}{\csexpandonce{content}}\m@mmf@prepare%
2519     \endgroup%
2520 }

```

The counters.

```

2521 \newcounter{footnote#1}
2522 \global\expandafter\renewcommand\csname thefootnote#1\endcsname{\arabic{footnote#1}}
2523 % \end{macrocode}
2524 % Don't forget to initialize series
2525 % \begin{macrocode}
2526 \csgdef{series@displayX#1}{
2527 \footnormalX{#1}

```

## 27.6 The endnotes

The `\Xendnote` macro functions to write one endnote to the `.end` file. We change `\newlinechar` so that in the file every space becomes the start of a new line; this generally ensures that a long note doesn't exceed restrictions on the length of lines in files.

```

2528
2529 \global\expandafter\newcommand\csname #1endnote\endcsname[2]{\newlinechar='40
2530 \global\@noneed@Footnotetrue%
2531 \newcommand{\content}{##1}%
2532 \immediate\write\l@d@end{\expandafter\string\csname #1end\endcsname%
2533 {\ifnumberedpar@l@d@nums\fi}%
2534 {\ifnumberedpar@csexpandonce{tag}\fi}{\csexpandonce{content}}{#1}}\ignorespaces
2535 }

```

`\Xendnote` commands called `\Xend` commands on to the endnote file; these are analogous to the various `footfmt` commands above, and they take the same arguments. When we process this file, we'll want to pick out the notes of one series and ignore all the rest. To do that, we equate the `end` command for the series we want to `\endprint`, and leave the rest equated to `\@gobblethree`, which just skips over its three arguments.<sup>27</sup>

```

2536
2537 \global\csletcs{#1end}{@gobblethree}
2538 %\end{macrocode}
2539 % We need to be able to modify \Eledmac's footnote macros and restore their
2540
2541 \global\csletcs{#1@footnote}{#1footnote}
2542 % \cs{Stock series in \cs{@series}
2543 % \begin{macrocode}
2544
2545 \listxadd{\@series}{#1}
2546 }
2547 }% End of \newseries

```

## 27.7 Init standards series (A,B,C,D,E,Z)

```

2548 \newseries{A,B,C,D,E,Z}

```

---

<sup>27</sup>Christophe Hebeisen ([christophe.hebeisen@a3.epfl.ch](mailto:christophe.hebeisen@a3.epfl.ch)) emailed on 2003/11/05 to say he had found that `\@gobblethree` was also defined in the `amsfonts` package.

## 27.8 Some tools

`\firstseries` `\seriesatbegin{⟨s⟩}` changes the order of series, to put the series  $\langle s \rangle$  at the beginning of the list. The series can be the result of a command.

```

2549 \newcommand{\seriesatbegin}[1]{
2550     \edef\series{#1}
2551     \def\new{}
2552     \listadd{\new}{\series}
2553     \def\do##1{\ifcsstring{series}{##1}{ }\{\listadd{\new}{##1}\}}
2554     \dolistloop{\@series}
2555     \xdef\@series{\new}
2556 }
2557 % \end{macrocode}
2558 % \end{macro}
2559 % \begin{macro}{\seriesatend}
2560 % And \cs{seriesatend} moves the series to the end of the list.
2561 % \begin{macrocode}
2562 \newcommand{\seriesatend}[1]{
2563     \edef\series{#1}
2564     \def\new{}
2565     \def\do##1{\ifcsstring{series}{##1}{ }\{\listadd{\new}{##1}\}}
2566     \dolistloop{\@series}
2567     \listadd{\new}{\series}
2568     \xdef\@series{\new}
2569 }
2570 % \end{macrocode}
2571 % \end{macro}
2572 % \subsection{Display}
2573 % \changes{v1.0}{2012/09/15}{New generic commands to customize footnote display.}
2574 % \subsubsection{Options}
2575 % \begin{macro}{\settoggle@series}
2576 % \changes{v1.1}{2012/09/25}{\cs{settoggle@series} switch the global value of the toggle, not only th
2577 % \cs{settoggle@series}\cs{series}{toggle}{value} is a generic command to switch one toggle for one s
2578 % \begin{macrocode}
2579 \newcommand{\settoggle@series}[3]{%
2580     \def\do##1{\global\settoggle{#2@##1}{#3}}
2581     \ifstrempy{#1}{%
2582         \dolistloop{\@series}%
2583     }%
2584     {%
2585         \docsvlist{#1}%
2586     }%
2587 }
```

`\setcommand@series` `\setcommand@series{⟨series⟩}{⟨command⟩}{⟨value⟩}` is a generic command to change one command for one series.

```

2588 \newcommandx{\setcommand@series}[4][4]{%
2589     \def\do##1{
2590         \csgdef{#2@##1}{#3}
2591         \ifstrequal{#4}{reload}{
```

```

2592         \csuse{foot\csuse{series@display##1}}{##1}
2593         \csuse{foot\csuse{series@displayX##1}}{##1}
2594     }-{}
2595     \ifstrempy{#1}{%
2596         \dolistloop{\@series}%
2597     }%
2598     {%
2599         \docsvlist{#1}%
2600     }%
2601 }%

```

`\newhookcommand@series` `\newhookcommand@series\command` names is a generic command to add new commands for hooks, like `\hsizetwocol`.

```

2602 \newcommand{\newhookcommand@series}[1]{%
2603     \global\expandafter\newcommand\expandafter*\csname #1\endcsname[2][\csuse{setcommand@
2604 }
2605 \newhookcommand@series{Xhangindent}
2606
2607 \newhookcommand@series{hangindentX}
2608
2609 \newhookcommand@series{Xragged}
2610
2611 \newhookcommand@series{raggedX}
2612
2613 \newhookcommand@series{hsizetwocol}
2614
2615 \newhookcommand@series{hsizethreecol}
2616
2617 \newhookcommand@series{hsizetwocolX}
2618
2619 \newhookcommand@series{hsizethreecolX}
2620
2621 \newhookcommand@series{Xnotenumfont}
2622
2623 \newhookcommand@series{notenumfontX}
2624
2625 \newhookcommand@series{Xendnotenumfont}
2626
2627 \newhookcommand@series{bhooknoteX}
2628
2629 \newhookcommand@series{bhookXnote}
2630
2631 \newhookcommand@series{bhookXendnote}
2632
2633 \newhookcommand@series{Xnotefontsize}
2634
2635 \newhookcommand@series{notefontsizeX}
2636
2637 \newhookcommand@series{Xendnotefontsize}
2638

```

```

2639 \newhookcommand@series{boxlinenum}
2640
2641 \newhookcommand@series{boxsymlinenum}
2642
2643 \newhookcommand@series{parafootsep}
2644
2645 \newhookcommand@series{symlinenum}
2646
2647 \newhookcommand@series{beforenumberinfootnote}
2648
2649 \newhookcommand@series{afternumberinfootnote}
2650
2651 \newhookcommand@series{beforesymlinenum}
2652
2653 \newhookcommand@series{aftersymlinenum}
2654
2655 \newhookcommand@series{inplaceofnumber}
2656
2657 \newhookcommand@series{lemmaseparator}
2658
2659 \newhookcommand@series{beforelemmaseparator}
2660
2661 \newhookcommand@series{afterlemmaseparator}
2662
2663 \newhookcommand@series{inplaceoflemmaseparator}
2664
2665 \newhookcommand@series{afternote}
2666
2667 \newhookcommand@series{txtbeforeXnotes}
2668
2669 \newhookcommand@series{afterruleX}
2670
2671 \newhookcommand@series{afterXrule}
2672

```

`hookcommand@series@reload` `\newhookcommand@series@reload` does the same thing as `\newhookcommand@series` but the commands created by this macro also reload the series displaying (normal, paragraph, twocol, threecol).

```

2673 \newcommand{\newhookcommand@series@reload}[1]{%
2674   \global\expandafter\newcommand\expandafter*\csname #1\endcsname[2][1]{%
2675     \csuse{setcommand@series}{##1}{#1}{##2}[reload]
2676   }%
2677 }
2678 \newhookcommand@series@reload{beforeXnotes}
2679
2680 \newhookcommand@series@reload{beforenotesX}
2681
2682 \newhookcommand@series@reload{maxhnotesX}
2683
2684 \newhookcommand@series@reload{maxhXnotes}

```

```

2685 % \end{macrocode}
2686 % \end{macro}
2687 % \begin{macro}{\newhooktoggle@series}
2688 % \cs{newhooktoggle@series}\cs{command names} is a generic command to add new commands for
2689 % \begin{macrocode}
2690 \newcommand{\newhooktoggle@series}[1]{%
2691   \global\expandafter\newcommandx\expandafter*\csname #1\endcsname[2][1,2={true},usedefault]
2692 }
2693 \newhooktoggle@series{numberonlyfirstinline}
2694 \newhooktoggle@series{numberonlyfirstintwolines}
2695 \newhooktoggle@series{nonumberinfootnote}
2696 \newhooktoggle@series{pstartinfootnote}
2697 \newhooktoggle@series{onlypstartinfootnote}
2698 \newhooktoggle@series{nonbreakableafternumber}
2699 \newhooktoggle@series{Xlemmadisablefontselection}
2700 \newhooktoggle@series{Xendlemmadisablefontselection}

```

## 27.9 Old commands, kept for backward compatibility

The next commands are kept for ascendant compatibility, but should't be used anymore.

```

\notenumfont
\notefontsetup 2701 \newcommand*{\notenumfont}{\normalfont}
\ifledplinenum 2702 \newcommand*{\notefontsetup}{\footnotesize}
\symplinenum 2703 \newif\ifledplinenum
2704 \ledplinenumtrue
2705 \newcommand*{\symplinenum}{\ifledplinenum}

```

### 27.10 Hooks for a particular footnote

`\nonum@` `\nonum@` toggle is used to disable line number printing in a particular footnote.

```
2706 \newtoggle{\nonum@}
```

`\nosep@` `\nonum@` toggle is used to disable the lemma separator in a particular footnote.

```
2707 \newtoggle{\nosep@}
```

### 27.11 Alias

`\nolemmaseparator` `\nolemmaseparator[<series>]` is just an alias for `\lemmaseparator[<series>]{}`.

```
2708 \newcommandx*{\nolemmaseparator}[1][1]{\lemmaseparator[#1]{}}
```

`\interparanoteglue` The `\ipn@skip` skip and `\interparanoteglue` command are kept for backward compatibility, but should not be used anymore.

```

\ipn@skip
2709 \newskip\ipn@skip
2710 \newcommand*{\interparanoteglue}[1]{%
2711   {\notefontsetup\global\ipn@skip=#1 \relax}}
2712 \interparanoteglue{1em plus.4em minus.4em}

```

`\parafootftmsep` The `\parafootftmsep` macro is kept for backward compatibility. It is default value of `\parafootsep@series`.

```
2713 \newcommand{\parafootftmsep}{}%
```

## 27.12 Line number printing

`\printlinefootnote` The `\printlinefootnote` macro is called in each `\<type>footfmt` command. It controls whether the line number is printed or not, according to the previous options. Its first argument is the information about lines, its second is the series of the footnote.

```
2714 \newcommand{\printlinefootnote}[2]{%
2715   \def\extractline@##1|##2|##3|##4|##5|##6|##7|{##2}%
2716   \def\extractsubline@##1|##2|##3|##4|##5|##6|##7|{##3}%
2717   \def\extractendline@##1|##2|##3|##4|##5|##6|##7|{##5}%
2718   \def\extractendsubline@##1|##2|##3|##4|##5|##6|##7|{##6}%
2719   \iftoggle{numberonlyfirstintwolines@#2}{%
2720     \edef\lineinfo@{\extractline@ #1| - \extractsubline@ #1| - \extractendline@ #1| - \extractends
2721     }%
2722     {%
2723       \edef\lineinfo@{\extractline@ #1| - \extractsubline@ #1|}%
2724       {%
2725         \iftoggle{nonum@}{%Try if the line number must printed for this specific not (by default, yes)
2726         \hspace{\csuse{inplaceofnumber@#2}}}%
2727         }%
2728         {%
2729           {%
2730             \iftoggle{nonumberinfootnote@#2}{%Try if the line number must printed (by default, yes)
2731             {%
2732               \hspace{\csuse{inplaceofnumber@#2}}}%
2733               }%
2734               {%
2735                 {\iftoggle{numberonlyfirstinline@#2}{% If for this series the line number must be printed
2736                 {%
2737                   \ifcsdef{prevline#2}{%
2738                     {%Be sure the \prevline exists.
2739                     \ifcsequal{prevline#2}{\lineinfo@}{%Try it
2740                     {%
2741                       \ifcsequal{symlinenum@#2}{% Try if a symbol is defined
2742                       {%
2743                         \hspace{\csuse{inplaceofnumber@#2}}}%
2744                         }%
2745                         {\hspace{\csuse{beforeasymlinenum@#2}}\csuse{Xnotenumfont@#2}}%
2746                         \ifdimequal{\csuse{boxsymlinenum@#2}}{\Opt}{%
2747                           {\csuse{symlinenum@#2}}%
2748                           {\hbox to \csuse{boxsymlinenum@#2}{\csuse{symlinenum@#2}\hfill}}%
2749                           \hspace{\csuse{afterasymlinenum@#2}}}%
2750                           }%
2751                           {%
2752                             \hspace{\csuse{beforenumberinfootnote@#2}}\csuse{Xnotenumfont@#2}}%
```

```

2753         \ifdimequal{\csuse{boxlinenum@#2}}{0pt}{%
2754             \iftoggle{pstartinfootnote@#2}{\printpstart}{}%
2755             \printlines#1|}%
2756         {%
2757             \hbox to \csuse{boxlinenum@#2}{%
2758                 \iftoggle{pstartinfootnote@#2}{\printpstart}{}%
2759                 \iftoggle{onlypstartinfootnote@#2}{\printlines#1|}%
2760             \hfill}%
2761         }%
2762         \iftoggle{nonbreakableafternumber@#2}{\nobreak}{\hspace{\csu
2763     }%
2764 }%
2765 {%
2766 \hspace{\csuse{beforenumberinfootnote@#2}}\csuse{Xnotenumfont@#2}%
2767 \ifdimequal{\csuse{boxlinenum@#2}}{0pt}{%
2768     \iftoggle{pstartinfootnote@#2}{\printpstart}{}%
2769     \iftoggle{onlypstartinfootnote@#2}{\printlines#1|}%
2770     {%
2771         \hbox to \csuse{boxlinenum@#2}{%
2772             \iftoggle{pstartinfootnote@#2}{\printpstart}{}%
2773             \iftoggle{onlypstartinfootnote@#2}{\printlines#1|}%
2774         \hfill}%
2775     }%
2776     \iftoggle{nonbreakableafternumber@#2}{\nobreak}{\hspace{\csuse{aftern
2777 }%
2778 }%
2779 {%
2780 \hspace{\csuse{beforenumberinfootnote@#2}}\csuse{Xnotenumfont@#2}%
2781 \ifdimequal{\csuse{boxlinenum@#2}}{0pt}{%
2782     \iftoggle{pstartinfootnote@#2}{\printpstart}{}%
2783     \iftoggle{onlypstartinfootnote@#2}{\printlines#1|}%
2784     }%
2785     {%
2786         \hbox to \csuse{boxlinenum@#2}{%
2787             \iftoggle{pstartinfootnote@#2}{\printpstart}{}%
2788             \iftoggle{onlypstartinfootnote@#2}{\printlines#1|}%
2789         \hfill}%
2790     }%
2791     \iftoggle{nonbreakableafternumber@#2}{\nobreak}{\hspace{\csuse{afternumber:
2792 }%
2793 \csxdef{prevline#2}{\lineinfo@}%
2794     }%
2795     }%
2796     }%
2797 }%
2798 }

```

## 28 Output routine

Now we begin the output routine and associated things.

`\pageno` `\pageno` is a page number, starting at 1, and `\advancepageno` increments the number.

```
2799 \countdef\pageno=0 \pageno=1
2800 \newcommand*{\advancepageno}{\ifnum\pageno<\z@ \global\advance\pageno\m@ne
2801 \else\global\advance\pageno\@ne\fi}
2802
```

The next portion is probably the trickiest part of moving from TeX to L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X. The original code is below, but we need something very different.

This is a new output routine, with changes to handle printing all our footnotes. Those changes have not been added directly, but are in macros that get called here: that should make it easier to see what would need to be taken over to a different output routine. We continue to use the `\pagebody`, `\makeheadline`, `\makefootline`, and `\dosupereject` macros of PLAIN TeX; for those macros, and the original version of `\output`, see *The TeXbook*, p. 364.

```
\output{\edmac@output}
\def\edmac@output{\shipout\vbox{\normal@pars
  \vbox{\makeheadline\pagebody\makefootline}}%
}%
\advancepageno
\ifnum\outputpenalty>-\@MM\else\dosupereject\fi}

\def\pagecontents{\page@start
\ifvoid\topins\else\unvbox\topins\fi
\dimen@=\dp\cclv \unvbox\cclv % open up \box255
\do@feet
\ifr@ggedbottom \kern-\dimen@ \vfil \fi}
```

`\do@feet` ships out all the footnotes. Standard EDMAC has only five feet, but there is nothing in principal to prevent you from creating an arachnoid or centipedal edition; straightforward modifications of EDMAC are all that's required. However, the myriapedal edition is ruled out by eTeX limitations: the number of insertion classes is limited to 2<sup>16</sup>.

With luck we might only have to change `\@makecol` and `\@reinserts`. The kernel definition of these, and perhaps some other things, is:

```
\gdef \@makecol {%
\ifvoid\footins
\setbox\@outputbox \box\cclv
\else
\setbox\@outputbox \vbox {%
\boxmaxdepth \@maxdepth
\@tempdima\dp\cclv
```

```

\unvbox \@cclv
\vskip \skip\footins
\color@begingroup
\normalcolor
\footnoterule
\unvbox \footins
\color@endgroup
}%
\fi
\edef\@freelist{\@freelist\@midlist}%
\global \let \@midlist \@empty
\@combinefloats
\ifvbox\@kludgeins
\@makespecialcolbox
\else
\setbox\@outputbox \vbox to\@colht {%
\@texttop
\dimen@ \dp\@outputbox
\unvbox\@outputbox
\vskip -\dimen@
\@textbottom
}%
\fi
\global \maxdepth \@maxdepth
}

\gdef \@reinserts{%
\ifvoid\footins\else\insert\footins{\unvbox\footins}\fi
\ifvbox\@kludgeins\insert\@kludgeins{\unvbox\@kludgeins}\fi
}

```

Now we start actually changing things.

`\m@m@makecolfloats` These macros are defined in the memoir class and form part of the definition of `\m@m@makecoltext` `\@makecol`.

```

\m@m@makecolintro 2803 \providecommand{\m@m@makecolfloats}{%
2804   \xdef\@freelist{\@freelist\@midlist}%
2805   \global \let \@midlist \@empty
2806   \@combinefloats}
2807 \providecommand{\m@m@makecoltext}{%
2808   \ifvbox\@kludgeins
2809     \@makespecialcolbox
2810   \else
2811     \setbox\@outputbox \vbox to\@colht {%
2812       \@texttop
2813       \dimen@ \dp\@outputbox
2814       \unvbox\@outputbox
2815       \vskip -\dimen@
2816       \@textbottom}%

```

```

2817 \fi}
2818 \providecommand{\m@m@makecolintro}{ }
2819

```

`\l@d@makecol` This is a partitioned version of the ‘standard’ `\@makecol`, with the initial code put into another macro.

```

2820 \gdef\l@d@makecol{%
2821 \l@ddofootinsert
2822 \m@m@makecolfloats
2823 \m@m@makecoltext
2824 \global \maxdepth \@maxdepth}
2825

```

`\ifFN@bottom` The `\ifFN@bottom` macro is defined by the `footmisc` package. If this package is not loaded, we define it.

```

2826 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{footmisc}{ }\newif\ifFN@bottom}}

```

`\l@ddofootinsert` This macro essentially holds the initial portion of the kernel `\@makecol` code.

```

2827 \newcommand*{\l@ddofootinsert}{%
2828 %%% \page@start
2829 \ifvoid\footins
2830 \setbox\@outputbox \box\@cclv
2831 \else
2832 \setbox\@outputbox \vbox {%
2833 \boxmaxdepth \@maxdepth
2834 \@tempdima\dp\@cclv
2835 \unvbox \@cclv
2836 \ifFN@bottom\vfill\fi\vskip \skip\footins%% If the option bottom of loadmisc package is loaded
2837 \color@begingroup
2838 \normalcolor
2839 \footnoterule
2840 \unvbox \footins
2841 \color@endgroup
2842 }%
2843 \fi

```

That’s the end of the copy of the kernel code. We finally call a macro to handle all the additional EDMAC feet.

```

2844 \l@ddoxtrafeet
2845 }
2846

```

`\doxtrafeet` `\doxtrafeet` is the code extending `\@makecol` to cater for the extra `eledmac` feet. We have two classes of extra footnotes. By default, we order the footnote inserts so that the regular footnotes are first, then class 1 (familiar footnotes) and finally class 2 (critical footnotes).

```

2847 \newcommand*{\l@ddoxtrafeet}{%
2848 \IfStrEq{familiar-critical}{\@fnpos}

```

```

2849     {\doxtrafeeti\doxtrafeetii}%
2850     {%
2851     \IfStrEq{critical-familiar}{\@fnpos}%
2852         {\doxtrafeetii\doxtrafeeti}%
2853         {\doxtrafeeti\doxtrafeetii}%
2854     }%
2855 }%
2856

\doxtrafeetii \doxtrafeetii is the code extending \@makecol to cater for the extra critical
              feet (class 2 feet). NOTE: the code is likely to be ‘featurefull’.

2857 \newcommand*{\doxtrafeetii}{%
2858     \setbox\@outputbox \vbox{%
2859         \unvbox\@outputbox
2860         \@opxtrafeetii}}

\@opxtrafeetii The extra critical feet to be aded to the output.

2861 \newcommand*{\@opxtrafeetii}{%
2862     \def\do##1{\ifvoid\csuse{##1footins}\else\csuse{##1footstart}{##1}\csuse{##1footgroup}{%
2863     \dolistloop{\@series}}

\l@ddodoreinextrafeet \l@ddodoreinextrafeet is the code for catering for the extra footnotes within
\@reinserts. The implementation may well have to change. We use the same
classes and ordering as in \l@ddoxtrafeet.

2864 \newcommand*{\l@ddodoreinextrafeet}{%
2865     \doreinextrafeeti
2866     \doreinextrafeetii}
2867

\doreinextrafeetii \doreinextrafeetii is the code for catering for the class 2 extra critical footnotes
within \@reinserts. The implementation may well have to change.

2868 \newcommand*{\doreinextrafeetii}{%
2869     \def\do##1{\ifvoid\csuse{##1footins}\else\insert\csuse{##1ootins}{\unvbox\csuse{##1foot
2870     \dolistloop{\@series}}
2871 }
2872

\l@d@reinserts And here is the modified version of \@reinserts.

2873 \gdef \l@d@reinserts{%
2874     \ifvoid\footins\else\insert\footins{\unvbox\footins}\fi
2875     \l@ddodoreinextrafeet
2876     \ifvbox\@kludgeins\insert\@kludgeins{\unvbox\@kludgeins}\fi
2877 }
2878

The memoir class does not use the ‘standard’ versions of \@makecol and
\@reinserts, due to its sidebar insert. We had better add that code if mem-
oir is used. (It can be awkward dealing with \if code within \if code, so don’t
use \ifl@dmemoir here.)

2879 \ifclassloaded{memoir}{%

```

memoir is loaded so we use memoir's built in hooks.

```
2880 \g@addto@macro{\m@mddoextrafeet}{\l@dddoextrafeet}%
2881 \g@addto@macro{\m@mddodoreinextrafeet}{\l@ddodoreinextrafeet}%
2882 }{%
```

memoir has not been loaded, so redefine @makecol and @reinserts.

```
2883 \gdef\@makecol{\l@d@makecol}%
2884 \gdef\@reinserts{\l@d@reinserts}%
2885 }
2886
```

\addfootins \addfootins is for backward compatibility, but should'nt be used anymore.

```
2887 \newcommand*{\addfootins}[1]{%
2888   \led@warn@AddfootinsObsolete%
2889   \footnormal{#1}
2890   \g@addto@macro{\@opxtrafeetii}{%
2891     \ifvoid\@nameuse{#1footins}\else
2892       \@nameuse{#1footstart{#1}}\@nameuse{#1footgroup}{#1}\fi}
2893   \g@addto@macro{\@doreinextrafeetii}{%
2894     \ifvoid\@nameuse{#1footins}\else
2895       \insert\@nameuse{#1footins}{\unvbox\@nameuse{#1footins}}\fi}
2896   \g@addto@macro{\l@dedbeginmini}{%
2897     \expandafter\let\csname #1footnote\endcsname = \@nameuse{mp#1footnote}}
2898   \g@addto@macro{\l@dedendmini}{%
2899     \ifvoid\@nameuse{mp#1footins}\else\@nameuse{mpfootgroup#1{#1}}\fi}
2900 }
```

It turns out that \@doclearpage also needs modifying.

\if@led@nofoot We have to check if there are any leftover feet. \@led@extranofeet is a hook for  
 \@led@extranofeet handling further footnotes.

```
2901 \newif\if@led@nofoot
2902 \newcommand*{\@led@extranofeet}{}
2903
```

```
2904 \ifclassloaded{memoir}{%
```

If the memoir class is loaded we hook into its modified \@doclearpage.

\@mem@extranofeet

```
2905 \g@addto@macro{\@mem@extranofeet}{%
2906   \def\do#1{\ifvoid\csuse{#1footins}\else\@mem@nofootfalse\fi%
2907   \ifvoid\csuse{footins#1}\else\@mem@nofootfalse\fi%
2908   }
2909   \dolistloop{\@series}%
2910   \@led@extranofeet}
2911 }{%
```

As memoir is not loaded we have to do it all here.

```

\@led@testifnofoot
\doclearpage 2912 \newcommand*{\@led@testifnofoot}{%
2913   \@led@nofoottrue
2914   \ifvoid\footins\else\@led@nofootfalse\fi
2915   \def\do##1{\ifvoid\csuse{##1footins}\else\@led@nofootfalse\fi%
2916   \ifvoid\csuse{footins##1}\else\@led@nofootfalse\fi}%
2917   \dolistloop{\@series}
2918   \@led@extranofeet}
2919
2920 \renewcommand{\@doclearpage}{%
2921   \@led@testifnofoot
2922   \if@led@nofoot
2923     \setbox\@tempboxa\vsplit\@ccclv to\z@ \unvbox\@tempboxa
2924     \setbox\@tempboxa\box\@ccclv
2925     \xdef\@deferlist{\@toplist\@botlist\@deferlist}%
2926     \global \let \@toplist \@empty
2927     \global \let \@botlist \@empty
2928     \global \@colroom \@colht
2929     \ifx \@currlist\@empty
2930     \else
2931       \@latexerr{Float(s) lost}\@ehb
2932       \global \let \@currlist \@empty
2933     \fi
2934     \@makefcolumn\@deferlist
2935     \@whilesw\if@fcolmade \fi{\@opcol\@makefcolumn\@deferlist}%
2936     \if@twocolumn
2937       \if@firstcolumn
2938         \xdef\@dbldeferlist{\@dbltoplist\@dbldeferlist}%
2939         \global \let \@dbltoplist \@empty
2940         \global \@colht \textheight
2941         \begingroup
2942           \@dblfloatplacement
2943           \@makefcolumn\@dbldeferlist
2944           \@whilesw\if@fcolmade \fi{\@outputpage
2945             \@makefcolumn\@dbldeferlist}%
2946         \endgroup
2947       \else
2948         \vbox{}\clearpage
2949       \fi
2950     \fi
2951   \else
2952     \setbox\@ccclv\vbox{\box\@ccclv\vfil}%
2953     \l@d@makecol\@opcol
2954     \clearpage
2955   \fi}
2956 }
2957

```

## 29 Cross referencing

Peter Wilson have rewritten portions of the code in this section so that the LaTeX .aux file is used. This will also handle \included files.

Further, I have renamed some of the original EDMAC macros so that they do not clash with the LaTeX label/ref commands (EDMAC and LaTeX use very different mechanisms). In particular, the original EDMAC \label and \pageref have been renamed as \edlabel and \edpageref respectively.

You can mark a place in the text using a command of the form \edlabel{foo}, and later refer to it using the label foo by saying \edpageref{foo}, or \lineref{foo} or \sublineref{foo}. These reference commands will produce, respectively, the page, line and sub-line on which the \edlabel{foo} command occurred.

The reference macros warn you if a reference is made to an undefined label. If foo has been used as a label before, the \edlabel{foo} command will issue a complaint; subsequent \edpageref and \lineref commands will refer to the latest occurrence of \label{foo}.

`\labelref@list` Set up a new list, \labelref@list, to hold the page, line and sub-line numbers for each label.

```
2958 \list@create{\labelref@list}
```

`\zz@@@` A convenience macro to zero two labeling counters in one go.

```
2959 %% \newcommand*{\zz@@@}{000|000|000} % set three counters to zero in one go
```

```
2960 \newcommand*{\zz@@@}{000|000} % set two counters to zero in one go
```

```
2961
```

`\edlabel` The \edlabel command first writes a \@lab macro to the \linenum@out file. It then checks to see that the \labelref@list actually has something in it (if not, it creates a dummy entry), and pops the next value for the current label, storing it in \label@refs. Finally it defines the label to be \empty so that any future check will turn up the fact that it has been used.<sup>28</sup>

This version of the original EDMAC \label uses \@bsphack and \@esphack to eliminate extra space problems and also the LaTeX write methods for the .aux file.

Jesse Billett<sup>29</sup> found that the original code could be off by several pages. This version, hopefully cures that, and also allows for non-arabic page numbering.

```
2962 \newcommand*{\edlabel}[1]{\@bsphack
2963   \write\linenum@out{\string\@lab}%
2964   \ifx\labelref@list\empty
2965     \xdef\label@refs{\zz@@@}%
2966   \else
2967     \gl@p\labelref@list\to\label@refs
2968   \ifvmode
```

<sup>28</sup>The remaining macros in this section were kindly revised by Wayne Sullivan, who substantially improved their efficiency and flexibility.

<sup>29</sup>(jdb43@cam.ac.uk) via the ctt thread 'ledmac cross referencing', 25 August 2003.

```

2969     \advancelabel@refs
2970   \fi
2971 \fi

```

Use code from the kernel `\label` command to write the correct page number (it seems possible that the original EDMAC's `\page@num` scheme might also have had problems in this area). Also define an `hypertarget` if `hyperref` package is loaded.

```

2972   \protected@write\@auxout{}%
2973     {\string\l@dmake@labels\space\thepage|\label@refs|\the\c@pstart|{#1}}%
2974   \ifcsdef{hypertarget}{\hypertarget{#1}{}}{}%
2975   \@esphack}
2976

```

`\advancelabel@refs` In cases where `\edlabel` is the first element in a paragraph, we have a problem with line counts, because line counts change only at the first horizontal box of the paragraph. Hence, we need to test `\edlabel` if it occurs at the start of a paragraph. To do so, we use `\ifvmode`. If the test is true, we must advance by one unit the amount of text we write into the `.aux` file. We do so using `\advancelabel@refs` command.

```

2977 \newcounter{line}%
2978 \newcounter{subline}%
2979 \newcommand{\advancelabel@refs}{%
2980   \setcounter{line}{\expandafter\labelrefsparseline\label@refs}%
2981   \stepcounter{line}%
2982   \ifsublines@%
2983     \setcounter{subline}{\expandafter\labelrefsparsesubline\label@refs}%
2984     \stepcounter{subline}{1}%
2985     \def\label@refs{\theline|\thesubline}%
2986   \else%
2987     \def\label@refs{\theline|0}%
2988   \fi%
2989 }
2990 \def\labelrefsparseline#1|#2{#1}
2991 \def\labelrefsparsesubline#1|#2{#2}

```

`\l@dmake@labels` The `\l@dmake@labels` macro gets executed when the labels file is read. For each label it defines a macro, whose name is made up partly from the label you supplied, that contains the page, line and sub-line numbers. But first it checks to see whether the label has already been used (and complains if it has).

The initial use of `\newcommand` is to catch if `\l@dmake@labels` has been previously defined (by a class or package).

```

2992 \newcommand*{\l@dmake@labels}{%
2993 \def\l@dmake@labels#1|#2|#3|#4|#5{%
2994   \expandafter\ifx\csname the@label#5\endcsname \relax\else
2995     \led@warn@DuplicateLabel{#5}%
2996   \fi
2997   \expandafter\gdef\csname the@label#5\endcsname{#1|#2|#3|#4}%
2998   \ignorespaces}
2999

```

LaTeX reads the aux file at both the beginning and end of the document, so we have to switch off duplicate label checking after the first time the file is read.

```
3000 \AtBeginDocument{%
3001   \def\l@make@labels#1|#2|#3|#4|#5{%
3002 }
3003
```

**\@lab** The \@lab command, which appears in the \linenum@out file, appends the current values of page, line and sub-line to the \labelref@list. These values are defined by the earlier \@page, \@nl, and the \sub@on and \sub@off commands appearing in the \linenum@out file.

LaTeX uses the page counter for page numbers. However, it appears that this is not the right place to grab the page number. That task is now done in the \edlabel macro. This version of \@lab appends just the current line and sub-line numbers to \labelref@list.

```
3004 \newcommand*{\@lab}{\xright@appenditem
3005   {\linenumrep{\line@num}}{%
3006     \ifsublines@ \sublinenumrep{\subline@num}\else 0\fi}\to\labelref@list}
3007
```

**\wrap@edcrossref** \wrap@edcrossref is called around all eldmac crossref commands, except those which start with x. It adds the hyperlink.

```
3008 \newrobustcmd{\wrap@edcrossref}[2]{%
3009   \ifdef{\hyperlink}%
3010     {\hyperlink{#1}{#2}}%
3011     {#2}%
3012 }
```

**\edpageref** If the specified label exists, \edpageref gives its page number. For this reference command, as for the other two, a special version with prefix x is provided for use in places where the command is to be scanned as a number, as in \linenum. These special versions have two limitations: they don't print error messages if the reference is unknown, and they can't appear as the first label or reference command in the file; you must ensure that a \edlabel or a normal reference command appears first, or these x-commands will always return zeros. LaTeX already defines a \pageref, so changing the name to \edpageref.

```
3013 \newcommand*{\edpageref}[1]{\l@dref@undefined{#1}\wrap@edcrossref{#1}{\l@dgetref@num{1}{#1}}}
3014 \newcommand*{\xpageref}[1]{\l@dgetref@num{1}{#1}}
3015
```

**\lineref** If the specified label exists, \lineref gives its line number.

```
\xlineref 3016 \newcommand*{\lineref}[1]{\l@dref@undefined{#1}\wrap@edcrossref{#1}{\l@dgetref@num{2}{#1}}}
3017 \newcommand*{\xlineref}[1]{\l@dgetref@num{2}{#1}}
3018
```

**\sublineref** If the specified label exists, \sublineref gives its sub-line number.

```
\xsublineref 3019 \newcommand*{\sublineref}[1]{\l@dref@undefined{#1}\wrap@edcrossref{#1}{\l@dgetref@num{3}{#1}}}
```

```

3020 \newcommand*\xsublineref}[1]{\l@getref@num{3}{#1}}
3021

```

`\pstarteref` If the specified label exists, `\pstartref` gives its pstart number.

```

\pstartref 3022 \newcommand*\pstartref}[1]{\l@dref@undefined{#1}\wrap@edcrossref{#1}{\l@getref@num{4}{#1}}
3023 \newcommand*\xpstartref}[1]{\l@dgetref@num{4}{#1}}
3024

```

The next three macros are used by the referencing commands above, and do the job of extracting the right numbers from the label macro that contains the page, line, and sub-line number.

`\l@dref@undefined` The `\l@dref@undefined` macro is called when you refer to a label with the normal referencing macros. Its argument is a label, and it just checks that the label has been defined.

```

3025 \newcommand*\l@dref@undefined}[1]{%
3026   \expandafter\ifx\csname the@label#1\endcsname\relax
3027     \led@warn@RefUndefined{#1}%
3028   \fi}
3029

```

`\l@dgetref@num` Next, `\l@dgetref@num` fetches the number we want. It has two arguments: the first is simply a digit, specifying whether to fetch a page (1), line (2) or sub-line (3) number. (This switching is done by calling `\l@dlabel@parse`.) The second argument is the label-macro, which because of the `\@lab` macro above is defined to be a string of the type 123|456|789.

```

3030 \newcommand*\l@dgetref@num}[2]{%
3031   \expandafter
3032   \ifx\csname the@label#2\endcsname \relax
3033     000%
3034   \else
3035     \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter
3036     \l@dlabel@parse\csname the@label#2\endcsname|#1%
3037   \fi}
3038

```

`\l@dlabel@parse` Notice that we slipped another `|` delimiter into the penultimate line of `\l@dgetref@num`, to keep the ‘switch-number’ separate from the reference numbers. This `|` is used as another parameter delimiter by `\l@dlabel@parse`, which extracts the appropriate number from its first arguments. The `|`-delimited arguments consist of the expanded label-macro (three reference numbers), followed by the switch-number (1, 2, or 3) which defines which of the earlier three numbers to pick out. (It was earlier given as the first argument of `\l@dgetref@num`.)

```

3039 \newcommand*\l@dlabel@parse#{%
3040   \def\l@dlabel@parse#1|#2|#3|#4|#5{%
3041     \ifcase #5%
3042       \or #1%
3043       \or #2%

```

```

3044 \or #3%
3045 \or #4%
3046 \fi}

```

**\xxref** The `\xxref` command takes two arguments, both of which are labels, e.g., `\xxref{mouse}{elephant}`. It first does some checking to make sure that the labels do exist (if one doesn't, those numbers are set to zero). Then it calls `\linenum` and sets the beginning page, line, and sub-line numbers to those of the place where `\label{mouse}` was placed, and the ending numbers to those at `\label{elephant}`. The point of this is to be able to manufacture footnote line references to passages which can't be specified in the normal way as the first argument to `\critext` for one reason or another. Using `\xxref` in the second argument of `\critext` lets you set things up at least semi-automatically.

```

3047 \newcommand*\xxref[2]{%
3048   {%
3049     \expandafter\ifx\csname the@label#1\endcsname \relax%
3050       \expandafter\let\csname the@@label#1\endcsname\zz@@%
3051     \else%
3052       \expandafter\def\csname the@@label#1\endcsname{\l@getref@num{1}{#1}|\l@getref@num{2}{#1}|\l@getref@num{3}{#1}}
3053     \fi%
3054     \expandafter\ifx\csname the@label#2\endcsname \relax%
3055       \expandafter\let\csname the@@label#2\endcsname\zz@@%
3056     \else%
3057       \expandafter\def\csname the@@label#2\endcsname{\l@getref@num{1}{#2}|\l@getref@num{2}{#2}|\l@getref@num{3}{#2}}
3058     \fi%
3059     \linenum{\csname the@@label#1\endcsname|}%
3060     \csname the@@label#2\endcsname}}%
3061

```

**\edmakelabel** Sometimes the `\edlabel` command cannot be used to specify exactly the page and line desired; you can use the `\edmakelabel` macro make your own label. For example, if you say '`\edmakelabel{elephant}{10|25|0}`' you will have created a new label, and a later call to `\edpageref{elephant}` would print '10' and `\lineref{elephant}` would print '25'. The sub-line number here is zero. `\edmakelabel` takes a label, followed by a page and a line number(s) as arguments. LaTeX defines a `\makelabel` macro which is used in lists. I've changed the name to `\edmakelabel`.

```

3062 \newcommand*\edmakelabel[2]{\expandafter\xdef\csname the@label#1\endcsname{#2}}
3063

```

(If you are only going to refer to such a label using `\xxref`, then you can omit entries in the same way as with `\linenum` (see pp. 81 and 60), since `\xxref` makes a call to `\linenum` in order to do its work.)

## 30 Side notes

Regular `\marginpars` do not work inside numbered text — they don't produce any note but do put an extra unnumbered blank line into the text.

`\l@dold@xympar` Changing `\@xympar` a little at least ensures that `\marginpars` in numbered text  
`\@xympar` do not disturb the flow.

```

3064 \let\l@dold@xympar\@xympar
3065 \renewcommand{\@xympar}{%
3066   \ifnumberedpar@
3067     \led@warn@NoMarginpars
3068     \@esphack
3069   \else
3070     \l@dold@xympar
3071   \fi}
3072

```

We provide side notes as replacement for `\marginpar` in numbered text.

`\sidenote@margin` These are the sidenote equivalents to `\line@margin` and `\linenummargin` for  
`\sidenotemargin` specifying which margin. The default is the right margin (opposite to the default  
`\l@dgetsidenote@margin` for line numbers). `\l@dgetsidenote@margin` returns the number associated to  
side note margin:

**left** : 0

**right** : 1

**outer** : 2

**inner** : 3

```

3073 \newcount\sidenote@margin
3074 \newcommand*{\sidenotemargin}[1]{%
3075   \l@dgetsidenote@margin{#1}%
3076   \ifnum\@l@tempcntb>\m@ne
3077     \ifledRcol
3078       \global\sidenote@marginR=\@l@tempcntb
3079     \else
3080       \global\sidenote@margin=\@l@tempcntb
3081     \fi
3082   \fi}}
3083 \newcommand*{\l@dgetsidenote@margin}[1]{%
3084   \def\@tempa{#1}\def\@tempb{left}%
3085   \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
3086     \@l@tempcntb \z@
3087   \else
3088     \def\@tempb{right}%
3089     \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
3090       \@l@tempcntb \@ne
3091     \else
3092       \def\@tempb{outer}%
3093       \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
3094         \@l@tempcntb \tw@
3095       \else

```

```

3096      \def\@tempb{inner}%
3097      \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
3098        \@l@dttempcntb \thr@@
3099      \else
3100        \led@warn@BadSidenotemargin
3101        \@l@dttempcntb \m@ne
3102      \fi
3103    \fi
3104  \fi
3105 \fi}
3106 \sidenotemargin{right}
3107

```

\l@dlp@rbox We need two boxes to store sidenote texts.

```

\l@drp@rbox 3108 \newbox\l@dlp@rbox
3109 \newbox\l@drp@rbox
3110

```

\ledlsnotewidth These specify the width of the left/right boxes (initialised to \marginparwidth,  
\ledrsnotewidth their distance from the text (initialised to \linenumsep, and the fonts used.

```

\ledlsnotesep 3111 \newdimen\ledlsnotewidth \ledlsnotewidth=\marginparwidth
\ledrsnotesep 3112 \newdimen\ledrsnotewidth \ledrsnotewidth=\marginparwidth
\ledlsnotefontsetup 3113 \newdimen\ledlsnotesep \ledlsnotesep=\linenumsep
\ledrsnotefontsetup 3114 \newdimen\ledrsnotesep \ledrsnotesep=\linenumsep
3115 \newcommand*{\ledlsnotefontsetup}{\raggedleft\footnotesize}
3116 \newcommand*{\ledrsnotefontsetup}{\raggedright\footnotesize}
3117

```

\ledleftnote \ledleftnote, \ledrightnote, \ledinnernote, \ledouternote are the user  
\ledrightnote commands for left, right, inner and outer sidenotes. The two last one are just  
\ledinnernote alias for the two first one, depending of the page number. \ledsidenote{<text>  
\ledouterote is the command for a moveable sidenote.

```

\ledsidenote 3118 \newcommand*{\ledleftnote}[1]{\edtext{}{\l@dlsnote{#1}}}
3119 \newcommand*{\ledrightnote}[1]{\edtext{}{\l@drsnote{#1}}}
3120
3121 \newcommand*{\ledinnernote}[1]{%
3122   \ifodd\c@page% Do not use \page@num, because not yet calculated when command is called
3123     \ledleftnote{#1}%
3124   \else%
3125     \ledrightnote{#1}%
3126   \fi%
3127 }
3128
3129 \newcommand*{\ledouternote}[1]{%
3130   \ifodd\c@page% Do not use \page@num, because not yet calculated when command is called
3131     \ledrightnote{#1}%
3132   \else%
3133     \ledleftnote{#1}%
3134   \fi%

```

```

3135 }
3136
3137 \newcommand*{\ledsidenote}[1]{\edtext{}{\l@dcnote{#1}}}

```

`\l@dlsnote` . The ‘footnotes’ for left, right, and moveable sidenotes. The whole scheme is reminiscent of the critical footnotes code.

```

\l@dcnote 3138 \newif\ifrightrightnoteup
3139 \rightnoteuptrue
3140
3141 \newcommand*{\l@dlsnote}[1]{%
3142 \begingroup%
3143 \newcommand{\content}{#1}%
3144 \ifnumberedpar@
3145 \ifledRcol%
3146 \xright@appenditem{\noexpand\l@dlsnote{\csexpandonce{content}}}%
3147 \to\inserts@listR
3148 \global\advance\insert@countR \@ne%
3149 \else%
3150 \xright@appenditem{\noexpand\l@dlsnote{\csexpandonce{content}}}%
3151 \to\inserts@list
3152 \global\advance\insert@count \@ne%
3153 \fi
3154 \fi\ignorespaces\endgroup}
3155
3156 \newcommand*{\l@drsnote}[1]{%
3157 \begingroup%
3158 \newcommand{\content}{#1}%
3159 \ifnumberedpar@
3160 \ifledRcol%
3161 \xright@appenditem{\noexpand\l@drsnote{\csexpandonce{content}}}%
3162 \to\inserts@listR
3163 \global\advance\insert@countR \@ne%
3164 \else%
3165 \xright@appenditem{\noexpand\l@drsnote{\csexpandonce{content}}}%
3166 \to\inserts@list
3167 \global\advance\insert@count \@ne%
3168 \fi
3169 \fi\ignorespaces\endgroup}
3170
3171 \newcommand*{\l@dcnote}[1]{%
3172 \begingroup%
3173 \newcommand{\content}{#1}%
3174 \ifnumberedpar@
3175 \ifledRcol%
3176 \xright@appenditem{\noexpand\l@dcnote{\csexpandonce{content}}}%
3177 \to\inserts@listR
3178 \global\advance\insert@countR \@ne%
3179 \else%
3180 \xright@appenditem{\noexpand\l@dcnote{\csexpandonce{content}}}%
3181 \to\inserts@list

```

```

3182     \global\advance\insert@count \@ne%
3183     \fi
3184     \fi\ignorespaces\endgroup}
3185

```

`\vl@dlsnote` Put the left/right text into boxes, but just save the moveable text. `\l@dcsnotetext`, `\vl@drsnote` `\l@dcsnotetext@l` and `\l@dcsnotetext@r` are etoolbox lists which will store the content of side notes. We store the content in lists, because we need to loop later on them, in case many sidenote co-exist for the same line. That is there some special test to do, in order to:

- Store the content of `\ledsidenote` to `\l@dcsnotetext` in any cases.
- Store the content of `\rightsidenote` to:
  - `\l@dcsnotetext` if `\ledsidenote` is to be put on right.
  - `\l@dcsnotetext@r` if `\ledsidenote` is to be put on left.
- Store the content of `\leftsidenote` to:
  - `\l@dcsnotetext` if `\ledsidenote` is to be put on left.
  - `\l@dcsnotetext@l` if `\ledsidenote` is to be put on right.

```

3186 \newcommand*{\vl@dlsnote}[1]{%
3187   \ifledRcol@%
3188     \@l@tempcntb=\sidenote@marginR%
3189     \ifnum\@l@tempcntb>\@ne%
3190       \advance\@l@tempcntb by\page@numR%
3191     \fi%
3192   \else%
3193     \@l@tempcntb=\sidenote@margin%
3194     \ifnum\@l@tempcntb>\@ne%
3195       \advance\@l@tempcntb by\page@num%
3196     \fi%
3197   \fi%
3198   \ifodd\@l@tempcntb%
3199     \listgadd{\l@dcsnotetext@l}{#1}%
3200   \else%
3201     \listgadd{\l@dcsnotetext}{#1}%
3202   \fi
3203 }
3204 \newcommand*{\vl@drsnote}[1]{%
3205   \ifledRcol@%
3206     \@l@tempcntb=\sidenote@marginR%
3207     \ifnum\@l@tempcntb>\@ne%
3208       \advance\@l@tempcntb by\page@numR%
3209     \fi%
3210   \else%
3211     \@l@tempcntb=\sidenote@margin%
3212     \ifnum\@l@tempcntb>\@ne%

```

```

3213      \advance\@l@dtmptcntb by\page@num%
3214      \fi%
3215    \fi%
3216    \ifodd\@l@dtmptcntb%
3217      \listgadd{\l@dcsnotetext}{#1}%
3218    \else%
3219      \listgadd{\l@dcsnotetext@r}{#1}%
3220    \fi%
3221  }
3222 \newcommand*{\vl@dcsnote}[1]{\listgadd{\l@dcsnotetext}{#1}}
3223

```

`\setl@dlp@rbox` `\setl@dlprbox{<lednums>}{<tag>}{<text>}` puts `<text>` into the `\l@dlp@rbox` box.  
`\setl@drpr@rbox` And similarly for the right side box. It is these boxes that finally get displayed in the margins.

```

3224 \newcommand*{\setl@dlp@rbox}[1]{%
3225   {\parindent\z@\hspace=\ledlsnotewidth\ledlsnotefontsetup
3226     \global\setbox\l@dlp@rbox
3227     \ifleftnoteup
3228       =\vbox to\z@{\vss #1}%
3229     \else
3230       =\vbox to 0.70\baselineskip{\strut#1\vss}%
3231     \fi}}
3232 \newcommand*{\setl@drp@rbox}[1]{%
3233   {\parindent\z@\hspace=\ledrsnotewidth\ledrsnotefontsetup
3234     \global\setbox\l@drp@rbox
3235     \ifrighnoteup
3236       =\vbox to\z@{\vss #1}%
3237     \else
3238       =\vbox to 0.7\baselineskip{\strut#1\vss}%
3239     \fi}}
3240 \newif\ifleftnoteup
3241 \leftnoteuptrue

```

`\sidenotesep` This macro is used to separate sidenotes of the same line.

```

3242 \newcommand{\sidenotesep}{, }
3243 % \end{macrocode}
3244 % \end{macro}
3245 % \begin{macro}{\affixside@note}
3246 % This macro puts any moveable sidenote text into the left or right sidenote
3247 % box, depending on which margin it is meant to go in. It's a very much
3248 % stripped down version of \cs{affixlin@num}.
3249 %
3250 % Before do it, we concatenate all moveable sidenotes of the line, using \cs{sidenotesep}
3251 % It's the result that we put on the sidenote.
3252 % \changes{v1.4.1}{2012/11/16}{Remove spurious spaces.}
3253 % \begin{macrocode}
3254 \newcommand*{\affixside@note}{%
3255   \def\sidenotecontent@{}%

```

```

3256 \numgdef{\itemcount@}{0}%
3257 \def\do##1{%
3258     \ifnumequal{\itemcount@}{0}%
3259     {%
3260         \appto\sidenotecontent@{##1}}% Not print not separator before the 1st note
3261         {\appto\sidenotecontent@{\sidenotesep ##1}}%
3262     }%
3263     \numgdef{\itemcount@}{\itemcount@+1}%
3264 }%
3265 \dolistloop{\l@dcnotesnotetext}%
3266 \ifnumgreater{\itemcount@}{1}{\led@err@ManySidenotes}{}%

```

And we do the same for left and right notes (not movable).

```

3267 \gdef\@templ@d{%
3268 \gdef\@templ@n{\l@dcnotesnotetext\l@dcnotesnotetext@l\l@dcnotesnotetext@r}%
3269 \ifx\@templ@d\@templ@n \else%
3270     \if@twocolumn%
3271         \if@firstcolumn%
3272             \setl@dlp@rbox{##1}{\sidenotecontent@}%
3273         \else%
3274             \setl@drp@rbox{\sidenotecontent@}%
3275         \fi%
3276     \else%
3277         \l@dttempcntb=\sidenote@margin%
3278         \ifnum\l@dttempcntb>\@ne%
3279             \advance\l@dttempcntb by\page@num%
3280         \fi%
3281         \ifodd\l@dttempcntb%
3282             \setl@drp@rbox{\sidenotecontent@}%
3283             \gdef\sidenotecontent@{}%
3284             \numgdef{\itemcount@}{0}%
3285             \dolistloop{\l@dcnotesnotetext@l}%
3286             \ifnumgreater{\itemcount@}{1}{\led@err@ManyLeftnotes}{}%
3287             \setl@dlp@rbox{\sidenotecontent@}%
3288         \else%
3289             \setl@dlp@rbox{\sidenotecontent@}%
3290             \gdef\sidenotecontent@{}%
3291             \numgdef{\itemcount@}{0}%
3292             \dolistloop{\l@dcnotesnotetext@r}%
3293             \ifnumgreater{\itemcount@}{1}{\led@err@ManyRightnotes}{}%
3294             \setl@drp@rbox{\sidenotecontent@}%
3295         \fi%
3296     \fi%
3297 \fi%
3298 }

```

## 31 Minipages and such

We can put footnotes into minipages. The preparatory code has been set up earlier, all that remains is to ensure that it is available inside a minipage box. This requires some alteration to the kernel code, specifically the `\@iiiminipage` and `\endminipage` macros. We'll arrange this so that additional series can be easily added.

`\l@dfetbeginmini` These will be the hooks in `\@iiiminipage` and `\endminipage` They can be extended  
`\l@dfetendmini` to handle other things if necessary.

```

3299 \newcommand*{\l@dfetbeginmini}{\l@dedbeginmini\l@dfambeginmini}
3300 \newcommand*{\l@dfetendmini}{%
3301     \IfStrEq{critical-familiar}{\@mpfnpos}%
3302     {\l@dedendmini\l@dfamendmini}%
3303     {%
3304         \IfStrEq{familiar-critical}{\@mpfnpos}%
3305         {\l@dfamendmini\l@dedendmini}%
3306         {\l@dedendmini\l@dfamendmini}%
3307     }%
3308 }%
```

`\l@dedbeginmini` These handle the initiation and closure of critical footnotes in a minipage envi-  
`\l@dedendmini` ronment.

```

3309 \newcommand*{\l@dedbeginmini}{%
3310     \def\do##1{\csletcs{v##1footnote}{mpv##1footnote}}%
3311     \dolistloop{\@series}%
3312 }
3313 \newcommand*{\l@dedendmini}{%
3314     \ifl@dpairing
3315         \ifledRcol
3316             \flush@notesR
3317         \else
3318             \flush@notes
3319         \fi
3320     \fi
3321     \def\do##1{
3322         \ifvoid\csuse{mp##1footins}\else%
3323             \ifl@dpairing\ifparledgroup%
3324                 \ifledRcol%
3325                     \dimgdef{\parledgroup@beforenotesR}{\parledgroup@beforenotesR+\skip\@nameuse{mp}}
3326                 \else%
3327                     \dimgdef{\parledgroup@beforenotesL}{\parledgroup@beforenotesL+\skip\@nameuse{mp}}
3328                 \fi%
3329             \fi\fi%
3330         \csuse{mp##1footgroup}{##1}%
3331     \fi}%
3332     \dolistloop{\@series}%
3333 }
3334
```

`\l@dfambeginmini` These handle the initiation and closure of familiar footnotes in a minipage environment.  
`\l@dfamendmini`

```

3335 \newcommand*{\l@dfambeginmini}{%
3336   \def\do##1{\csletcs{vfootnote##1}{mpvfootnote##1}}%
3337   \dolistloop{\@series}}
3338 \newcommand*{\l@dfamendmini}{%
3339   \def\do##1{\ifvoid\csuse{mpfootins##1}\else\csuse{mpfootgroup##1}{##1}\fi}%
3340   \dolistloop{\@series}}
```

`\@iiiminipage` This is our extended form of the kernel `\@iiiminipage` defined in `ltboxes.dtx`.

```

3341 \def\@iiiminipage#1#2[#3]#4{%
3342   \leavevmode
3343   \pboxswfalse
3344   \setlength\@tempdima{#4}%
3345   \def\@mpargs{{#1}{#2}[#3]{#4}}%
3346   \setbox\@tempboxa\vbox\bgroup
3347     \color@begingroup
3348     \hsize\@tempdima
3349     \textwidth\hsize \columnwidth\hsize
3350     \@parboxrestore
3351     \def\@mpfn{mpfootnote}\def\thempfn{\thempfootnote}\c@mpfootnote\z@
3352     \let\@footnotetext\@mpfootnotetext
```

The next line is our addition to the original.

```

3353     \l@dfeetbeginmini%          added
3354     \let\@listdepth\@mplistdepth \@mplistdepth\z@
3355     \@minipagerestore
3356     \@setminipage}
3357
```

`\endminipage` This is our extended form of the kernel `\endminipage` defined in `ltboxes.dtx`.

```

3358 \def\endminipage{%
3359   \par
3360   \unskip
3361   \ifvoid\@mpfootins\else
3362     \l@dunboxmpfoot
3363   \fi
```

The next line is our addition to the original.

```

3364   \l@dfeetendmini%          added
3365   \@minipagefalse
3366   \color@endgroup
3367   \egroup
3368   \expandafter\@iiiparbox\@mpargs{\unvbox\@tempboxa}}
3369
```

`\l@dunboxmpfoot`

```

3370 \newcommand*{\l@dunboxmpfoot}{%
3371   \vskip\skip\@mpfootins
```

```

3372 \normalcolor
3373 \footnoterule
3374 \ifparledgroup
3375 \ifl@dpairing
3376 \ifledRcol
3377 \dimgdef{\parledgroup@beforenotesR}{\parledgroup@beforenotesR+\skip\@mpfootins}
3378 \else
3379 \dimgdef{\parledgroup@beforenotesL}{\parledgroup@beforenotesL+\skip\@mpfootins}
3380 \fi
3381 \fi
3382 \fi
3383 \unvbox\@mpfootins}
3384

```

**ledgroup** This environment puts footnotes at the end, even if that happens to be in the middle of a page, or crossing a page boundary. It is a sort of unboxed, fixed width minipage.

```

3385 \newif\if@ledgroup
3386 \newenvironment{ledgroup}{%
3387 \resetprevpage@num\@ledgrouptrue\def\@mpfn{mpfootnote}\def\thempfn{\thempfootnote}\c@mpfn=0
3388 \let\@footnotetext\@mpfootnotetext
3389 \l@dfetbeginmini%
3390 }{%
3391 \par
3392 \unskip
3393 \ifvoid\@mpfootins\else
3394 \l@dunboxmpfoot
3395 \fi
3396 \l@dfetendmini%
3397 \@ledgroupfalse%
3398 }
3399

```

**ledgroupsize** `\begin{ledgroupsize}[\langle pos \rangle]{\langle width \rangle}`

This environment puts footnotes at the end, even if that happens to be in the middle of a page, or crossing a page boundary. It is a sort of unboxed, variable  $\langle width \rangle$  minipage. The optional  $\langle pos \rangle$  controls the sideways position of numbered text.

```

3400 \newenvironment{ledgroupsize}[2][1]{%

```

Set the various text measures.

```

3401 \hsize #2\relax
3402 %% \textwidth #2\relax
3403 %% \columnwidth #2\relax

```

Initialize fills for centering.

```

3404 \let\ledllfill\hfil
3405 \let\ledrlfill\hfil
3406 \def\@tempa{#1}\def\@tempb{1}%

```

Left adjusted numbered lines

```
3407 \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
3408 \let\ledllfill\relax
3409 \else
3410 \def\@tempb{r}%
3411 \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
```

Right adjusted numbered lines

```
3412 \let\ledrlfill\relax
3413 \fi
3414 \fi
```

Set up the footnoting.

```
3415 \@ledgrouptrue%
3416 \def\@mpfn{mpfootnote}\def\thempfn{\thempfootnote}\c@mpfootnote\z@
3417 \let\@footnotetext\@mpfootnotetext
3418 \l@dfeetbeginmini%
3419 }{%
3420 \par
3421 \unskip
3422 \ifvoid\@mpfootins\else
3423 \l@dunboxmpfoot
3424 \fi
3425 \l@dfeetendmini%
3426 \@ledgroupfalse%
3427 }
3428
```

`\ifledgroupnotesL@` These boolean tests check if we are in the notes of a ledgroup. If we are, we don't  
`\ifledgroupnotesR@` number the lines.

```
3429 \newif\ifledgroupnotesL@
3430 \newif\ifledgroupnotesR@
```

## 32 Indexing

Here's some code for indexing using page & line numbers.

`\ifeledmac@check@imakeidx@` First, ensure that imakeidx is loaded *before* eledmac.

```
3431 \newif\ifeledmac@after@imakeidx@
3432 \@ifpackageloaded{imakeidx}{\electedmac@after@imakeidx@true}{}
3433 \AtBeginDocument{%
3434 \ifeledmac@after@imakeidx@%
3435 \@ifpackageloaded{imakeidx}{\led@error@ImakeidxAfterEledmac}{}%
3436 \fi
3437 }
```

`\pagelinesep` In order to get a correct line number we have to use the label/ref mechanism.

`\edindexlab` These macros are for that.

```
\c@labidx 3438 \newcommand{\pagelinesep}{-}
```

```

3439 \newcommand{\edindexlab}{\&\&}
3440 \newcounter{labidx}
3441 \setcounter{labidx}{0}
3442

\doedindexlabel This macro sets an \edlabel.
3443 \newcommand{\doedindexlabel}{\stepcounter{labidx}%
3444   \edlabel{\edindexlab\thelabidx}}
3445

\thepageline This macro makes up the page/line number combo from the label/ref.
3446 \newcommand{\thepageline}{%
3447   \thepage\pagelinesep\xlineref{\edindexlab\thelabidx}}

\thestartpageline These macros make up the page/line start/end number when the \edindex com-
\theendpageline mand is called in critical notes.
3448 \newcommand{\thestartpageline}{\l@dparsedstartpage\pagelinesep\l@dparsedstartline}
3449 \newcommand{\theendpageline}{\l@dparsedendpage\pagelinesep\l@dparsedendline}

\if@edindex@fornote@true This boolean test is switching at the beginning of each critical note, to allow
indexing in this note.
3450 \newif\if@edindex@fornote@

\prepare@edindex@fornote This macro is called at the beginning of each critical note. It switches some
parameters, to allow indexing in this note, with reference to page and line number.
3451 \newcommand{\prepare@edindex@fornote}[1]{%
3452   \l@dp@rsefootspec#1}%
3453   \@edindex@fornote@true
3454 }

\get@index@command This macro is used to analyse if a text to be indexed has a command after a |.
3455 \def\get@index@command#1|#2+{%
3456   \gdef\@index@txt{#1}%
3457   \gdef\@index@command{#2}%
3458   \xdef\@index@parenthesis{}%
3459   \IfBeginWith{\@index@command}{(}{%
3460     \StrGobbleLeft{\@index@command}{1}[\@index@command]%
3461     \global\let\@index@command\@index@command%
3462     \xdef\@index@parenthesis{(%
3463   }{%
3464   \IfBeginWith{\@index@command}{)}{%
3465     \StrGobbleLeft{\@index@command}{1}[\@index@command]%
3466     \global\let\@index@command\@index@command%
3467     \xdef\@index@parenthesis{)}%
3468   }{%
3469   }

\ledinnote These macros are used to specify that an index reference points to a note.
\ledinnotehyperpage 3470 \newcommand{\ledinnote}[2]{\csuse{#1}{#2\emph{n}}}%
3471 \newcommand{\ledinnotehyperpage}[2]{\csuse{#1}{\hyperpage{#2}\emph{n}}}%

```

The memoir class provides more flexible indexing than the standard classes. We need different code if the memoir class is being used.

```
3472 \ifclassloaded{memoir}{%
```

```
    memoir is being used.
```

```
\makeindex  Need to add the definition of \edindex to \makeindex, and initialise \edindex
\edindex    to do nothing. In this case \edindex has an optional argument. We use the hook
            provided in memoir v1.61.
```

```
3473 \g@addto@macro{\makememindexhook}{%
3474     \def\edindex{\@bsphack%
3475         \ifnextchar [{\l@d@index}{\l@d@index[\jobname]}}
3476     \newcommand{\edindex}[2][\jobname]{\@bsphack\esphack}
```

```
\l@d@index  \l@d@index[file] is the first stage of \edindex, handling the idx file. This
            a virtually a verbatim copy of memoir's \@index, the change being calling
            \l@dwrindexm@m instead of \@wrindexm@m.
```

```
3477 \def\l@d@index[#1]{%
3478     \@ifundefined{#1idxfile}%
3479     {\ifreportnoidxfile
3480         \led@warn@NoIndexFile{#1}%
3481         \fi
3482         \begingroup
3483         \@sanitize
3484         \@nowrindex}%
3485     {\def\@idxfile{#1}%
3486         \doedindexlabel
3487         \begingroup
3488         \@sanitize
3489         \l@d@wrindexm@m}}
```

```
\l@d@wrindexm@m  \l@d@wrindexm@m{item} writes the idx file name and the indexed item to the
\l@d@wrindexhyp  aux file. These are almost verbatim copies of memoir's \@wrindexm@m and
                \@wrindexhyp.
```

```
3490 \newcommand{\l@d@wrindexm@m}[1]{\l@d@wrindexhyp#1||\}
3491 \def\l@d@wrindexhyp#1|#2|#3\{
3492     \ifshowindexmark\@showidx{#1}\fi
3493     \ifx\#2\%
3494         \if@edindex@fornote@
3495             \protected@write\@auxout{%
3496                 {\string\@wrindexm@m{\@idxfile}{#1}(\ledinnotehyperpage){\thestartpageline}}%
3497                 \protected@write\@auxout{%
3498                     {\string\@wrindexm@m{\@idxfile}{#1}\ledinnotehyperpage){\theendpageline}}%
3499                 \else%
3500                     \protected@write\@auxout{%
3501                         {\string\@wrindexm@m{\@idxfile}{#1}hyperpage){\thepageline}}%
3502                     \fi%
3503     \else
3504         \def\Hy@temp@A{#2}%
```

```

3505 \ifx\Hy@temp@A\HyInd@ParenLeft
3506 \if@edindex@fornote@%
3507 \protected@write\@auxout{%
3508   {\string\@wrindexm@{\@idxfile}{#1|(\ledinnotehyperpage{#2}){\thestartpageline}}}%
3509 \protected@write\@auxout{%
3510   {\string\@wrindexm@{\@idxfile}{#1|)\ledinnotehyperpage{#2}){\theendpageline}}}%
3511 \else%
3512 \protected@write\@auxout{%
3513   {\string\@wrindexm@{\@idxfile}{#1|#2hyperpage}{\thepageline}}}%
3514 \fi%
3515 \else
3516 \if@edindex@fornote@%
3517 \protected@write\@auxout{%
3518   {\string\@wrindexm@{\@idxfile}{#1|(\ledinnote{#2}){\thestartpageline}}}%
3519 \protected@write\@auxout{%
3520   {\string\@wrindexm@{\@idxfile}{#1|)\ledinnote{#2}){\theendpageline}}}%
3521 \else%
3522 \protected@write\@auxout{%
3523   {\string\@wrindexm@{\@idxfile}{#1|#2}{\thepageline}}}%
3524 \fi%
3525 \fi
3526 \fi
3527 \endgroup
3528 \@esphack}

```

That finishes the memoir-specific code.

```
3529 }{%
```

memoir is not being used, which makes life somewhat simpler.

`\makeindex` Need to add the definition of `\edindex` to `\makeindex`, and initialise `\edindex` to  
`\edindex` do nothing.

```

3530 \pretocmd{\makeindex}{%
3531   \def\edindex{\@bsphack
3532     \doedindexlabel
3533     \begingroup
3534     \@sanitize
3535     \@wredindex}}{}{}
3536 \newcommand{\edindex}[1]{\@bsphack\@esphack}

```

`\@wredindex` Write the index information to the idx file.

```

3537 \newcommandx{\@wredindex}[2][1=\expandonce\jobname,usedefault]{%#1 = the index name, #2
3538   \global\let\old@Rlineflag\Rlineflag%
3539   \gdef\Rlineflag{%
3540     \ifl@makeidx%
3541       \if@edindex@fornote@%
3542         \IfSubStr[1]{#2}{|}{\get@index@command#2+}{\get@index@command#2|+}%
3543         \expandafter\imki@wrindexentry{#1}{\@index@txt|(\ledinnote{\@index@command}){\thestartpageline}}%
3544         \expandafter\imki@wrindexentry{#1}{\@index@txt|)\ledinnote{\@index@command}){\theendpageline}}%
3545       \else%

```

```

3546      \get@edindex@hyperref{#2}%
3547      \imki@wrindexentry{#1}{\@index@txt\@edindex@hyperref}{\thepageline}%
3548      \fi%
3549  \else%
3550      \if@edindex@fornote%
3551          \IfSubStr[1]{#2}{|}{\get@index@command#2+}{\get@index@command#2|+}%
3552          \expandafter\protected@write\@indexfile{%
3553              {\string\indexentry{\@index@txt|(ledinnote{\@index@command})}{\thestartpageline}
3554              }%
3555          \expandafter\protected@write\@indexfile{%
3556              {\string\indexentry{\@index@txt|)ledinnote{\@index@command}}{\theendpageline}
3557              }%
3558      \else%
3559          \protected@write\@indexfile{%
3560              {\string\indexentry{#2}{\thepageline}
3561              }%
3562      \fi%
3563      \fi%
3564  \endgroup
3565  \global\let\Rlineflag\old\Rlineflag%
3566  \@esphack}

```

That finishes the non-memoir index code.

```

3567 }
3568

```

## 32.1 Hyperref compatibility

`\hyperlinkformat` `\hyperlinkformat` command is to be used to have both a internal hyperlink and a format, when indexing.

```

3569 \newcommand{\hyperlinkformat}[3]{%
3570     \ifstrempy{#1}%
3571         {\hyperlink{#2}{#3}}%
3572         {\csuse{#1}{\hyperlink{#2}{#3}}}%
3573 }%

```

`\hyperlinkR` `\hyperlinkR` command is to be used to have both a internal hyperlink `\ledRflag`, when indexing.

```

3574 \newcommand{\hyperlinkR}[2]{%
3575     \hyperlink{#1}{#2\Rlineflag}%
3576 }%
3577

```

`\hyperlinkformatR` `\hyperlinkformatR` command is to be used to have both a internal hyperlink, a format and a `\Rlineflag`, when indexing.

```

3578 \newcommand{\hyperlinkformatR}[3]{%
3579     \hyperlinkformat{#1}{#2}{#3\Rlineflag}%
3580 }%
3581

```

`\get@edindex@hyperref` `\get@edindex@hyperref` is to be used to define the `\@edindex@hyperref` macro, which, in index, links to the point where the index was called (with `hyperref`).

```

3582 \newcommand{\get@edindex@hyperref}[1]{%
3583   \ifcsdef{hyperlink}%
      We have to disable spaces to work with a xstring bug
3584   {%
3585     \edef\temp@{%
3586       \catcode'\ =9 %space need for catcode
3587       #1%
3588       \catcode'\ =10 % space need for catcode
3589     }%
3590     \IfSubStr{\temp@}{|}%
3591       {\get@index@command#1+%
3592        \ifledRcol%
3593          \gdef\@edindex@hyperref{|\@index@parenthesis %space kept
3594            hyperlinkformat{\@index@command}%
3595            {\edindexlab\thelabidx}}%
3596        \else%
3597          \gdef\@edindex@hyperref{|\@index@parenthesis %space kept
3598            hyperlinkformat{\@index@command}%
3599            {\edindexlab\thelabidx}}%
3600        \fi%
3601      }%
3602      {\get@index@command#1|+
3603       \ifledRcol%
3604         \gdef\@edindex@hyperref{|\hyperlinkR{\edindexlab\thelabidx}}%
3605       \else%
3606         \gdef\@edindex@hyperref{|\hyperlink{\edindexlab\thelabidx}}%
3607       \fi%
3608     }%
3609   }%
3610   {%
3611     \gdef\@index@txt{#1}%
3612     \gdef\@edindex@hyperref{}}%
3613 }
```

`\l@d@@wrindexhyp` If the `hyperref` package is not loaded, it doesn't make sense to clutter up the index with hyperreffing things.

```

3614 \AtBeginDocument{\ifpackageloaded{hyperref}{}%
3615   \def\l@d@@wrindexhyp#1||\{%
3616     \ifshowindexmark\@showidx{#1}\fi
3617     \IfSubStr[1]{#1}{|}{\get@index@command#1+}{\get@index@command#1|+}%
3618     \if@edindex@fornote%
3619       \protected@write\@auxout{%
3620         {\string\@wrindexm{\@idxfile}{\@index@txt}(\ledinnote{\@index@command})}{\thelabidx}%
3621       \protected@write\@auxout{%
3622         {\string\@wrindexm{\@idxfile}{\@index@txt})ledinnote{\@index@command}}{\thelabidx}%
3623       \else%
3624         \protected@write\@auxout{%

```

```

3625         {\string\@wrindexm{\@idxfile}{#1}{\thepage}}}%
3626         \fi%
3627     \endgroup
3628     \@esphack}}
3629
3630

```

### 33 Macro as environment

The following is borrowed, and renamed, from the `amsmath` package. See also the CTT thread ‘`eq and amstex`’, 1995/08/31, started by Keith Reckdahl and ended definitively by David M. Jones.

Several of the `[math]` macros scan their body twice. This means we must collect all text in the body of an environment form before calling the macro.

`\@emptytoks` This is actually defined in the `amsgen` package.

```

3631 \newtoks\@emptytoks
3632

```

The rest is from `amsmath`.

`\l@denvbody` A token register to contain the body.

```

3633 \newtoks\l@denvbody
3634

```

`\addtol@denvbody` `\addtol@denvbody{arg}` adds `arg` to the token register `\l@denvbody`.

```

3635 \newcommand{\addtol@denvbody}[1]{%
3636   \global\l@denvbody\expandafter{\the\l@denvbody#1}}
3637

```

`\l@dcollect@body` The macro `\l@dcollect@body` starts the scan for the `\end{...}` command of the current environment. It takes a macro name as argument. This macro is supposed to take the whole body of the environment as its argument. For example, given `cenv#1{...}` as a macro that processes `#1`, then the environment form, `\begin{env}` would call `\l@dcollect@body\cenv`.

```

3638 \newcommand{\l@dcollect@body}[1]{%
3639   \l@denvbody{\expandafter#1\expandafter{\the\l@denvbody}}%
3640   \edef\processl@denvbody{\the\l@denvbody\noexpand\end{\@currenvir}}%
3641   \l@denvbody\@emptytoks \def\l@dbegin@stack{b}%
3642   \begingroup
3643     \expandafter\let\csname\@currenvir\endcsname\l@dcollect@@body
3644     \edef\processl@denvbody{\expandafter\noexpand\csname\@currenvir\endcsname}%
3645     \processl@denvbody%
3646   }%
3647

```

`\l@dpush@begins` When adding a piece of the current environment's contents to `\l@denvbody`, we scan it to check for additional `\begin` tokens, and add a 'b' to the stack for any that we find.

```
3648 \def\l@dpush@begins#1\begin#2{%
3649   \ifx\end#2\else b\expandafter\l@dpush@begins\fi}
3650
```

`\l@dcollect@@body` `\l@dcollect@@body` takes two arguments: the first will consist of all text up to the next `\end` command, and the second will be the `\end` command's argument. If there are any extra `\begin` commands in the body text, a marker is pushed onto a stack by the `\l@dpush@begins` function. Empty state for this stack means we have reached the `\end` that matches our original `\begin`. Otherwise we need to include the `\end` and its argument in the material we are adding to the environment body accumulator.

```
3651 \def\l@dcollect@@body#1\end#2{%
3652   \edef\l@dbegin@stack{\l@dpush@begins#1\begin\end
3653     \expandafter\@gobble\l@dbegin@stack}%
3654   \ifx\@empty\l@dbegin@stack
3655     \endgroup
3656     \@checkend{#2}%
3657     \addtol@denvbody{#1}%
3658   \else
3659     \addtol@denvbody{#1\end{#2}}%
3660   \fi
3661   \processl@denvbody % A little tricky! Note the grouping
3662 }
3663
```

There was a question on CTT about how to use `\collect@body` for a macro taking an argument. The following is part of that thread.

From: Heiko Oberdiek <oberdiek@uni-freiburg.de>  
 Newsgroups: comp.text.tex  
 Subject: Re: Using `\collect@body` with commands that take >1 argument  
 Date: Fri, 08 Aug 2003 09:03:20 +0200

eed132@psu.edu (Evan) wrote:  
 > I'm trying to make a new Latex environment that acts like the  
 > `\colorbox` command that is part of the color package. I looked through  
 > the FAQ and ran across this bit about using the `\collect@body` command  
 > that is part of AMSLaTeX:  
 > <http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/texfaq2html?label=cmdasenv>  
 >  
 > It almost works. If I do something like the following:  
 > `\newcommand{\redbox}[1]{\colorbox{red}{#1}}`  
 >  
 > `\makeatletter`  
 > `\newenvironment{redbox}{\collect@body \redbox}{}`

You will get an error message: Command `\redbox` already defined.  
Thus you must rename either the command `\redbox` or the environment name.

```
> \begin{coloredbox}{blue}
>   Yadda yadda yadda... this is on a blue background...
> \end{coloredbox}
> and can't figure out how to make the \collect@body take this.

> \collect@body \colorbox{red}
> \collect@body {\colorbox{red}}
```

The argument of `\collect@body` has to be one token exactly.

```
\documentclass{article}
\usepackage{color}
\usepackage{amsmath}

\newcommand{\redbox}[1]{\colorbox{red}{#1}}
\makeatletter
\newenvironment{coloredbox}[1]{%
  \def\next@{\colorbox{#1}}%
  \collect@body\next@
}{%

% ignore spaces at begin and end of environment
\newenvironment{coloredboxII}[1]{%
  \def\next@{\mycoloredbox{#1}}%
  \collect@body\next@
}{%
\newcommand{\mycoloredbox}[2]{%
  \colorbox{#1}{\ignorespaces#2\unskip}%
}

% support of optional color model argument
\newcommand\coloredboxIII\endcsname{}
\def\coloredboxIII#1#2{%
  \@coloredboxIII{#1}%
}
\def\@coloredboxIII#1#2{%
  \def\next@{\mycoloredboxIII{#1}{#2}}%
  \collect@body\next@
}
\newcommand{\mycoloredboxIII}[3]{%
  \colorbox{#1}{#2}{\ignorespaces#3\unskip}%
}

\makeatother

\begin{document}
```

```

Black text before
\begin{coloredbox}{blue}
  Hello World
\end{coloredbox}
Black text after

Black text before
\begin{coloredboxII}{blue}
  Hello World
\end{coloredboxII}
Black text after

Black text before
\begin{coloredboxIII}[rgb]{0,0,1}
  Hello World
\end{coloredboxIII}
Black text after

\end{document}

Yours sincerely
Heiko <oberdiek@uni-freiburg.de>

```

## 34 Verse

This is principally Wayne Sullivan's code and commentary from EDSTANZA [Sul92].

The macro `\hangingsymbol` is used to insert a symbol on each hanging of verses. For example, in french typographie the symbol is '['. We obtain it by the next code:

```
\renewcommand{\hangingsymbol}{[,]}
```

The `\ifinstanza` boolean is used to be sure that we are in a stanza part.

```

\hangingsymbol
\ifinstanza 3664 \newcommand*{\hangingsymbol}{}
3665 \newif\ifinstanza
3666 \instanzafalse

\insertthangingsymbol The boolean \ifinsertthangingsymbol is set to TRUE when \@lock is greater
\ifinsertthangingsymbol than 1, i.e. when we are not in the first line of a verse. The switch of
\ifinsertthangingsymbol \ifinsertthangingsymbol is made in \do@line before the printing of line but
after the line number calculation.

3667 \newif\ifinsertthangingsymbol
3668 \newcommand{\insertthangingsymbol}{%
3669 \ifinsertthangingsymbol%
3670 \ifinstanza%
3671 \hangingsymbol%

```

```

3672   \fi%
3673 \fi%
3674 }

```

`\ampersand` Within a stanza the `\&` macro is going to be usurped. We need an alias in case an `&` needs to be typeset in a stanza. Define it rather than letting it in case some other package has already defined it.

```

3675 \newcommand*{\ampersand}{\char'\&}
3676

```

`\stanza@count` Before we can define the main macros we need to save and reset some category codes. To save the current values we use `\next` and `\body` from the `\loop` macro.

```

3677 \chardef\body=\catcode'\@
3678 \catcode'\@=11
3679 \chardef\next=\catcode'\&
3680 \catcode'\&=\active
3681

```

A count register is allocated for counting lines in a stanza; also allocated is a dimension register which is used to specify the base value for line indentation; all stanza indentations are multiples of this value. The default value of `\stanzaindentbase` is 20pt.

```

3682 \newcount\stanza@count
3683 \newlength{\stanzaindentbase}
3684 \setlength{\stanzaindentbase}{20pt}
3685

```

`\strip@szacnt` The indentations of stanza lines are non-negative integer multiples of the unit called `\stanzaindentbase`. To make it easier for the user to specify these numbers, some list macros are defined. These take numerical values in a list separated by commas and assign the values to special control sequences using `\mathchardef`. Though this does limit the range from 0 to 32767, it should suffice for most applications, including *penalties*, which will be discussed below.

```

3686 \def\strip@szacnt#1,#2|{\def\@tempb{#1}\def\@tempa{#2|}}
3687 \newcommand*{\setstanzavalues}[2]{\def\@tempa{#2,,}|}%
3688   \stanza@count\z@
3689   \def\next{\expandafter\strip@szacnt\@tempa
3690     \ifx\@tempb\empty\let\next\relax\else
3691     \expandafter\mathchardef\csname #1@\number\stanza@count
3692     \@endcsname\@tempb\relax
3693     \advance\stanza@count\@ne\fi\next}%
3694   \next}
3695

```

`\setstanzaindent` In the original `\setstanzavalues{sza}{...}` had to be called to set the indents, and similarly `\setstanzavalues{szp}{...}` to set the penalties. These two macros are a convenience to give the user one less thing to worry about (misspelling the first argument). Since version 0.13, the `stanzaindentrepetition` counter can be used when the indentation is repeated every *n* verses. The

`\managestanza@modulo` is a command which modifies the counter `stanza@modulo`. The command adds 1 to `stanza@modulo`, but if `stanza@modulo` is equal to the `stanzaindentrepetition` counter, the command restarts it.

```

3696 \newcommand*{\setstanzaindent}[1]{\setstanzavalues{sza}{#1}}
3697 \newcommand*{\setstanzapenalties}[1]{\setstanzavalues{szp}{#1}}
3698
3699 \newcounter{stanzaindentrepetition}
3700 \newcount\stanza@modulo
3701
3702 \newcommand*{\managestanza@modulo}[0]{
3703     \advance\stanza@modulo\@ne
3704     \ifnum\stanza@modulo>\value{stanzaindentrepetition}
3705         \stanza@modulo\@ne
3706     \fi
3707 }
```

`\stanza@line` Now we arrive at the main works. `\stanza@line` sets the indentation for the line and starts a numbered paragraph—each line is treated as a paragraph.  
`\stanza@hang` line and starts a numbered paragraph—each line is treated as a paragraph.  
`\sza@penalty` `\stanza@hang` sets the hanging indentation to be used if the stanza line requires more than one print line. If it is known that each stanza line will fit on one print line, it is advisable to set the hanging indentation to zero. `\sza@penalty` places the specified penalty following each stanza line. By default, this facility is turned off so that no penalty is included. However, the user may initiate these penalties to indicate good and bad places in the stanza for page breaking.

```

3708 \newcommandx{\stanza@line}[1][1]{
3709     \ifnum\value{stanzaindentrepetition}=0
3710         \parindent=\csname sza@\number\stanza@count
3711             @\endcsname\stanzaindentbase
3712     \else
3713         \parindent=\csname sza@\number\stanza@modulo
3714             @\endcsname\stanzaindentbase
3715         \managestanza@modulo
3716     \fi
3717     \pstart[#1]\stanza@hang\ignorespaces}
3718 \xdef\stanza@hang{\noexpand\leavevmode\noexpand\startlock
3719     \hangindent\expandafter
3720     \noexpand\csname sza@0@\endcsname\stanzaindentbase
3721     \hangafter\@ne}
3722 \def\sza@penalty{\count@\csname szp@\number\stanza@count @\endcsname
3723     \ifnum\count@>\@M\advance\count@-\@M\penalty-\else
3724     \penalty\fi\count@}
```

`\startstanzahook` Now we have the components of the `\stanza` macro, which appears at the start  
`\endstanzaextra` of a group of lines. This macro initializes the count and checks to see if hanging  
`\@startstanza` indentation and penalties are to be included. Hanging indentation suspends the  
`\stanza` line count, so that the enumeration is by verse line rather than by print line. If  
`\@stopstanza` the print line count is desired, invoke `\let\startlock=\relax` and do the same  
`\newverse` for `\endlock`. Here and above we have used `\xdef` to make the stored macros  
`\falseverse`

take up a bit less space, but it also makes them more obscure to the reader. Lines of the stanza are delimited by ampersands &. The last line of the stanza must end with \&. For convenience the macro `\endstanzaextra` is included. The user may use this to add vertical space or penalties between stanzas.

As a further convenience, the macro `\startstanzahook` is called at the beginning of a stanza. This can be defined to do something useful.

```

3725 \let\startstanzahook\relax
3726 \let\endstanzaextra\relax
3727 \xdef\@startstanza[#1]{%
3728   \noexpand\instanzatrue\expandafter
3729   \begingroup\startstanzahook%
3730   \catcode'\noexpand\&\active%
3731   \global\stanza@count\@ne\stanza@modulo\@ne
3732   \noexpand\ifnum\expandafter\noexpand
3733   \csname sza@0@\endcsname=\z@\let\noexpand\stanza@hang\relax
3734   \let\noexpand\endlock\relax\noexpand\else\interlinepenalty
3735   \@M\rightskip\z@ plus 1fil\relax\noexpand\fi\noexpand\ifnum
3736   \expandafter\noexpand\csname szp@0@\endcsname=\z@
3737   \let\noexpand\sza@penalty\relax\noexpand\fi%
3738   \def\noexpand\falseverse{%
3739     \noexpand\led@war@FalseverseDeprecated%
3740     \global\advance\stanza@modulo-\@ne%
3741     \global\advance\stanza@count-\@ne%
3742     \relax\noexpand&\leavevmode\skipnumbering}
3743   \def\noexpand&{%
3744     \noexpand\newverse [] []}%
3745   \def\noexpand\&\{\noexpand\@stopstanza}%
3746   \noexpand\stanza@line[#1]}
3747
3748 \newcommandx{\stanza}[1][1,usedefault]{\@startstanza[#1]}
3749
3750 \newcommandx{\@stopstanza}[1][1,usedefault]{%
3751   \endlock%
3752   \pend[#1]%
3753   \endgroup%
3754   \instanzafalse%
3755   \endstanzaextra%
3756 }
3757
3758 \newcommandx*\newverse[2][1,2,usedefault]{%
3759   \endlock\pend[#1]\sza@penalty\global%
3760   \advance\stanza@count\@ne\stanza@line[#2]%
3761   }
3762

```

`\flagstanza` Use `\flagstanza[len]{text}` at the start of a line to put *text* a distance *len* before the start of the line. The default for *len* is `\stanzaindentbase`.

```

3763 \newcommand*\flagstanza[2][\stanzaindentbase]{%
3764   \hskip -#1\llap{#2}\hskip #1\ignorespaces}

```

3765

The ampersand & is used to mark the end of each stanza line, except the last, which is marked with \&. This means that \halign may not be used directly within a stanza line. This does not affect macros involving alignments defined outside \stanza \&. Since these macros usurp the control sequence \&, the replacement \ampersand is defined to be used if this symbol is needed in a stanza. Also we reset the modified category codes and initialize the penalty default.

```
3766 \catcode'\&=\next
3767 \catcode'\@=\body
3768 %% \let\ampersand=\&
3769 \setstanzavalues{szp}{0}
3770
```

## 35 Arrays and tables

This is based on the work by Herbert Breger in developing `tabmac.tex`.

```
%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
% This is file tabmac.tex 1.0.
% You find here macros for tabular structures compatible with
% Edmac (authored by Lavagnino/Wujastyk). The use of the macros is
% explained in German language in file tabanlei.dvi. The macros were
% developed for Edmac 2.3, but this file has been adjusted to Edmac 3.16.
%
% ATTENTION: This file uses some Edmac control sequences (like
% \text, \Afootnote etc.) and redefines \morenoexpands. If you yourself
% redefined some Edmac control sequences, be careful: some adjustments
% might be necessary.
% October 1996
%
% My kind thanks to Nora G^?deke for valuable support. Any hints and
% comments are welcome, please contact Herbert Breger,
% Leibniz-Archiv, Waterloostr. 8, D -- 30169 Hannover, Germany
% Tel.: 511 - 1267 327
%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
```

The original `tabmac.tex` file was void of comments or any explanatory text other than the above notice. The algorithm is Breger's. I have made some cosmetic changes to the original code and reimplemented some things so they are more LaTeX-like. All the commentary is mine, as are any mistakes or errors.

`\l@dtabnoexpands` An extended and modified version of the original additional no expansions..

```
3771 \newcommand*\l@dtabnoexpands}{%
3772 \let\rtab=0%
3773 \let\ctab=0%
```

```

3774 \let\ltab=0%
3775 \let\rtabtext=0%
3776 \let\ltabtext=0%
3777 \let\ctabtext=0%
3778 \let\edbeforetab=0%
3779 \let\edaftertab=0%
3780 \let\edatab=0%
3781 \let\edatabell=0%
3782 \let\edatleft=0%
3783 \let\edatright=0%
3784 \let\edvertline=0%
3785 \let\edvertdots=0%
3786 \let\edrowfill=0%
3787 }
3788

```

`\disable@familiarnotes` Macros to disable and restore familiar notes, to prevent them from printing multiple times in edtabularx and edarrayx environments.

```

3789 \newcommand{\disable@familiarnotes}{%
3790   \def\do##1{%
3791     \csletcs{footnote@##1}{footnote##1}%
3792     \expandafter\renewcommand \csname footnote##1\endcsname[1]{%
3793       \protected@csxdef{@thefnmark##1}{\csuse{thefootnote##1}}%
3794       \csuse{@footnotemark##1}%
3795     }%
3796   }%
3797   \dolistloop{\@series}%
3798 }%
3799 \newcommand{\restore@familiarnotes}{%
3800   \def\do##1{%
3801     \csletcs{footnote##1}{footnote@##1}%
3802   }%
3803   \dolistloop{\@series}%
3804 }%
3805

```

`\disable@sidenotes` The same, for side notes.

```

\restore@sidenotes 3806 \newcommand{\disable@sidenotes}{%
3807   \let\@@ledrightnote\ledrightnote%
3808   \let\@@ledleftnote\ledleftnote%
3809   \let\@@ledsidenote\ledsidenote%
3810   \let\ledrightnote@gobble%
3811   \let\ledleftnote@gobble%
3812   \let\ledsidenote@gobble%
3813 }%
3814 \newcommand{\restore@sidenotes}{%
3815   \let\ledrightnote\@@ledrightnote%
3816   \let\ledleftnote\@@ledleftnote%
3817   \let\ledsidenote\@@ledsidenote%
3818 }%

```

`\disable@notes` Disable/restore side and familiar notes.

```
\restore@notes 3819 \newcommand{\disable@notes}{%
3820   \disable@sidenotes%
3821   \disable@familiarnotes%
3822 }%
3823 \newcommand{\restore@notes}{%
3824   \restore@sidenotes%
3825   \restore@familiarnotes%
3826 }%
```

`\l@dampcount` `\l@dampcount` is a counter for the & column dividers and `\l@dcolcount` is a counter for the columns. These were `\Undcount` and `\stellencount` respectively.

```
3827 \newcount\l@dampcount
3828 \l@dampcount=1\relax
3829 \newcount\l@dcolcount
3830 \l@dcolcount=0\relax
3831
```

`\hilfsbox` Some (temporary) helper items.

```
\hilfsskip 3832 \newbox\hilfsbox
\Hilfsbox 3833 \newskip\hilfsskip
\hilfscount 3834 \newbox\Hilfsbox
3835 \newcount\hilfscount
3836
```

30 columns should be adequate (compared to the original 60). These are the column widths. (Originally these were German spelled numbers e.g., `\eins`, `\zwei`, etc).

```
3837 \newdimen\dcoli
3838 \newdimen\dcolii
3839 \newdimen\dcoliii
3840 \newdimen\dcoliv
3841 \newdimen\dcolv
3842 \newdimen\dcolvi
3843 \newdimen\dcolvii
3844 \newdimen\dcolviii
3845 \newdimen\dcolix
3846 \newdimen\dcolx
3847 \newdimen\dcolxi
3848 \newdimen\dcolxii
3849 \newdimen\dcolxiii
3850 \newdimen\dcolxiv
3851 \newdimen\dcolxv
3852 \newdimen\dcolxvi
3853 \newdimen\dcolxvii
3854 \newdimen\dcolxviii
3855 \newdimen\dcolxix
3856 \newdimen\dcolxx
3857 \newdimen\dcolxxi
```

```

3858 \newdimen\dcollxii
3859 \newdimen\dcollxiii
3860 \newdimen\dcollxiv
3861 \newdimen\dcollxv
3862 \newdimen\dcollxvi
3863 \newdimen\dcollxvii
3864 \newdimen\dcollxviii
3865 \newdimen\dcollxix
3866 \newdimen\dcollxxx
3867 \newdimen\dcollerr    % added for error handling
3868

```

`\l@dcollwidth` This is a cunning way of storing the columnwidths indexed by the column number `\l@dcollcount`, like an array. (was `\Dimenzuordnung`)

```

3869 \newcommand{\l@dcollwidth}{\ifcase \the\l@dcollcount \dcoli %???
3870 \or \dcoli \or \dcolii \or \dcoliii
3871 \or \dcoliv \or \dcolv \or \dcolvi
3872 \or \dcolvii \or \dcolviii \or \dcolix \or \dcolx
3873 \or \dcolxi \or \dcolxii \or \dcolxiii
3874 \or \dcolxiv \or \dcolxv \or \dcolxvi
3875 \or \dcolxvii \or \dcolxviii \or \dcolxix \or \dcolxx
3876 \or \dcolxxi \or \dcolxxii \or \dcolxxiii
3877 \or \dcolxxiv \or \dcolxxv \or \dcolxxvi
3878 \or \dcolxxvii \or \dcolxxviii \or \dcolxxix \or \dcolxxx
3879 \else \dcollerr \fi}
3880

```

`\stepl@dcollcount` This increments the column counter, and issues an error message if it is too large.

```

3881 \newcommand*{\stepl@dcollcount}{\advance\l@dcollcount\@ne
3882 \ifnum\l@dcollcount>30\relax
3883 \led@err@TooManyColumns
3884 \fi}
3885

```

`\l@dsetmaxcollwidth` Sets the column width to the maximum value seen so far. (was `\dimenzuordnung`)

```

3886 \newcommand{\l@dsetmaxcollwidth}{%
3887 \ifdim\l@dcollwidth < \wd\hilfsbox
3888 \l@dcollwidth = \wd\hilfsbox
3889 \else \relax \fi}
3890

```

`\EDTEXT` We need to be able to modify the `\edtext` and `\critext` macros and also restore `\xedtext` their original definitions.

```

\CRITEXT 3891 \let\EDTEXT=\edtext
\xcritext 3892 \newcommand{\xedtext}[2]{\EDTEXT{#1}{#2}}
3893 \let\CRITEXT=\critext
3894 \long\def\xcritext #1#2/{\CRITEXT{#1}{#2}/}

```

`\EDLABEL` We need to be able to modify and restore the `\edlabel` macro.

`\xedlabel`

```

3895 \let\EDLABEL=\edlabel
3896 \newcommand*{\xedlabel}[1]{\EDLABEL{#1}}

\EDINDEX  Macros supporting modification and restoration of \edindex.
\xedindex 3897 \let\EDINDEX=\edindex
\nulledindex 3898 \ifl@dmemoir
3899   \newcommand{\xedindex}{\@bsphack%
3900     \ifnextchar [{\l@d@index}{\l@d@index[\jobname]}}
3901   \newcommand{\nulledindex}[2][\jobname]{\@bsphack\@esphack}
3902 \else
3903   \newcommand{\xedindex}{\@bsphack%
3904     \doedindexlabel
3905     \begingroup
3906     \@sanitize
3907     \@wredindex}
3908   \newcommand{\nulledindex}[1]{\@bsphack\@esphack}
3909 \fi
3910

\@line@@num  Macro supporting restoration of \linenum.
3911 \let\@line@@num=\linenum

\l@dgobbledarg  \l@dgobbledarg replaces its delineated argument by \relax (was \verschwinden).
\l@dgobblearg  \l@dgobbleoptarg[\langle arg \rangle]{\langle arg \rangle} replaces these two arguments (first is optional)
                by \relax.
3912 \def\l@dgobbledarg #1/{\relax}
3913 \newcommand*{\l@dgobbleoptarg}[2][\relax]%
3914

\Relax
\NEXT 3915 \let\Relax=\relax
\@hilfs@count 3916 \let\NEXT=\next
3917 \newcount\@hilfs@count
3918

\measuremcell  Measure (recursively) the width required for a math cell. (was \messen)
3919 \def\measuremcell #1&{%
3920   \ifx #1\ \ifnum\l@dc@lcount=0\let\NEXT\relax%
3921     \else\l@dcheckcols%
3922       \l@dc@lcount=0%
3923       \let\NEXT\measuremcell%
3924     \fi%
3925   \else\setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{\$ \displaystyle{#1}$}%
3926     \step\l@dc@lcount%
3927     \l@dsetmaxcolwidth%
3928     \let\NEXT\measuremcell%
3929   \fi\NEXT}
3930

```

`\measuretcell` Measure (recursively) the width required for a text cell. (was `\messentext`)

```

3931 \def\measuretcell #1{%
3932   \ifx #1\ \ifnum\l@dcolcount=0\let\NEXT\relax%
3933           \else\l@dcheckcols%
3934           \l@dcolcount=0%
3935           \let\NEXT\measuretcell%
3936           \fi%
3937   \else\setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{#1}%
3938   \step\l@dcolcount%
3939   \l@dsetmaxcolwidth%
3940   \let\NEXT\measuretcell%
3941   \fi\NEXT}
3942
```

`\measuremrow` Measure (recursively) the width required for a math row. (was `\Messen`)

```

3943 \def\measuremrow #1\{%
3944   \ifx #1&\let\NEXT\relax%
3945   \else\measuremcell #1&\&\&%
3946   \let\NEXT\measuremrow%
3947   \fi\NEXT}

```

`\measuretrow` Measure (recursively) the width required for a text row. (was `\Messentext`)

```

3948 \def\measuretrow #1\{%
3949   \ifx #1&\let\NEXT\relax%
3950   \else\measuretcell #1&\&\&%
3951   \let\NEXT\measuretrow%
3952   \fi\NEXT}
3953
```

`\edtabcolsep` The length `\edtabcolsep` controls the distance between columns. (was `\abstand`)

```

3954 \newskip\edtabcolsep
3955 \global\edtabcolsep=10pt
3956
```

`\NEXT`

```

\Next 3957 \let\NEXT\relax
3958 \let\Next=\next

```

`\variab`

```

3959 \newcommand{\variab}{\relax}
3960
```

`\l@dcheckcols` Check that the number of columns is consistent. (was `\tabfehlermeldung`)

```

3961 \newcommand*{\l@dcheckcols}{%
3962   \ifnum\l@dcolcount=1\relax
3963   \else
3964     \ifnum\l@dampcount=1\relax
3965     \else
3966       \ifnum\l@dcolcount=\l@dampcount\relax

```

```

3967     \else
3968         \l@d@err@UnequalColumns
3969     \fi
3970 \fi
3971 \l@dampcount=\l@dcolcount
3972 \fi}
3973

```

`\l@dmodforcritext` Modify and restore various macros for when `\critext` is used.

```

\l@drestoreforcritext 3974 \newcommand{\l@dmodforcritext}{%
3975     \let\critext\relax%
3976     \def\do##1{\global\csletcs{##1footnote}{\l@gobbledarg}}%
3977     \dolistloop{\@series}%
3978     \let\edindex\nulledindex%
3979     \let\linenum@gobble}
3980 \newcommand{\l@drestoreforcritext}{%
3981     \def\do##1{\csdef{##1footnote}##1##2/{\csuse{##1@footnote}{##1}{##2}}}%
3982     \dolistloop{\@series}%
3983     \let\edindex\xedndex}
3984

```

`\l@dmodforedtext` Modify and restore various macros for when `\edtext` is used.

```

\l@drestoreforedtext 3985 \newcommand{\l@dmodforedtext}{%
3986     \let\edtext\relax
3987     \def\do##1{\global\csletcs{##1footnote}{\l@gobbleoptarg}}%
3988     \dolistloop{\@series}%
3989     \let\edindex\nulledindex
3990     \let\linenum@gobble}
3991 \newcommand{\l@drestoreforedtext}{%
3992     \def\do##1{\global\csletcs{##1footnote}{##1@footnote}}%
3993     \dolistloop{\@series}%
3994     \let\edindex\xedndex}

```

`\l@dnullfills` Nullify and restore some column fillers, etc.

```

\l@dstorefills 3995 \newcommand{\l@dnullfills}{%
3996     \def\edlabel##1{}%
3997     \def\edrowfill##1##2##3{}%
3998 }
3999 \newcommand{\l@dstorefills}{%
4000     \def\edrowfill##1##2##3{\@EDROWFILL@{##1}{##2}{##3}}%
4001 }
4002

```

The original definition of `\rverteilen` and friends (‘verteilen’ is approximately ‘distribute’) was along the lines:

```

\def\rverteilen #1&{\def\label##1{%
    \ifx #1! \ifnum\l@dcolcount=0%\removelastskip
        \let\Next\relax%
    \else\l@dcolcount=0%

```

```

\let\Next=\rverteilen%
\fi%
\else%
\footnoteverschw%
\step1@dcolcount%
\setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{$\displaystyle{#1}$}%
\let\critext=\xcritext\let\Dfootnote=D@@footnote
\let\Afootnote=A@@footnote\let\Bfootnote=B@@footnote
\let\Cfootnote=C@@footnote\let\linenum=@line@num%
\hilfsskip=\Dimenzuordnung%
\advance\hilfsskip by -\wd\hilfsbox
\def\label##1{\xlabel{##1}}%
\hskip\hilfsskip$\displaystyle{#1}$%
\hskip\edtabcolsep%
\let\Next=\rverteilen%
\fi\Next}

```

where the lines

```

\let\critext=\xcritext\let\Dfootnote=D@@footnote
\let\Afootnote=A@@footnote\let\Bfootnote=B@@footnote
\let\Cfootnote=C@@footnote\let\linenum=@line@num%
\hilfsskip=\Dimenzuordnung%
\advance\hilfsskip by -\wd\hilfsbox
\def\label##1{\xlabel{##1}}%

```

were common across the several *\*verteilen\** macros, and also

```

\def\footnoteverschw{%
\let\critext\relax
\let\Afootnote=\verschwinden
\let\Bfootnote=\verschwinden
\let\Cfootnote=\verschwinden
\let\Dfootnote=\verschwinden
\let\linenum=@gobble}

```

*\letsforverteilen* Gathers some lets and other code that is common to the *\*verteilen\** macros.

```

4003 \newcommand{\letsforverteilen}{%
4004 \let\critext\xcritext
4005 \let\edtext\xedtext
4006 \let\edindex\xedindex
4007 \def\do##1{\global\csletcs{##1footnote}{##1@@footnote}}
4008 \dolistloop{\@series}%
4009 \let\linenum@line@num
4010 \hilfsskip=\l@dcolwidth%
4011 \advance\hilfsskip by -\wd\hilfsbox
4012 \def\edlabel##1{\xedlabel{##1}}
4013

```

`\setmcellright` Typeset (recursively) cells of display math right justified. (was `\rverteilen`)

```

4014 \def\setmcellright #1&{\def\edlabel##1{}%
4015     \let\edindex\nulledindex
4016     \ifx #1\\ \ifnum\l@dcolcount=0\removelastskip
4017         \let\Next\relax%
4018     \else\l@dcolcount=0%
4019         \let\Next=\setmcellright%
4020     \fi%
4021 \else%
4022     \disablel@dtabfeet%
4023     \step1@dcolcount%
4024     \disable@notes%
4025     \setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{$\displaystyle{#1}$}%
4026     \restore@notes%
4027     \letsforverteilen%
4028     \hskip\hilfsskip$\displaystyle{#1}$%
4029     \hskip\edtabcolsep%
4030     \let\Next=\setmcellright%
4031 \fi\Next}
4032

```

`\settcclright` Typeset (recursively) cells of text right justified. (was `\rverteilentext`)

```

4033 \def\settcclright #1&{\def\edlabel##1{}%
4034     \let\edindex\nulledindex
4035     \ifx #1\\ \ifnum\l@dcolcount=0\removelastskip
4036         \let\Next\relax%
4037     \else\l@dcolcount=0%
4038         \let\Next=\settcclright%
4039     \fi%
4040 \else%
4041     \disablel@dtabfeet%
4042     \step1@dcolcount%
4043     \disable@notes%
4044     \setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{#1}%
4045     \restore@notes%
4046     \letsforverteilen%
4047     \hskip\hilfsskip#1%
4048     \hskip\edtabcolsep%
4049     \let\Next=\settcclright%
4050 \fi\Next}

```

`\setmcellleft` Typeset (recursively) cells of display math left justified. (was `\lverteilen`)

```

4051 \def\setmcellleft #1&{\def\edlabel##1{}%
4052     \let\edindex\nulledindex
4053     \ifx #1\\ \ifnum\l@dcolcount=0 \let\Next\relax%
4054         \else\l@dcolcount=0%
4055         \let\Next=\setmcellleft%
4056     \fi%
4057 \else \disablel@dtabfeet%

```

```

4058         \stepl@dc colcount%
4059         \disable@notes%
4060         \setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{$\displaystyle{#1}$}%
4061         \restore@notes%
4062         \letsforverteilen%
4063         $\displaystyle{#1}$\hskip\hilfsskip\hskip\edtabcolsep%
4064         \let\Next=\setmcellleft%
4065     \fi\Next}
4066

```

`\settcclleft` Typeset (recursively) cells of text left justified. (was `\lverteilentext`)

```

4067 \def\settcclleft #1&{\def\edlabel##1{}}%
4068     \let\edindex\nulledindex
4069     \ifx #1\\ \ifnum\l@dc colcount=0 \let\Next\relax%
4070         \else\l@dc colcount=0%
4071             \let\Next=\settcclleft%
4072         \fi%
4073     \else \disablel@dtabfeet%
4074         \stepl@dc colcount%
4075         \disable@notes%
4076         \setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{#1}%
4077         \restore@notes%
4078         \letsforverteilen%
4079         #1\hskip\hilfsskip\hskip\edtabcolsep%
4080         \let\Next=\settcclleft%
4081     \fi\Next}

```

`\setmcellcenter` Typeset (recursively) cells of display math centered. (was `\zverteilen`)

```

4082 \def\setmcellcenter #1&{\def\edlabel##1{}}%
4083     \let\edindex\nulledindex
4084     \ifx #1\\ \ifnum\l@dc colcount=0\let\Next\relax%
4085         \else\l@dc colcount=0%
4086             \let\Next=\setmcellcenter%
4087         \fi%
4088     \else \disablel@dtabfeet%
4089         \stepl@dc colcount%
4090         \disable@notes%
4091         \setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{$\displaystyle{#1}$}%
4092         \restore@notes%
4093         \letsforverteilen%
4094         \hskip 0.5\hilfsskip$\displaystyle{#1}$\hskip0.5\hilfsskip%
4095         \hskip\edtabcolsep%
4096         \let\Next=\setmcellcenter%
4097     \fi\Next}
4098

```

`\settcclcenter` Typeset (recursively) cells of text centered. (new)

```

4099 \def\settcclcenter #1&{\def\edlabel##1{}}%
4100     \let\edindex\nulledindex

```

```

4101 \ifx #1\ \ifnum\l@dc@colcount=0 \let\Next\relax%
4102 \else\l@dc@colcount=0%
4103 \let\Next=\settcellcenter%
4104 \fi%
4105 \else \disablel@dt@abfeet%
4106 \stepl@dc@colcount%
4107 \disable@notes%
4108 \setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{#1}%
4109 \restore@notes%
4110 \letsforverteilen%
4111 \hskip 0.5\hilfsskip #1\hskip 0.5\hilfsskip%
4112 \hskip\edtabcolsep%
4113 \let\Next=\settcellcenter%
4114 \fi\Next}
4115

```

\NEXT

```

4116 \let\NEXT=\relax
4117

```

\setmrowright Typeset (recursively) rows of right justified math. (was \rsetzen)

```

4118 \def\setmrowright #1\{%
4119 \ifx #1& \let\NEXT\relax
4120 \else \centerline{\setmcellright #1&\&\&}
4121 \let\NEXT=\setmrowright
4122 \fi\NEXT}

```

\settroright Typeset (recursively) rows of right justified text. (was \rsetzentext)

```

4123 \def\settroright #1\{%
4124 \ifx #1& \let\NEXT\relax
4125 \else \centerline{\settc@llright #1&\&\&}
4126 \let\NEXT=\settroright
4127 \fi\NEXT}
4128

```

\setmrowleft Typeset (recursively) rows of left justified math. (was \lsetzen)

```

4129 \def\setmrowleft #1\{%
4130 \ifx #1& \let\NEXT\relax
4131 \else \centerline{\setmcellleft #1&\&\&}
4132 \let\NEXT=\setmrowleft
4133 \fi\NEXT}

```

\settrorleft Typeset (recursively) rows of left justified text. (was \lsetzentext)

```

4134 \def\settrorleft #1\{%
4135 \ifx #1& \let\NEXT\relax
4136 \else \centerline{\settc@llleft #1&\&\&}
4137 \let\NEXT=\settrorleft
4138 \fi\NEXT}
4139

```

`\setmrowcenter` Typeset (recursively) rows of centered math. (was `\zsetzen`)

```
4140 \def\setmrowcenter #1\{%
4141   \ifx #1& \let\NEXT\relax%
4142   \else \centerline{\setmcellcenter #1&\&\&}
4143         \let\NEXT=\setmrowcenter
4144   \fi\NEXT}
```

`\setttrowcenter` Typeset (recursively) rows of centered text. (new)

```
4145 \def\setttrowcenter #1\{%
4146   \ifx #1& \let\NEXT\relax
4147   \else \centerline{\setttcellcenter #1&\&\&}
4148         \let\NEXT=\setttrowcenter
4149   \fi\NEXT}
4150
```

`\nullsetzen` (was `\nullsetzen`)

```
4151 \newcommand{\nullsetzen}{%
4152   \step@dc@colcount%
4153   \l@dc@colwidth=0pt%
4154   \ifnum\l@dc@colcount=30\let\NEXT\relax%
4155       \l@dc@colcount=0\relax
4156   \else\let\NEXT\nullsetzen%
4157   \fi\NEXT}
4158
```

`\edatleft` `\edatleft[ $\langle symbol \rangle \langle len \rangle$ ]` (combination and generalisation of original `\Seklam` and `\Seklamgl`). Left  $\langle symbol \rangle$ ,  $2\langle len \rangle$  high with prepended  $\langle math \rangle$  vertically centered.

```
4159 \newcommand{\edatleft}[3][\@empty]{%
4160   \ifx#1\@empty
4161     \vbox to 10pt{\vss\hbox{$\left#2\vrule width0pt height #3
4162                               depth 0pt \right. $\hss}\vfil}
4163   \else
4164     \vbox to 4pt{\vss\hbox{$#1\left#2\vrule width0pt height #3
4165                               depth 0pt \right. $\}\vfil}
4166   \fi}
```

`\edatright` `\edatright[ $\langle symbol \rangle \langle len \rangle$ ]` (combination and generalisation of original `\sekla` and `\sekla`). Right  $\langle symbol \rangle$ ,  $2\langle len \rangle$  high with appended  $\langle math \rangle$  vertically centered.

```
4167 \newcommand{\edatright}[3][\@empty]{%
4168   \ifx#1\@empty
4169     \vbox to 10pt{\vss\hbox{$\left.\vrule width0pt height #3
4170                               depth 0pt \right#2 $\hss}\vfil}
4171   \else
4172     \vbox to 4pt{\vss\hbox{$\left.\vrule width0pt height #3
4173                               depth 0pt \right#2 #1 $\}\vfil}
4174   \fi}
4175
```

```

\edvertline \edvertline{<len>} vertical line <len> high. (was \sestrich)
4176 \newcommand{\edvertline}[1]{\vbox to 8pt{\vss\hbox{\vrule height #1}\vfil}}
4177

\edvertdots \edvertdots{<len>} vertical dotted line <len> high. (was \sepunkte)
4178 \newcommand{\edvertdots}[1]{\vbox to 1pt{\vss\vbox to #1%
4179     {\cleaders\hbox{$\m@th\hbox{.}\vbox to 0.5em{ }$}\vfil}}}
4180

```

I don't know if this is relevant here, and I haven't tried it, but the following appeared on CTT.

```

From: mdw@nsict.org (Mark Wooding)
Newsgroups: comp.text.tex
Subject: Re: Dotted line
Date: 13 Aug 2003 13:51:14 GMT

```

```

Alexis Eisenhofer <alexis@eisenhofer.de> wrote:
> Can anyone provide me with the LaTeX command for a vertical dotted line?

```

```

How dotted? Here's the basic rune.
\newbox\linedotbox
\setbox\linedotbox=\vbox{...}
\leaders\copy\linedotbox\vskip2in

```

```

For just dots, this works:
\setbox\linedotbox=\vbox{\hbox{\normalfont.}\kern2pt}

```

```

For dashes, something like
\setbox\linedotbox=\vbox{\leaders\vrule\vskip2pt\vskip2pt}
is what you want. (Adjust the '2pt' values to taste. The first one is
the length of the dashes, the second is the length of the gaps.)

```

```

For dots in mid-paragraph, you need to say something like
\lower10pt\vbox{\leaders\copy\linedotbox\vskip2in}
which is scungy but works.

```

```

-- [mdw]

```

```

\edfilldimen A length. (was \klamdimen)
4181 \newdimen\edfilldimen
4182 \edfilldimen=0pt
4183

```

```

\c@addcolcount A counter to hold the number of a column. We use a roman number so that we
\theadcolcount can grab the column dimension from \dcol....
4184 \newcounter{addcolcount}
4185 \renewcommand{\theadcolcount}{\roman{addcolcount}}

```

`\l@dtabaddcols` `\l@dtabaddcols{ $\langle startcol \rangle$ }{ $\langle endcol \rangle$ }` adds the widths of the columns  $\langle startcol \rangle$  through  $\langle endcol \rangle$  to `\edfilldimen`. It is a LaTeX style reimplementa-  
 tion of the original `\@add@`.

```
4186 \newcommand{\l@dtabaddcols}[2]{%
4187   \l@dcheckstartend{#1}{#2}%
4188   \ifl@dstartendok
4189     \setcounter{addcolcount}{#1}%
4190     \@whilenum \value{addcolcount}<#2\relax \do
4191       {\advance\edfilldimen by \the\csname dcol\theaddcolcount\endcsname
4192        \advance\edfilldimen by \edtabcolsep
4193        \stepcounter{addcolcount}}%
4194     \advance\edfilldimen by \the\csname dcol\theaddcolcount\endcsname
4195   \fi
4196 }
4197
```

`\ifl@dstartendok` `\l@dcheckstartend{ $\langle startcol \rangle$ }{ $\langle endcol \rangle$ }` checks that the values of  $\langle startcol \rangle$  and  $\langle endcol \rangle$  are sensible. If they are then `\ifl@dstartendok` is set TRUE, otherwise it is set FALSE.

```
4198 \newif\ifl@dstartendok
4199 \newcommand{\l@dcheckstartend}[2]{%
4200   \l@dstartendoktrue
4201   \ifnum #1<\@ne
4202     \l@dstartendokfalse
4203     \led@err@LowStartColumn
4204   \fi
4205   \ifnum #2>30\relax
4206     \l@dstartendokfalse
4207     \led@err@HighEndColumn
4208   \fi
4209   \ifnum #1>#2\relax
4210     \l@dstartendokfalse
4211     \led@err@ReverseColumns
4212   \fi
4213 }
4214
```

`\edrowfill` `\edrowfill{ $\langle startcol \rangle$ }{ $\langle endcol \rangle$ }` fill fills columns  $\langle startcol \rangle$  to  $\langle endcol \rangle$  inclusive with  $\langle fill \rangle$  (e.g. `\hrulefill`, `\upbracefill`). This is a LaTeX style reimplementa-  
`\@edrowfill@` tion and generalization of the original `\waklam`, `\Waklam`, `\waklamec`, `\wastricht`  
`\@EDROWFILL@` and `\wapunktel` macros.

```
4215 \newcommand*\edrowfill}[3]{%
4216   \l@dtabaddcols{#1}{#2}%
4217   \hb@xt@ \the\l@dcolwidth{\hb@xt@ \the\edfilldimen{#3}\hss}}
4218 \let\@edrowfill@=\edrowfill
4219 \def\@EDROWFILL@#1#2#3{\@edrowfill@{#1}{#2}{#3}}
4220
```

`\edbeforetab` The macro `\edbeforetab{ $\langle text \rangle$ }{ $\langle math \rangle$ }` puts  $\langle text \rangle$  at the left margin be-  
`\edaftertab`

fore array cell entry  $\langle math \rangle$ . Conversely, the macro `\edaftertab{ $\langle math \rangle$ }{ $\langle text \rangle$ }` puts  $\langle text \rangle$  at the right margin after array cell entry  $\langle math \rangle$ . `\edbeforetab` should be in the first column and `\edaftertab` in the last column. The following macros support these.

`\leftltab` `\leftltab{ $\langle text \rangle$ }` for `\edbeforetab` in `\ltab`. (was `\linksltab`)

```
4221 \newcommand{\leftltab}[1]{%
4222   \hb@xt@\z@\vbox{\edtabindent%
4223     \moveleft\Hilfsskip\hbox{\ #1}}\hss}%
4224 }
```

`\leftrtab` `\leftrtab{ $\langle text \rangle$ }{ $\langle math \rangle$ }` for `\edbeforetab` in `\rtab`. (was `\linksrtab`)

```
4225 \newcommand{\leftrtab}[2]{%
4226   #2\hb@xt@\z@\vbox{\edtabindent%
4227     \advance\Hilfsskip by\dcoli%
4228     \moveleft\Hilfsskip\hbox{\ #1}}\hss}%
4229 }
```

`\leftctab` `\leftctab{ $\langle text \rangle$ }{ $\langle math \rangle$ }` for `\edbeforetab` in `\ctab`. (was `\linksztab`)

```
4230 \newcommand{\leftctab}[2]{%
4231   \hb@xt@\z@\vbox{\edtabindent\l@dcolcount=\l@dampcount%
4232     \advance\Hilfsskip by 0.5\dcoli%
4233     \setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{\def\edlabel##1}{%
4234       \disablel@dtabfeet$\displaystyle{#2}$}%
4235       \advance\Hilfsskip by -0.5\wd\hilfsbox%
4236       \moveleft\Hilfsskip\hbox{\ #1}}\hss}%
4237   #2}
4238 }
```

`\rightctab` `\rightctab{ $\langle math \rangle$ }{ $\langle text \rangle$ }` for `\edaftertab` in `\ctab`. (was `\rechtsztab`)

```
4239 \newcommand{\rightctab}[2]{%
4240   \setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{\def\edlabel##1}{%
4241     \disablel@dtabfeet#2}\l@dampcount=\l@dcolcount%
4242     #1\hb@xt@\z@\vbox{\edtabindent\l@dcolcount=\l@dampcount%
4243       \advance\Hilfsskip by 0.5\l@dcolwidth%
4244       \advance\Hilfsskip by -\wd\hilfsbox%
4245       \setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{\def\edlabel##1}{%
4246         \disablel@dtabfeet$\displaystyle{#1}$}%
4247         \advance\Hilfsskip by -0.5\wd\hilfsbox%
4248         \advance\Hilfsskip by \edtabcolsep%
4249         \moveright\Hilfsskip\hbox{ #2}}\hss}%
4250     }
4251 }
```

`\rightltab` `\rightltab{ $\langle math \rangle$ }{ $\langle text \rangle$ }` for `\edaftertab` in `\ltab`. (was `\rechtsltab`)

```
4252 \newcommand{\rightltab}[2]{%
4253   \setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{\def\edlabel##1}{%
4254     \disablel@dtabfeet#2}\l@dampcount=\l@dcolcount%
4255     #1\hb@xt@\z@\vbox{\edtabindent\l@dcolcount=\l@dampcount%
```

```

4256      \advance\Hilfsskip by\l@dcolwidth%
4257      \advance\Hilfsskip by-\wd\hilfsbox%
4258      \setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{\def\edlabel##1{}}%
4259      \disablel@dtabfeet$\displaystyle{#1}$}%
4260      \advance\Hilfsskip by-\wd\hilfsbox%
4261      \advance\Hilfsskip by\edtabcolsep%
4262      \moveright\Hilfsskip\hbox{ #2}}\hss}%
4263      }
4264

```

`\righttab` `\righttab{<math>}<{<text>}` for `\edaftertab` in `\rtab`. (was `\rechtsrtab`)

```

4265 \newcommand{\righttab}[2]{%
4266     \setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{\def\edlabel##1{}}%
4267     \disablel@dtabfeet#2}%
4268     #1\hb@xt@#2{\vbox{\edtabindent%
4269     \advance\Hilfsskip by-\wd\hilfsbox%
4270     \advance\Hilfsskip by\edtabcolsep%
4271     \moveright\Hilfsskip\hbox{ #2}}\hss}%
4272     }
4273

```

`\rtab` `\rtab{<body>}` typesets `<body>` as an array with the entries right justified. (was  
`\edbeforetab` `\rtab`) (Here and elsewhere, `\edbeforetab` and `\edaftertab` were originally  
`\edaftertab` `\davor` and `\danach`) The original `\rtab` and friends included a fair bit of common  
code which I have extracted into macros.

The process is first to measure the `<body>` to get the column widths, and then  
in a second pass to typeset the body.

```

4274 \newcommand{\rtab}[1]{%
4275     \l@dnnullfills
4276     \def\edbeforetab##1##2{\lefttab{##1}{##2}}%
4277     \def\edaftertab##1##2{\righttab{##1}{##2}}%
4278     \measurembody{#1}%
4279     \l@drestorefills
4280     \variab
4281     \setmrowright #1\\&\\%
4282     \enablel@dtabfeet}
4283

```

`\measurembody` `\measurembody{<body>}` measures the array `<body>`.

```

4284 \newcommand{\measurembody}[1]{%
4285     \disablel@dtabfeet%
4286     \l@dcolcount=0%
4287     \nullsetzen%
4288     \l@dcolcount=0
4289     \measuremrow #1\\&\\%
4290     \global\l@dampcount=1}
4291

```

`\rtabtext` `\rtabtext{<body>}` typesets `<body>` as a tabular with the entries right justified.  
(was `\rtabtext`)

```

4292 \newcommand{\rtabtext}[1]{%
4293   \l@dnnullfills
4294   \measuretbody{#1}%
4295   \l@drestorefills
4296   \variab
4297   \setthrowright #1\\&\\%
4298   \enablel@dtabfeet}
4299

```

`\measuretbody` `\measuretbody{<body>}` measures the tabular `<body>`.

```

4300 \newcommand{\measuretbody}[1]{%
4301   \disable@notes%
4302   \disablel@dtabfeet%
4303   \l@dcolcount=0%
4304   \nullsetzen%
4305   \l@dcolcount=0
4306   \measuretbody #1\\&\\%
4307   \restore@notes%
4308   \global\l@dampcount=1}
4309

```

`\ltab` Array with entries left justified. (was `\ltab`)

```

\edbeforetab 4310 \newcommand{\ltab}[1]{%
\edaftertab 4311   \l@dnnullfills
4312     \def\edbeforetab##1##2{\leftltab{##1}{##2}}%
4313     \def\edaftertab##1##2{\rightltab{##1}{##2}}%
4314     \measuretbody{#1}%
4315     \l@drestorefills
4316     \variab
4317     \setmrowleft #1\\&\\%
4318     \enablel@dtabfeet}
4319

```

`\ltabtext` Tabular with entries left justified. (was `\ltabtext`)

```

4320 \newcommand{\ltabtext}[1]{%
4321   \l@dnnullfills
4322   \measuretbody{#1}%
4323   \l@drestorefills
4324   \variab
4325   \setthrowleft #1\\&\\%
4326   \enablel@dtabfeet}
4327

```

`\ctab` Array with centered entries. (was `\ztab`)

```

\edbeforetab 4328 \newcommand{\ctab}[1]{%
\edaftertab 4329   \l@dnnullfills
4330     \def\edbeforetab##1##2{\leftctab{##1}{##2}}%
4331     \def\edaftertab##1##2{\rightctab{##1}{##2}}%
4332     \measuretbody{#1}%

```

```

4333 \l@drestorefills
4334 \variab
4335 \setmrowcenter #1\\&\\%
4336 \enablel@dtabfeet}
4337

```

`\ctabtext` Tabular with entries centered. (new)

```

4338 \newcommand{\ctabtext}[1]{%
4339 \l@dnnullfills
4340 \measuretbody{#1}%
4341 \l@drestorefills
4342 \variab
4343 \settrrowcenter #1\\&\\%
4344 \enablel@dtabfeet}
4345

```

`\spreadtext` (was `\breitertext`)

```

4346 \newcommand{\spreadtext}[1]{%\l@dcolcount=\l@dampcount%
4347 \hb@xt@ \the\l@dcolwidth{\hbox{#1}\hss}}

```

`\spreadmath` (was `\breiter`, ‘breiter’ = ‘broadly’)

```

4348 \newcommand{\spreadmath}[1]{%
4349 \hb@xt@ \the\l@dcolwidth{\hbox{$\displaystyle{#1}$}\hss}}
4350

```

I have left the remaining TABMAC alone, apart from changing some names. I’m not yet sure what they do or how they do it. Authors should not use any of these as they are likely to be mutable.

`\tabellzwischen` (was `\tabellzwischen`)

```

4351 \def\tabellzwischen #1{%
4352 \ifx #1\ \let\NEXT\relax \l@dcolcount=0
4353 \else \stepl@dcolcount%
4354 \l@dcolwidth = #1 mm
4355 \let\NEXT=\tabellzwischen
4356 \fi \NEXT }
4357

```

`\edatabell` For example `\edatabell 4 & 19 & 8 \\` specifies 3 columns with widths of 4, 19, and 8mm. (was `\atabell`)

```

4358 \def\edatabell #1\\{%
4359 \tabellzwischen #1\\&}

```

`\Setzen` (was `\Setzen`, ‘setzen’ = ‘set’)

```

4360 \def\Setzen #1{%
4361 \ifx #1\relax \let\NEXT=\relax
4362 \else \stepl@dcolcount%
4363 \let\tabelskip=\l@dcolwidth
4364 \EDTAB #1|

```

```

4365         \let\NEXT=\Setzen
4366     \fi\NEXT}
4367
\EDATAB (was \ATAB)
4368 \def\EDATAB #1\{%
4369     \ifx #1\Relax \centerline{\Setzen #1\relax&}
4370         \let\Next\relax
4371     \else \centerline{\Setzen #1&\relax&}
4372         \let\Next=\EDATAB
4373     \fi\Next}

\edatab (was \atab)
4374 \newcommand{\edatab}[1]{%
4375     \variab%
4376     \EDATAB #1\\Relax\\}
4377
\HILFSskip More helpers.
\Hilfsskip 4378 \newskip\HILFSskip
4379 \newskip\Hilfsskip
4380
\EDTABINDENT (was \TABINDENT)
4381 \newcommand{\EDTABINDENT}{%
4382     \ifnum\l@dc@lcount=30\let\NEXT\relax\l@dc@lcount=0%
4383     \else\step\l@dc@lcount%
4384         \advance\Hilfsskip by\l@dc@lwidth%
4385         \ifdim\l@dc@lwidth=0pt\advance\hilfsc@unt\@ne
4386         \else\advance\Hilfsskip by \the\hilfsc@unt\edtabcolsep%
4387         \hilfsc@unt=1\fi%
4388         \let\NEXT=\EDTABINDENT%
4389     \fi\NEXT}%

\edtabindent (was \tabindent)
4390 \newcommand{\edtabindent}{%
4391     \l@dc@lcount=0\relax
4392     \Hilfsskip=0pt%
4393     \hilfsc@unt=1\relax
4394     \EDTABINDENT%
4395     \hilfsskip=\hsize%
4396     \advance\hilfsskip -\Hilfsskip%
4397     \Hilfsskip=0.5\hilfsskip%
4398     }%
4399
\EDTAB (was \TAB)
4400 \def\EDTAB #1|#2|{%
4401     \setbox\tabhilfbox=\hbox{$\displaystyle{#1}$}%

```

```

4402 \setbox\tabHilfbox=\hbox{$\displaystyle{#2}$}%
4403 \advance\tabelskip -\wd\tabhilfbox%
4404 \advance\tabelskip -\wd\tabHilfbox%
4405 \unhbox\tabhilfbox\hskip\tabelskip%
4406 \unhbox\tabHilfbox}%
4407

```

\EDTABtext (was \TABtext)

```

4408 \def\EDTABtext #1|#2|{%
4409 \setbox\tabhilfbox=\hbox{#1}%
4410 \setbox\tabHilfbox=\hbox{#2}%
4411 \advance\tabelskip -\wd\tabhilfbox%
4412 \advance\tabelskip -\wd\tabHilfbox%
4413 \unhbox\tabhilfbox\hskip\tabelskip%
4414 \unhbox\tabHilfbox}%

```

\tabhilfbox Further helpers.

```

\tabHilfbox 4415 \newbox\tabhilfbox
4416 \newbox\tabHilfbox
4417

```

```

%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
% That finishes tabmac
%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%

```

edarrayl The ‘environment’ forms for \ltab, \ctab and \rtab.

```

edarrayc 4418 \newenvironment{edarrayl}{\l@dcollect@body\ltab}{}
edarrayr 4419 \newenvironment{edarrayc}{\l@dcollect@body\ctab}{}
4420 \newenvironment{edarrayr}{\l@dcollect@body\rtab}{}
4421

```

edtabularl The ‘environment’ forms for \ltabtext, \ctabtext and \rtabtext.

```

edtabularc 4422 \newenvironment{edtabularl}{\l@dcollect@body\ltabtext}{}
edtabularr 4423 \newenvironment{edtabularc}{\l@dcollect@body\ctabtext}{}
4424 \newenvironment{edtabularr}{\l@dcollect@body\rtabtext}{}
4425

```

Here’s the code for enabling \edtext (instead of \critext).

\usingcritext Declarations for using \critext{}.../ or using \edtext{}{} inside tabulars.

\disablel@dtabfeet The default at this point is for \edtext.

```

\enablel@dtabfeet 4426 \newcommand{\usingcritext}{%
\usingedtext 4427 \def\disablel@dtabfeet{\l@dmmodforcritext}%
4428 \def\enablel@dtabfeet{\l@drestoreforcritext}}
4429 \newcommand{\usingedtext}{%
4430 \def\disablel@dtabfeet{\l@dmmodforedtext}%
4431 \def\enablel@dtabfeet{\l@drestoreforedtext}}
4432
4433 \usingedtext
4434

```

## 36 Section's title commands

### 36.1 Deprecated commands

```

\initnumbering@sectcmd \initnumbering@sectcmd defines \ledxxx commands. These commands are de-
    \ledsection recated. It also defines quotation environment. Note: this assumes that the user
    \ledsection* didn't change \chapter. If he did, he should redefine \initnumbering@sectcmd.
    \ledsubsection 4435 \newcommand{\initnumbering@sectcmd}{
    \ledsubsection* 4436 \newcommand{\ledsection}[2] [] {%
    \ledsubsubsection 4437 \led@war@ledxxxDeprecated{section}%
    \ledsubsubsection* 4438 \leavevmode\pend\vspace{3.5ex \@plus 1ex \@minus .2ex}\ifl@dpairing\else\skipnumbe
    \ledchapter 4439 \pstart%
    \ledchapter* 4440 \leavevmode\ifledsecnolinenumber\skipnumbering\fi\section[##1]{##2}\leavevmode\vspace
    \@patchforledchapter 4441 \vspace{-2\parskip}\vspace{-2\baselineskip}%
    \quotation 4442 \ifautopar\else\pstart\fi
    \endquotation 4443 }
    \quote 4444 \WithSuffix\newcommand\ledsection*[1] {%
    \endquote 4445 \led@war@ledxxxDeprecated{section*}%
    4446 \leavevmode\pend\vspace{3.5ex \@plus 1ex \@minus .2ex}\ifl@dpairing\else\skipnumbe
    4447 \pstart%
    4448 \leavevmode\ifledsecnolinenumber\skipnumbering\fi\section*{##1}\leavevmode\vspace
    4449 \vspace{-2\parskip}\vspace{-2\baselineskip}%
    4450 \ifautopar\else\pstart\fi
    4451 }
    4452 \newcommand{\ledsubsection}[2] [] {%
    4453 \led@war@ledxxxDeprecated{subsection}%
    4454 \leavevmode\pend\vspace{3.5ex \@plus 1ex \@minus .2ex}\ifl@dpairing\else\skipnumbe
    4455 \pstart%
    4456 \leavevmode\ifledsecnolinenumber\skipnumbering\fi\subsection[##1]{##2}\leavevmode
    4457 \vspace{-2\parskip}\vspace{-2\baselineskip}%
    4458 \ifautopar\else\pstart\fi
    4459 }
    4460 \WithSuffix\newcommand\ledsubsection*[1] {%
    4461 \led@war@ledxxxDeprecated{subsection*}%
    4462 \leavevmode\pend\vspace{3.5ex \@plus 1ex \@minus .2ex}\ifl@dpairing\else\skipnumbe
    4463 \pstart%
    4464 \leavevmode\ifledsecnolinenumber\skipnumbering\fi\subsection*{##1}\leavevmode\vspace
    4465 \vspace{-2\parskip}\vspace{-2\baselineskip}%
    4466 \ifautopar\else\pstart\fi
    4467 }
    4468 \newcommand{\ledsubsubsection}[2] [] {%
    4469 \led@war@ledxxxDeprecated{subsubsection}%
    4470 \leavevmode\pend\vspace{3.5ex \@plus 1ex \@minus .2ex}\ifl@dpairing\else\skipnumbe
    4471 \pstart%
    4472 \leavevmode\ifledsecnolinenumber\skipnumbering\fi\subsubsection[##1]{##2}\leavevmode
    4473 \vspace{-2\parskip}\vspace{-2\baselineskip}%
    4474 \ifautopar\else\pstart\fi
    4475 }
    4476 \WithSuffix\newcommand\ledsubsubsection*[1] {%

```

```

4477     \led@war@ledxxxDeprecated{subsubsection*}%
4478     \leavevmode\pend\vspace{3.5ex \@plus 1ex \@minus .2ex}\ifl@dpairing\else\skipnumbering\fi%
4479     \pstart%
4480     \leavevmode\ifledsecnolinenumber\skipnumbering\fi\subsubsection*{##1}\leavevmode\vspace{1.5ex
4481     \vspace{-2\parskip}\vspace{-2\baselineskip}%
4482     \ifautopar\else\pstart\fi
4483 }
4484 \newcommand\ledchapter[2][]{%
4485     \led@war@ledxxxDeprecated{chapter}%
4486     \ifl@dmemoir%
4487         \gdef\ch@pt@c{##1}%
4488         \fi%
4489         ~\pend\skipnumbering%
4490         \pstart%
4491         \@patchforledchapter\chapter[##1]{##2}%
4492         \pend\pstart}
4493 \WithSuffix\newcommand\ledchapter*[1]{%
4494     \led@war@ledxxxDeprecated{chapter*}%
4495     ~\pend\skipnumbering%
4496     \pstart%
4497     \@patchforledchapter\chapter*{##1}\pend%
4498     \pstart}
4499 \def\@patchforledchapter{
4500     \patchcmd{\@makeschapterhead}{1\par}{1}{-}{-}
4501     \pretocmd{\@makeschapterhead}{\par}{-}{-}
4502     \apptocmd{\@makeschapterhead}{\par}{-}{-}
4503     \patchcmd{\@makeschapterhead}{\vskip 40\p@}{-}{-}{-}
4504     \patchcmd{\@makechapterhead}{1\par}{1}{-}{-}
4505     \pretocmd{\@makechapterhead}{\par}{-}{-}
4506     \apptocmd{\@makechapterhead}{\par}{-}{-}
4507     \patchcmd{\@makechapterhead}{\vskip 40\p@}{-}{-}{-}
4508     \apptocmd{\@chapter}{\par\leavevmode\vspace{40 \p@}\skipnumbering}{-}{-}
4509     \apptocmd{\@schapter}{\par\leavevmode\vspace{40 \p@}\skipnumbering}{-}{-}
4510     \newcommand\beforeledchapter{\pend\cleardoublepage\pstart}
4511     \patchcmd{\chapter}{\cleardoublepage}{\relax}{-}{-}
4512     \patchcmd{\chapter}{\clearpage}{\relax}{-}{-}
4513 }
4514 \ifnoquotation@ \else
4515 \renewcommand{\quotation}{\par\leavevmode%
4516     \parindent=1.5em%
4517     \skipnumbering%
4518     \ifautopar%
4519         \vskip-\parskip%
4520     \else%
4521         \vskip\topsep%
4522     \fi%
4523     \global\leftskip=\leftmargin%
4524     \global\rightskip=\leftmargin%
4525 }
4526 \renewcommand{\endquotation}{\par%

```

```

4527 \global\leftskip=0pt%
4528 \global\rightskip=0pt%
4529 \leavevmode%
4530 \skipnumbering%
4531 \ifautopar%
4532 \vskip-\parskip%
4533 \else%
4534 \vskip\topsep%
4535 \fi%
4536 }
4537 \renewcommand{\quote}{\par\leavevmode%
4538 \parindent=0pt%
4539 \skipnumbering%
4540 \ifautopar%
4541 \vskip-\parskip%
4542 \else%
4543 \vskip\topsep%
4544 \fi%
4545 \global\leftskip=\leftmargin%
4546 \global\rightskip=\leftmargin%
4547 }
4548 \renewcommand{\endquote}{\par%
4549 \global\leftskip=0pt%
4550 \global\rightskip=0pt%
4551 \leavevmode%
4552 \skipnumbering%
4553 \ifautopar%
4554 \vskip-\parskip%
4555 \else%
4556 \vskip\topsep%
4557 \fi%
4558 }
4559 \fi
4560 }

```

`\ledsectnotoc` The `\ledsectnotoc` only disables the `\addcontentsline` macro.

```

4561 \newcommand{\ledsectnotoc}{\let\addcontentsline\@gobblethree}

```

`\ledsectnomark` The `\ledsectnomark` only disables the `\chaptermark`, `\sectionmark` and `\subsectionmark` macros.

```

4562 \newcommand{\ledsectnomark}{%
4563 \let\chaptermark\@gobble%
4564 \let\sectionmark\@gobble%
4565 \let\subsectionmark\@gobble%
4566 }

```

## 36.2 New commands : `\eledxxx`

The new system of `\eledxxxx` commands to section text work like this:

1. When one of these commands is called, `eledmac` writes to an auxiliary files:
  - The section level.
  - The section title.
  - The side (when `eledpar` is used).
  - The `pstart` where the command is called.
  - If we have starred version or not.
2. `eledmac` adds the title of the section to `pstart`, as normal content. This is to enable critical notes.
3. When  $\text{\LaTeX}$  is run a other time, this file is read. That:
  - Adds the `pstart` number to a list of `pstarts` where a sectioning command is used.
  - Defines a command, the name of which contains the `pstart` number, and which calls the normal  $\text{\LaTeX}$  sectioning command.
4. This last command is called when the `pstart` is effectively printed.

`\beforeeledchapter` For technical reasons, not yet solved, page-breaking before chapters can't be made automatically by `eledmac`. Users have to us `\beforeeledchapter`.

```
4567 \ifl@dmemoir
4568   \newcommand\beforeeledchapter{\clearforchapter}
4569 \else
4570   \newcommand\beforeeledchapter{\if@openright\cleardoublepage\else\clearpage\fi}
4571 \fi
```

`\if@eled@sectioning` The boolean `\if@eled@sectioning` is set to true when a sectioning command is called by a `\eledxxx` command, and set to false after. It is used to enable/disable line number printing.

```
4572 \newif\if@eled@sectioning
```

`\print@leftmargin@eledsection` and `\print@rightmargin@eledsection` are added by `eledmac` inside the code of sectioning command, in order to affix lines numbers. They include tests for RTL languages.

```
4573 \def\print@rightmargin@eledsection{%
4574   \if@eled@sectioning%
4575     \begingroup%
4576     \if@RTL%
4577       \let\llap\rlap%
4578       \let\leftlinenum\rightlinenum%
4579       \let\leftlinenumR\rightlinenumR%
4580       \let\l@drd@ta\l@dld@ta%
4581       \let\l@drsn@te\l@dlsn@te%
4582     \fi%
4583     \hfill\l@drd@ta \csuse{LR}{\l@drsn@te}%

```

```

4584 \endgroup%
4585 \fi%
4586 }%
4587
4588 \def\print@leftmargin@eledsection{%
4589 \if@eled@sectioning%
4590 \leavevmode%
4591 \begingroup%
4592 \if@RTL%
4593 \let\rlap\llap%
4594 \let\rightlinenum\leftlinenum%
4595 \let\rightlinenumR\leftlinenumR%
4596 \let\l@dld@ta\l@drd@ta%
4597 \let\l@dlsn@te\l@drsn@te%
4598 \fi%
4599 \l@dld@ta\csuse{LR}{\l@dlsn@te}%
4600 \endgroup%
4601 \fi%
4602 }%
4603

```

<pre> \chapter \M@sect \@mem@old@ssect \@makechapterhead \@makechapterhead \@makeschapterhead </pre>	<p>We have to patch L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, book and memoir sectioning commands in order to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Disable <code>\edtext</code> inside.</li> <li>• Disable page breaking (for <code>\chapter</code>).</li> <li>• Add line numbers and sidenotes.</li> </ul>
--	---

Unfortunately, Maïeul Rouquette was not able to try if memoir is loaded. That is why `eledmac` tries to define for both standard class and memoir class.

```

4604 \catcode'\# =12 % Space NEEDS by \catcode
4605 \AtBeginDocument{%
4606 \patchcmd{\chapter}{\clearforchapter}{%
4607 \if@eled@sectioning\else%
4608 \clearforchapter
4609 \fi%
4610 }
4611 {}
4612 {}
4613
4614 \pretocmd{\M@sect}
4615 {\let\old@edtext=\edtext%
4616 \let\edtext=\dummy@edtext@showlemma%
4617 }
4618 {}
4619 {}
4620
4621 \apptocmd{\M@sect}
4622 {\let\edtext=\old@edtext}

```

```

4623 {}
4624 {}
4625
4626 \patchcmd{\M@ssect}
4627 { #9}
4628 { #9%
4629 \print@rightmargin@eledsection%
4630 }
4631 {}
4632 {}
4633
4634 \patchcmd{\M@ssect}
4635 {\hskip #3\relax}
4636 {\hskip #3\relax%
4637 \print@leftmargin@eledsection%
4638 }
4639 {}
4640 {}
4641
4642 \pretocmd{\@mem@old@ssect}
4643 {\let\old@edtext=\edtext%
4644 \let\edtext=\dummy@edtext@showlemma%
4645 }
4646 {}
4647 {}
4648
4649 \apptocmd{\@mem@old@ssect}
4650 {\let\edtext=\old@edtext}
4651 {}
4652 {}
4653
4654 \patchcmd{\@mem@old@ssect}
4655 {#5}
4656 {#5%
4657 \print@leftmargin@eledsection%
4658 }
4659 {}
4660 {}
4661
4662 \patchcmd{\@mem@old@ssect}
4663 {\hskip #1}
4664 {\hskip #1%
4665 \print@rightmargin@eledsection%
4666 }
4667 {}
4668 {}
4669
4670 \patchcmd{\chapter}{\if@openright\cleardoublepage\else\clearpage\fi}{%
4671 \if@eled@sectioning\else%
4672 \if@openright\cleardoublepage\else\clearpage\fi}%No clearpage inside a \eledsection : will keep cr

```

```

4673 \fi%
4674 }%
4675 {}%
4676 {}%
4677
4678 \patchcmd{\@makechapterhead}
4679   {#1}
4680   {\print@leftmargin@eledsection%
4681     #1%
4682     \print@rightmargin@eledsection%
4683   }
4684   {}
4685   {}
4686
4687 \patchcmd{\@makechapterhead}% For BIDI
4688   {\if@RTL\raggedleft\else\raggedright\fi}%
4689   {\if@eled@sectioning\else%
4690     \if@RTL\raggedleft\else\raggedright\fi%
4691   \fi%
4692   }%
4693   {}%
4694   {}%
4695
4696 \patchcmd{\@makeschapterhead}
4697   {#1}
4698   {\print@leftmargin@eledsection%
4699     #1%
4700     \print@rightmargin@eledsection%
4701   }
4702   {}
4703   {}
4704
4705 \pretocmd{\@sect}
4706   {\let\old@edtext=\edtext
4707     \let\edtext=\dummy@edtext@showlemma%
4708   }
4709   {}
4710   {}
4711
4712 \apptocmd{\@sect}
4713   {\let\edtext=\old@edtext}
4714   {}
4715   {}
4716
4717 \patchcmd{\@sect}
4718   {#8}
4719   {#8%
4720     \print@rightmargin@eledsection%
4721   }
4722   {}

```

```

4723 {}
4724
4725 \patchcmd{\@sect}
4726 {\hskip #3\relax}
4727 {\hskip #3\relax%
4728 \print@leftmargin@eledsection%
4729 }
4730 {}
4731 {}
4732
4733 \pretocmd{\@ssect}
4734 {\let\old@edtext=\edtext%
4735 \let\edtext=\dummy@edtext@showlemma%
4736 }
4737 {}
4738 {}
4739
4740 \apptocmd{\@ssect}
4741 {\let\edtext=\old@edtext}
4742 {}
4743 {}
4744
4745 \patchcmd{\@ssect}
4746 {#5}
4747 {#5%
4748 \print@rightmargin@eledsection%
4749 }
4750 {}
4751 {}
4752
4753 \patchcmd{\@ssect}
4754 {\hskip #1}
4755 {\hskip #1%
4756 \print@leftmargin@eledsection%
4757 }
4758 {}
4759 {}
4760 }%
4761 \catcode'\#6 %Space NEEDS by \catcode

```

\eled@sectioning@out \eled@sectioning@out is the output file, to dump the pstarts where a sectioning command is used.

```
4762 \newwrite\eled@sectioning@out
```

\noeledsec The boolean \if@noeled@sec is set to true when \noeledsec is called. It is used  
\if@noeled@sec to disable external file creation.

```

4763 \newif\if@noeled@sec%
4764 \newcommand{\noeledsec}{\global\@noeled@sectrue}%

```

```

\eledchapter And now, the user sectioning commands, which write to the file, and also add
\eledsection content as a "normal" line.
\eledsubsection 4765 \newcommand{\eledchapter}[2] [] {%
\eledsubsubsection 4766 #2%
\eledchapter* 4767 \ifledRcol%
\eledsection* 4768 \immediate\write\eled@sectioningR@out{%
\eledsubsection* 4769 \string\eled@chapter{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dnumpstartsR}{R}
\eledsubsubsection* 4770 }%
4771 \else%
4772 \immediate\write\eled@sectioningR@out{%
4773 \string\eled@chapter{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dnumpstartsL}{L}
4774 }%
4775 \fi%
4776 }
4777
4778 \newcommand{\eledsection}[2] [] {%
4779 #2%
4780 \ifledRcol%
4781 \immediate\write\eled@sectioningR@out{%
4782 \string\eled@section{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dnumpstartsR}{R}
4783 }%
4784 \else%
4785 \immediate\write\eled@sectioningR@out{%
4786 \string\eled@section{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dnumpstartsL}{L}
4787 }%
4788 \fi%
4789 }
4790
4791 \newcommand{\eledsubsection}[2] [] {%
4792 #2%
4793 \ifledRcol%
4794 \immediate\write\eled@sectioningR@out{%
4795 \string\eled@subsection{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dnumpstartsR}{R}
4796 }%
4797 \else%
4798 \immediate\write\eled@sectioningR@out{%
4799 \string\eled@subsection{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dnumpstartsL}{L}
4800 }%
4801 \fi%
4802 }
4803 \newcommand{\eledsubsubsection}[2] [] {%
4804 #2%
4805 \ifledRcol%
4806 \immediate\write\eled@sectioningR@out{%
4807 \string\eled@subsubsection{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dnumpstartsR}{R}
4808 }%
4809 \else%
4810 \immediate\write\eled@sectioningR@out{%
4811 \string\eled@subsubsection{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dnumpstartsL}{L}

```

```

4812     }%
4813   \fi%
4814 }
4815
4816
4817 \WithSuffix\newcommand\eledchapter*[2] []{%
4818   #2%
4819   \ifledRcol%
4820     \immediate\write\eled@sectioningR@out{%
4821       \string\eled@chapter{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dnumpstartsR}{*}{R}
4822     }%
4823   \else%
4824     \immediate\write\eled@sectioning@out{%
4825       \string\eled@chapter{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dnumpstartsL}{*}{L}
4826     }%
4827   \fi%
4828 }
4829
4830 \WithSuffix\newcommand\eledsection*[2] []{%
4831   #2%
4832   \ifledRcol%
4833     \immediate\write\eled@sectioningR@out{%
4834       \string\eled@section{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dnumpstartsR}{*}{R}
4835     }%
4836   \else%
4837     \immediate\write\eled@sectioning@out{%
4838       \string\eled@section{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dnumpstartsL}{*}{L}
4839     }%
4840   \fi%
4841 }
4842
4843 \WithSuffix\newcommand\eledsubsection*[2] []{%
4844   #2%
4845   \ifledRcol%
4846     \immediate\write\eled@sectioningR@out{%
4847       \string\eled@subsection{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dnumpstartsR}{*}{R}
4848     }%
4849   \else%
4850     \immediate\write\eled@sectioning@out{%
4851       \string\eled@subsection{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dnumpstartsL}{*}{L}
4852     }%
4853   \fi%
4854 }
4855
4856 \WithSuffix\newcommand\eledsubsubsection*[2] []{%
4857   #2%
4858   \ifledRcol%
4859     \immediate\write\eled@sectioningR@out{%
4860       \string\eled@subsubsection{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dnumpstartsR}{*}{R}
4861     }%

```

```

4862 \else%
4863   \immediate\write\eled@sectioning@out{%
4864     \string\eled@subsubsection{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dnumpstartsL}{*}{}}
4865   }%
4866 \fi%
4867 }

```

`\eled@chapter` The sectioning macros, called in the auxiliary file. They have five arguments:

`\eled@section` 1. Optional arguments of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X sectioning command.

`\eled@subsection` 2. Mandatory arguments of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X sectioning command.

`\eled@subsubsection` 3. Pstart number.

4. Side: R if right, nothing if left.

5. Starred or not.

```

4868 \def\eled@chapter#1#2#3#4#5{%
4869   \ifstrempy{#4}%
4870   {%
4871     \ifstrempy{#1}%
4872     {%
4873       \global\csdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\let\edtext=\dummy@edtext@showlemma\chapter{#1}}
4874       \global\csdef{eled@sectmark@#3#5}{\let\edtext=\dummy@edtext{}\chaptermark{#2}}}%
4875     }%Need for \pairs, because of using parbox.
4876     {%
4877       \global\csdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\let\edtext=\dummy@edtext@showlemma\chapter{#1}}
4878       \global\csdef{eled@sectmark@#3#5}{\let\edtext=\dummy@edtext{}\chaptermark{#2}}}%Need
4879     }%
4880   }%
4881   {%
4882     \ifstrempy{#1}%
4883     {\global\csdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\let\edtext=\dummy@edtext@showlemma\chapter*{#1}}
4884      {\global\csdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\let\edtext=\dummy@edtext@showlemma\chapter*{#1}}}%
4885     }%
4886   \listcsgadd{eled@sections#5@@}{#3}%
4887   }
4888 \def\eled@section#1#2#3#4#5{%
4889   \ifstrempy{#4}%
4890   {\ifstrempy{#1}%
4891    {%
4892      \global\csdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\section{#2}}}%
4893      \global\csdef{eled@sectmark@#3#5}{\let\edtext=\dummy@edtext{}\sectionmark{#2}}}%Need
4894    }%
4895    {%
4896      \global\csdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\section[#1]{#2}}}%
4897      \global\csdef{eled@sectmark@#3#5}{\let\edtext=\dummy@edtext{}\sectionmark{#1}}}%Need
4898    }%
4899   }%

```

```

4900     {\ifstrempy{#1}%
4901       {\global\csdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\section*{#2}}}%
4902       {\global\csdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\section*{#1}{#2}}}%Bug in LaTeX!
4903     }
4904   \listcsadd{eled@sections#5@@}{#3}%
4905   }
4906 \def\eled@subsection#1#2#3#4#5{%
4907   \ifstrempy{#4}%
4908     {\ifstrempy{#1}%
4909       {%
4910         \global\csdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\subsection{#2}}%
4911         \global\csdef{eled@sectmark@#3#5}{\let\edtext=\dummy@edtext{}\csuse{subsectionmark}{#2}}%Need
4912       }%
4913       {%
4914         \global\csdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\subsection[#1]{#2}}%
4915         \global\csdef{eled@sectmark@#3#5}{\let\edtext=\dummy@edtext{}\csuse{subsectionmark}{#1}}%Need
4916       }%
4917     }%
4918     {\ifstrempy{#1}%
4919       {\global\csdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\subsection*{#2}}}%
4920       {\global\csdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\subsection*{#1}{#2}}}%Bug in LaTeX!
4921     }
4922   \listcsadd{eled@sections#5@@}{#3}%
4923   }
4924 \def\eled@subsubsection#1#2#3#4#5{%
4925   \ifstrempy{#4}%
4926     {\ifstrempy{#1}%
4927       {\global\csdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\subsubsection{#2}}}%
4928       {\global\csdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\subsubsection[#1]{#2}}}%
4929     }%
4930     {\ifstrempy{#1}%
4931       {\global\csdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\subsubsection*{#2}}}%
4932       {\global\csdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\subsubsection*{#1}{#2}}}%Bug in LaTeX!
4933     }
4934   \listcsadd{eled@sections#5@@}{#3}%
4935   }
4936

```

## 37 Page breaking or no page breaking depending of specific lines

By default, page breaks are automatic. However, the user can define lines which will force page breaks, or prevent page breaks around one specific line. On the first run, the line-list file records the line number of where the page break is being changed (either forced, or prevented). On the next run, page breaks occur either before or after this line, depending on how the user sets the command. The default setting is after the line.

`\normal@page@break` `\normal@page@break` is an etoolbox list which contains the absolute line number of the last line, for each page.

```
4937 \def\normal@page@break{}
```

`\prev@pb` The `\l@prev@pb` macro is a etoolbox list, which contains the lines in which page breaks occur (before or after). The `\l@prev@nopb` macro is a etoolbox list, which contains the lines with NO page break before or after.

```
4938 \def\l@prev@pb{}
```

```
4939 \def\l@prev@nopb{}
```

`\ledpb` The `\ledpb` macro writes the call to `\led@pb` in line-list file. The `\ledpbnum` macro writes the call to `\led@pbnum` in line-list file. The `\lednopb` macro writes the call to `\led@nopb` in line-list file. The `\lednopbnum` macro writes the call to `\led@nopbnum` in line-list file.

```
4940 \newcommand{\ledpb}{\write\linenum@out{\string\led@pb}}
```

```
4941 \newcommand{\ledpbnum}[1]{\write\linenum@out{\string\led@pbnum{#1}}}
```

```
4942 \newcommand{\lednopb}{\write\linenum@out{\string\led@nopb}}
```

```
4943 \newcommand{\lednopbnum}[1]{\write\linenum@out{\string\led@nopbnum{#1}}}
```

`\led@pb` The `\led@pb` adds the absolute line number in the `\prev@pb` list. The `\led@pbnum` adds the argument in the `\prev@pb` list. The `\led@nopb` adds the absolute line number in the `\prev@nopb` list. The `\led@nopbnum` adds the argument in the `\prev@nopb` list.

```
4944 \newcommand{\led@pb}{\listcsxadd{l@prev@pb}{\the\absline@num}}
```

```
4945 \newcommand{\led@pbnum}[1]{\listcsxadd{l@prev@pb}{#1}}
```

```
4946 \newcommand{\led@nopb}{\listcsxadd{l@prev@nopb}{\the\absline@num}}
```

```
4947 \newcommand{\led@nopbnum}[1]{\listcsxadd{l@prev@nopb}{#1}}
```

`\ledpbsetting` The `\ledpbsetting` macro only changes the value of `\led@pb@macro`, for which the default value is `before`.

```
4948 \def\led@pb@setting{before}
```

```
4949 \newcommand{\ledpbsetting}[1]{\gdef\led@pb@setting{#1}}
```

`\led@check@pb` The `\led@check@pb` and `\led@check@nopb` are called before or after each line. `\led@check@nopb` They check if a page break must occur, depending on the current line and on the content of `\l@pb`.

```
4950 \newcommand{\led@check@pb}{\xifinlistcs{\the\absline@num}{l@prev@pb}{\pagebreak[4]}{}}
```

```
4951 \newcommand{\led@check@nopb}{%
```

```
4952   \IfStrEq{\led@pb@setting}{before}{%
```

```
4953     \xifinlistcs{\the\absline@num}{l@prev@nopb}{%
```

```
4954       {numdef{\abs@prevline}{\the\absline@num-1}%
```

```
4955       \xifinlistcs{\abs@prevline}{normal@page@break}{%
```

```
4956         {\nopagebreak[4]\enlargethispage{\baselineskip}}%
```

```
4957       }%}
```

```
4958     }%}
```

```
4959   }%
```

```
4960 }
```

```
4961   \IfStrEq{\led@pb@setting}{after}{%
```

```

4962     \xifinlistcs{\the\absline@num}{l@prev@nopb}{}%
4963     \xifinlistcs{\the\absline@num}{normal@page@break}%
4964     {\nopagebreak[4]\enlargethispage{\baselineskip}}}%
4965     {}%
4966 }%
4967     {}}%
4968     {}%
4969     {}%
4970 }

```

## 38 Long verse: prevents being separated by a page break

`\iflednopbinverse` The `\lednopbinverse` boolean is set to false by default. If set to true, `eledmac` will automatically prevent page breaks inside verse. The declaration is made at the beginning of the file, because it is used as a package option.

`\check@pb@in@verse` The `\check@pb@in@verse` checks if a verse is broken in two page. If true, it adds:

- The absolute line number of the first line of the verse -1 in the `\led@pb` list, if the page break must occur before the verse.
- The absolute line number of the first line of the verse -1 in the `\led@nopb` list, if the page break must occur after the verse.

```

4971 \newcommand{\check@pb@in@verse}{%
4972     \ifinstanza\iflednopbinverse\ifinserthangingsymbol% Using stanzas and enabling page breaks in ver
4973     \ifnum\page@num=\last@page@num\else%If we have change page
4974     \IfStrEq{\led@pb@setting}{before}{%
4975         \numgdef{\abs@line@verse}{\the\absline@num-1}%
4976         \ledpbnum{\abs@line@verse}%
4977     }{}%
4978     \IfStrEq{\led@pb@setting}{after}{%
4979         \numgdef{\abs@line@verse}{\the\absline@num-1}%
4980         \lednopbnum{\abs@line@verse}%
4981     }{}%
4982     \fi%
4983     \fi\fi\fi%
4984 }

```

## 39 The End

`i/codei`

## Appendix A Some things to do when changing version

### Appendix A.1 Migration from ledmac to eledmac

In eledmac, some changes were made in the code to allow for easy customization. This can cause problems for people who have made their own customizations. The next sections explain how to correct this.

If you created your own series using `\addfootins` and `\addfootinsX`, you should instead use the `\newseries` command (see 4.6 p.24). You must delete your `\Xfootnote` command.

If you customized the `\XXXXXXfmt` command, you should see if commands for display options (4.3 p.18) and options in `\Xfootnote` (4.1 p.16) can't do the same things. If not, you can add a new ticket in Github to request a new function it<sup>30</sup>.

If for some reason you don't want to make the modifications to use eledmac new functions, you can continue to use your own `\XXXXXfmt` command, but you must replace:

```
\renewcommand*{XXXXXfmt}[3]
```

with

```
\renewcommandx*{XXXXXfmt}[4][4=Z]
```

If you don't do that, you will see a spurious `[X]`, where `X` is series letter.

If you used a `\protect` command inside a `\footnote` command inside a numbered section, you must change the `\protect` to `\noexpand`. If you don't, the command after the `\protect` won't be displayed.

### Appendix A.2 Migration to eledmac 1.5.1

The version 1.5.1 corrects a bug with `stanzaindentrepetition` (cf. p. 25). This bug had two consequences:

1. `stanzaindentrepetition` didn't work when its value was greater than 2.
2. `stanzaindentrepetition` worked wrong when its value was equal to 2.

So, if you used `stanzaindentrepetition` with value equal to 2, you must change your `\setstanzaindent`. Explanation:

```
\setcounter{stanzaindentrepetition}{2}
\setstanzaindent{5,1,0}
```

---

<sup>30</sup><https://github.com/maieul/ledmac/issues>

This code, in a version older than 1.5.1, made that the first verse had an indent of 0, the second verse of 1, the third verse of 0, the fourth verse of 1 etc.

But instead the code should have assigned the reverse: the first verse had an indent of 1, the second verse of 0, the third verse of 1, the fourth verse of 0 etc.

So version 1.5.1 corrected this bug. If you want to keep the older presentation, you must change:

```
\setcounter{stanzaindentsrepetition}{2}
\setstanzaindents{5,1,0}
```

by:

```
\setcounter{stanzaindentsrepetition}{2}
\setstanzaindents{5,0,1}
```

## Appendix A.3 Migration to eledmac 1.12.0

The migration to eledmac 1.12.0 is easy:

- You must delete all the auxiliary files, and so one, make the normal three runs.
- If you have modified `\l@reg`, which is not advisable, you must rename it to `\@nl@reg`.

Anyway, there is another problem. If you have text in brackets just after `\pstart` or `\pend`, the text will be considered an optional argument of `\pstart` or `\pend` (see 3, p. 11). In this case, just add a `\` between `\pstart/\pend` and the brackets.

The version 1.12.0 adds new best way to manage section title inside numbered text. Please read § 14 (p. 36).

## References

- [Bre96] Herbert Breger. **TABMAC**. October 1996. (Available from CTAN in `macros/plain/contrib/tabmac`)
- [Bur01] John Burt. ‘Typesetting critical editions of poetry’. *TUGboat*, **22**, 4, pp 353–361, December 2001. (Code available from CTAN in `macros/latex/contrib/poemscol`)
- [Eck03] Matthias Eckermann. *The Parallel-Package*. April 2003. (Available from CTAN in `macros/latex/contrib/parallel`)
- [Fai03] Robin Fairbairns. *footmisc — a portmanteau package for customising footnotes in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X*. February 2003. (Available from CTAN in `macros/latex/contrib/footmisc`)
- [LW90] John Lavagnino and Dominik Wujastyk. ‘An overview of EDMAC: a PLAIN TeX format for critical editions’. *TUGboat*, **11**, 4, pp. 623–643, November 1990. (Code available from CTAN in `macros/plain/contrib/edmac`)
- [Lüc03] Uwe Lück. ‘ednotes — critical edition typesetting with LaTeX’. *TUGboat*, **24**, 2, pp. 224–236, 2003. (Code available from CTAN in `macros/latex/contrib/ednotes`)
- [Sul92] Wayne G. Sullivan. *The file edstanza.doc*. June 1992. (Available from CTAN in `macros/plain/contrib/edmac`)
- [Wil02] Peter Wilson. *The memoir class for configurable typesetting*. November 2002. (Available from CTAN in `macros/latex/contrib/memoir`)
- [Wil04] Peter Wilson and Maïeul Rouquette. *Parallel typesetting for critical editions: the eledpar package*. December 2004. (Available from CTAN in `macros/latex/contrib/ledmmac`)

## Index

Numbers written in *italic* refer to the page where the corresponding entry is described; numbers underlined refer to the code line of the definition; numbers in *roman* refer to the code lines where the entry is used.

Symbols		3679, 3680, 3730, 3745, 3766, 3768
<code>\#</code> .....	4604, 4761	<code>\@@ledleftnote</code> ..... 3808, 3816
<code>\&amp;</code> .....	20, 3675,	<code>\@@ledrightnote</code> ..... 3807, 3815

- \@ledsidenote ..... 3809, 3817
- \@line ..... 1764
- \@wrindexm@m ..... 3496,  
3498, 3501, 3508, 3510, 3513,  
3518, 3520, 3523, 3620, 3622, 3625
- \@EDROWFILL@ ..... 4000, 4215
- \@M ..... 1764, 3723, 3735
- \@MM ..... 1437
- \@adv ..... 545, 759
- \@arabic ..... 908
- \@auxout ..... 2972, 3495,  
3497, 3500, 3507, 3509, 3512,  
3517, 3519, 3522, 3619, 3621, 3624
- \@botlist ..... 2925, 2927
- \@cclv 2830, 2834, 2835, 2923, 2924, 2952
- \@chapter ..... 4508
- \@checkend ..... 3656
- \@colht ..... 2811, 2928, 2940
- \@colroom ..... 2928
- \@combinefloats ..... 2806
- \@currentlabel .....  
..... 944, 1990, 2103, 2166, 2276
- \@currenvir ..... 3640, 3643, 3644
- \@currlist ..... 2929, 2932
- \@dbldeferlist ..... 2938, 2943, 2945
- \@dblfloatplacement ..... 2942
- \@dbltoplist ..... 2938, 2939
- \@deferlist ..... 2925, 2934, 2935
- \@docclearpage ..... 2912
- \@edindex@fornote@true ..... 3453
- \@edindex@hyperref ..... 3547, 3582
- \@edrowfill@ ..... 4215
- \@ehb ..... 2931
- \@ehd ..... 158, 161
- \@eled@sectioningfalse ..... 1042
- \@eled@sectioningtrue ..... 1040
- \@emptytoks ..... 3631, 3641
- \@fnpos ..... 2318, 2848, 2851
- \@footnotemark ..... 1923
- \@footnotetext .....  
..... 1919, 1936, 3352, 3388, 3417
- \@freelist ..... 2804
- \@gobble .... 792, 793, 2366, 3653,  
3810–3812, 3979, 3990, 4563–4565
- \@gobblethree ..... 2362, 4561
- \@h ..... 1762
- \@hilfs@count ..... 3915
- \@idxfile ..... 3485, 3496,  
3498, 3501, 3508, 3510, 3513,  
3518, 3520, 3523, 3620, 3622, 3625
- \@ifclassloaded .....  
..... 38, 1918, 2879, 2904, 3472
- \@ifnextchar ..... 3475, 3900
- \@ifpackageloaded .....  
..... 41, 2826, 3432, 3435, 3614
- \@iiiminipage ..... 3341
- \@iiiparbox ..... 3368
- \@index@command ..... 3457, 3459–  
3461, 3464–3466, 3543, 3544,  
3553, 3556, 3594, 3598, 3620, 3622
- \@index@command@ 3460, 3461, 3465, 3466
- \@index@parenthesis .....  
..... 3458, 3462, 3467, 3593, 3597
- \@index@txt ..... 3456, 3543, 3544,  
3547, 3553, 3556, 3611, 3620, 3622
- \@indexfile ..... 3552, 3555, 3559
- \@inputcheck ..... 439
- \@insert ..... 1327–1329, 1363–1365
- \@k ..... 1762
- \@kludgeins ..... 2808, 2876
- \@l@dttempcnta ... 36, 579, 581, 583,  
584, 1110, 1111, 1113, 1115,  
1118, 1119, 1134, 1170–1174,  
1176, 1183–1187, 1189, 1192,  
1195, 1197, 1201, 1232, 1236,  
1240, 1247, 1251, 1255, 1336,  
1340, 1344, 1347, 1350, 1353, 1354
- \@l@dttempcntb .....  
.. 36, 298, 299, 304, 308, 312,  
316, 319, 342, 343, 350, 354,  
358, 360, 368, 369, 1168, 1180,  
1201, 1209–1211, 1213, 1232,  
1236, 1240, 1247, 1251, 1255,  
1285–1287, 1289, 1342, 1343,  
3076, 3078, 3080, 3086, 3090,  
3094, 3098, 3101, 3188–3190,  
3193–3195, 3198, 3206–3208,  
3211–3213, 3216, 3277–3279, 3281
- \@lab ..... 662, 2963, 3004
- \@latexerr ..... 2931
- \@led@extranofeet .. 2901, 2910, 2918
- \@led@nofootfalse ..... 2914–2916
- \@led@nofoottrue ..... 2913
- \@led@testifnofoot ..... 2912
- \@ledgroupfalse ..... 3397, 3426
- \@ledgrouptrue ..... 3387, 3415
- \@line@num ..... 3911, 4009
- \@listdepth ..... 3354
- \@lock . 209, 419, 493, 495, 497, 510,  
612, 613, 615, 616, 632, 633,

- 635, 1014, 1080, 1140, 1142,  
1143, 1145, 1244, 1259, 1261, 1263
- `\@lopL` ..... [529](#)
- `\@lopR` ..... [529](#)
- `\@makechapterhead` .. 4504–4507, [4604](#)
- `\@makecol` ..... 2883
- `\@makefcolumn` .. 2934, 2935, 2943, 2945
- `\@makeschapterhead` .. 4500–4503, [4604](#)
- `\@makespecialcolbox` ..... 2809
- `\@maxdepth` ..... 2824, 2833
- `\@mem@extranofeet` ..... [2905](#)
- `\@mem@nofootfalse` ..... 2906, 2907
- `\@mem@old@ssect` ..... [4604](#)
- `\@midlist` ..... 2804, 2805
- `\@minipagefalse` ..... 3365
- `\@minipagerestore` ..... 3355
- `\@minus` ..... 2459, 2460,  
4438, 4446, 4454, 4462, 4470, 4478
- `\@mpargs` ..... 3345, 3368
- `\@mpfn` ..... 3351, 3387, 3416
- `\@mpfnpos` ..... [2318](#), 3301, 3304
- `\@mpfootins` ..... 3361,  
3371, 3377, 3379, 3383, 3393, 3422
- `\@mpfootnotetext` ... 3352, 3388, 3417
- `\@mplistdepth` ..... 3354
- `\@nameuse` ..... 375,  
377, 1442, 1443, 1571, 1580,  
1584, 1672, 1673, 1715, 1724,  
1728, 1819, 1828, 1832, 1883,  
1892, 1896, 1966, 1970, 1972,  
1977, 1980, 1981, 1987, 1991,  
1995, 1999, 2011, 2017, 2020,  
2029, 2033, 2036, 2048, 2054,  
2100, 2104, 2114, 2122, 2131,  
2135, 2163, 2167, 2177, 2185,  
2194, 2198, 2242, 2243, 2254,  
2262, 2263, 2268, 2277, 2281,  
2293, 2303, 2307, 2340, 2341,  
2343, 2344, 2349, 2891, 2892,  
2894, 2895, 2897, 2899, 3325, 3327
- `\@next@page` ..... 703, 704
- `\@nl` .. [468](#), 704, 706, 708, 715, 719, 722
- `\@nl@reg` ..... [468](#)
- `\@nbreakfalse` ..... 918, 1039
- `\@nbreaktrue` ..... 916, 920, 1039
- `\@noeled@ssectrue` ..... 4764
- `\@noneed@Footnotefalse` ..... 859
- `\@noneed@Footnotetrue` ..... 2530
- `\@nowrindex` ..... 3484
- `\@oldnbreak` ..... 916, 918, 971
- `\@opcol` ..... 2935, 2953
- `\@opxtrafeetii` ..... 2860, [2861](#), 2890
- `\@outputbox` .....  
2323, 2324, 2338, 2339, 2811,  
2813, 2814, 2830, 2832, 2858, 2859
- `\@outputpage` ..... 2944
- `\@parboxrestore` .... 1447, 1985, 3350
- `\@patchforledchapter` ..... [4435](#)
- `\@pboxswfalse` ..... 3343
- `\@pend` ..... [529](#)
- `\@pendR` ..... [529](#)
- `\@plus` ..... 1458,  
2110, 2173, 2459, 2460, 4438,  
4440, 4446, 4448, 4454, 4456,  
4462, 4464, 4470, 4472, 4478, 4480
- `\@ref` ..... [647](#), 730, 739
- `\@ref@reg` ..... [649](#)
- `\@reinserts` ..... 2884
- `\@schapter` ..... 4509
- `\@sect` ..... [4604](#)
- `\@series` ..... 433, 437,  
2326, 2331, [2416](#), 2418, 2545,  
2554, 2555, 2566, 2568, 2582,  
2596, 2863, 2870, 2909, 2917,  
3311, 3332, 3337, 3340, 3797,  
3803, 3977, 3982, 3988, 3993, 4008
- `\@set` ..... [560](#), 764
- `\@setminipage` ..... 3356
- `\@showidx` ..... 3492, 3616
- `\@ssect` ..... [4604](#)
- `\@startstanza` ..... [3725](#)
- `\@stopstanza` ..... [3725](#)
- `\@tag` ..... [800](#), [817](#), 840, 883, 1945
- `\@tempboxa` .... 2923, 2924, 3346, 3368
- `\@tempdima` ..... 2834, 3344, 3348
- `\@templ@d` ..... 3267, 3269
- `\@templ@n` ..... 3268, 3269
- `\@textbottom` ..... 2816
- `\@texttop` ..... 2812
- `\@toplist` ..... 2925, 2926
- `\@whilenum` ..... 4190
- `\@whilesw` ..... 2935, 2944
- `\@wredindex` ..... 3535, [3537](#), 3907
- `\@x@sf` 1912, 1915, 1926, 1932, 1956, 1962
- `\@xloop` ..... 1361, [1368](#)
- `\@xympar` ..... [3064](#)
- `\^` ..... 462
- `\_` ..... 3586, 3588, 4223, 4228, 4236

## A

`\abs@line@verse` 4975, 4976, 4979, 4980  
`\abs@prevline` ..... 4954, 4955  
`\absline@num` ..... 203, 418,  
 473, 476, 479, 526, 574, 577,  
 586, 600, 622, 644, 654, 701,  
 702, 711, 713, 1071, 1092, 1093,  
 1101, 1326, 4944, 4946, 4950,  
 4953, 4954, 4962, 4963, 4975, 4979  
 Abu Kamil Shuja' b. Aslam ..... 5  
`\actionlines@list` .....  
 ..... 421, 445, 448, 455, 574,  
 577, 586, 600, 622, 644, 1123, 1126  
`\actions@list` .....  
 . 421, 449, 456, 575, 584, 588,  
 590, 602, 611, 624, 631, 645, 1127  
`\add@inserts` ..... 1030, 1037, 1315  
`\add@inserts@next` ..... 1315  
`\add@penalties` ..... 1336  
`\addcontentsline` ..... 4561  
`\addfootins` ..... 2887  
`\addfootinsX` ..... 2334  
`\addtocounter` ..... 972  
`\addtol@denvbody` ... 3635, 3657, 3659  
 Adelard II ..... 4  
`\advancelabel@refs` ..... 2969, 2977  
`\advanceline` . 10, 74, 77, 759, 782, 793  
`\advancepageno` ..... 2799  
`\Aendnote` ..... 12  
`\affixline@num` ..... 1020, 1162  
`\affixpstart@num` ..... 1028, 1274  
`\affixside@note` 1030, 1037, 3245, 3254  
`\Afootnote` ..... 12  
`\afterlemmaseparator` ..... 16  
`\afternote` ..... 18  
`\afternumberinfootnote` ..... 15  
`\afterruleX` ..... 18  
`\aftersymlinenum` ..... 15  
`\afterXrule` ..... 18  
`\allowbreak` .... 1812, 1872, 2115, 2178  
`\ampersand` ..... 23, 3675, 3768  
`\appto` ..... 3260, 3261  
`\apptocmd` ..... 4502, 4506,  
 4508, 4509, 4621, 4649, 4712, 4740  
`\AtBeginDocument` .....  
 .... 2826, 3000, 3433, 3614, 4605  
`\autopar` ..... 7, 95, 251, 981  
`\autopar@pausetrue` ..... 247  
`\autopar@false` ..... 238, 982  
`\autopar@true` ..... 995

## B

`\ballast` ..... 35  
`\ballast@count` . 1087, 1090, 1095, 1336  
 Beeton, Barbara Ann Neuhaus Friend 8  
`\beforeeledchapter` ..... 4567  
`\beforeledchapter` ..... 4510  
`\beforelemmaseparator` ..... 16  
`\beforenotesX` ..... 18  
`\beforenumberinfootnote` ..... 15  
`\beforesymlinenum` ..... 15  
`\beforeXnotes` ..... 18  
`\beginnumbering` . 6, 175, 262, 923, 992  
`\beginnumberingR` ..... 987  
`\Bendnote` ..... 12  
`\Bfootnote` ..... 12  
`\bfseries` ..... 908  
`\bhooknoteX` ..... 17  
`\bhookXendnote` ..... 17  
`\bhookXnote` ..... 17  
`\body` ..... 1369, 1370, 3677, 3767  
`\bodyfootmarkA` ..... 27  
`\box` .. 1063, 1065, 1667, 1682, 1744,  
 1763, 2258, 2272, 2830, 2924, 2952  
`\boxlinenum` ..... 15  
`\boxmaxdepth` ..... 2833  
`\boxsymlinenum` ..... 16  
 Bredon, Simon ..... 4  
 Breger, Herbert ..... 2, 5, 172  
 Brey, Gerhard ..... 4, 5  
`\brokenpenalty` ..... 977  
 Burt, John ..... 3  
 Busard, Hubert L. L. .... 4  
`\bypage@false` ..... 266, 280, 286  
`\bypage@true` ..... 266, 274  
`\bypstart@false` ..... 266, 275, 287  
`\bypstart@true` ..... 266, 281

## C

`\c@addcolcount` ..... 4184  
`\c@ballast` ..... 1087, 1095  
`\c@firstlinenum` .....  
 ..... 325, 1182, 1184, 1187, 1189  
`\c@firstsublinenum` .....  
 ..... 329, 1169, 1171, 1174, 1176  
`\c@labidx` ..... 3438  
`\c@linenumincrement` .. 325, 1185, 1186  
`\c@mpfootnote` ..... 3351, 3387, 3416  
`\c@page` ..... 706,  
 708, 714, 717, 719, 722, 3122, 3130  
`\c@pstart` ..... 908, 2973

- `\c@sublinenumincrement` 329, 1172, 1173
- `\Cendnote` ..... 12
- `\centerline` ..... 4120, 4125, 4131, 4136, 4142, 4147, 4369, 4371
- `\Cfootnote` ..... 12
- `\ch@ck@l@ck` ..... 1199, 1228
- `\ch@cksub@l@ck` ..... 1178, 1228
- `\ch@pt@c` ..... 4487
- `\changes` ..... 2573, 2576, 3252
- `\chapter` ..... 4491, 4497, 4511, 4512, 4604, 4873, 4877, 4883, 4884
- `\chaptermark` ..... 4563, 4874, 4878
- `\char` ..... 3675
- `\chardef` ..... 2411, 3677, 3679
- `\check@pb@in@verse` ..... 1019, 4971
- Chester, Robert of ..... 4
- Claassens, Geert H. M. .... 5
- class 1 feet ..... 126, 141
- class 2 feet ..... 141, 142
- `\cleaders` ..... 4179
- `\cleardoublepage` ..... 4510, 4511, 4570, 4670, 4672
- `\clearforchapter` ... 4568, 4606, 4608
- `\closeout` 240, 681, 687, 690, 694, 2354
- `\clubpenalty` ..... 977, 1340
- `\color@begingroup` ..... 1448, 1678, 1986, 2268, 2837, 3347
- `\color@endgroup` ..... 1449, 1678, 1987, 2268, 2841, 3366
- `\columnwidth` ..... 1446, 1639, 1984, 3349, 3403
- `\content` ..... 2474, 2514, 2531, 3143, 3158, 3173
- Copernicus, Nicolaus ..... 4
- `\count` 1608, 1613, 1625, 1631, 1787, 1790, 1852, 1880, 2068, 2073, 2089, 2092, 2153, 2156, 2213, 2218
- `\countdef` ..... 2799
- `\cr` ..... 1765, 1768
- `\CRITEXT` ..... 3891
- `\critext` ..... 38, 794, 803, 816, 3893, 3975, 4004
- `\cs` ..... 804, 809, 813, 1026, 2542, 2560, 2576, 2577, 2688, 3248, 3250
- `\csdef` ..... 3981, 4873, 4874, 4877, 4878, 4883, 4884, 4892, 4893, 4896, 4897, 4901, 4902, 4910, 4911, 4914, 4915, 4919, 4920, 4927, 4928, 4931, 4932
- `\csexpandonce` ... 1413, 1424, 1946, 2041, 2486, 2499, 2518, 2534, 3146, 3150, 3161, 3165, 3176, 3180
- `\csgdef` ... 1601, 1619, 1776, 1841, 2058, 2079, 2143, 2206, 2422–2440, 2445, 2447, 2448, 2450–2452, 2454–2465, 2509, 2526, 2590
- `\cslet` ..... 2453
- `\csletcs` .. 2537, 2541, 3310, 3336, 3791, 3801, 3976, 3987, 3992, 4007
- `\csnumdef` ..... 957, 959
- `\csundef` ..... 432, 1043
- `\csuse` ..... 1041, 1430, 1431, 1444, 1445, 1456, 1462, 1465–1467, 1473, 1559, 1565, 1568, 1581, 1585, 1588, 1609, 1610, 1614, 1615, 1626, 1627, 1632, 1633, 1636, 1649, 1654, 1659, 1660, 1674, 1675, 1693, 1700–1702, 1710, 1711, 1725, 1729, 1735, 1736, 1751, 1753–1755, 1757, 1795, 1800, 1804, 1808–1810, 1814, 1829, 1833, 1835, 1855, 1860, 1864, 1868–1870, 1873, 1874, 1893, 1897, 1899, 1973, 1974, 1977, 1982, 1983, 1994, 1995, 2005, 2012, 2030, 2034, 2040, 2069, 2070, 2074, 2075, 2097, 2107, 2108, 2114, 2117, 2132, 2136, 2161, 2169, 2171, 2177, 2180, 2195, 2199, 2214, 2215, 2219, 2220, 2223, 2235, 2244, 2250, 2251, 2264, 2265, 2281, 2290, 2304, 2308, 2315, 2325, 2330, 2362, 2450, 2451, 2485, 2498, 2504, 2516–2518, 2592, 2593, 2603, 2675, 2726, 2732, 2743, 2745–2749, 2752, 2753, 2757, 2762, 2766, 2767, 2771, 2776, 2780, 2781, 2786, 2791, 2862, 2869, 2906, 2907, 2915, 2916, 3322, 3330, 3339, 3470, 3471, 3572, 3793, 3794, 3981, 4583, 4599, 4911, 4915
- `\csxdef` 1392, 1394, 1398, 1400, 1407, 1410, 1413, 1418, 1421, 1424, 2793
- `\ctab` ..... 3773, 4328, 4419
- `\ctabtext` ..... 3777, 4338, 4423

**D**

- \dcolerr ..... 3867, 3879
- \dcoli ... 3837, 3869, 3870, 4227, 4232
- \dcolii ..... 3838, 3870
- \dcoliii ..... 3839, 3870
- \dcoliv ..... 3840, 3871
- \dcolix ..... 3845, 3872
- \dcolv ..... 3841, 3871
- \dcolvi ..... 3842, 3871
- \dcolvii ..... 3843, 3872
- \dcolviii ..... 3844, 3872
- \dcolx ..... 3846, 3872
- \dcolxi ..... 3847, 3873
- \dcolxii ..... 3848, 3873
- \dcolxiii ..... 3849, 3873
- \dcolxiv ..... 3850, 3874
- \dcolxix ..... 3855, 3875
- \dcolxv ..... 3851, 3874
- \dcolxvi ..... 3852, 3874
- \dcolxvii ..... 3853, 3875
- \dcolxviii ..... 3854, 3875
- \dcolxx ..... 3856, 3875
- \dcolxxi ..... 3857, 3876
- \dcolxxii ..... 3858, 3876
- \dcolxxiii ..... 3859, 3876
- \dcolxxiv ..... 3860, 3877
- \dcolxxix ..... 3865, 3878
- \dcolxxv ..... 3861, 3877
- \dcolxxvi ..... 3862, 3877
- \dcolxxvii ..... 3863, 3878
- \dcolxxviii ..... 3864, 3878
- \dcolxxx ..... 3866, 3878
- \DeclareOption ..... 11–16
- Dekker, Dirk-Jan ..... 3, 36
- \Dendnote ..... 12
- \Dfootnote ..... 12
- \dimen ..... 750, 751,  
753–755, 757, 1609, 1614, 1626,  
1632, 1637–1639, 1642, 1770–  
1772, 1788, 1791, 1853, 1881,  
2069, 2074, 2090, 2093, 2154,  
2157, 2214, 2219, 2224–2226, 2229
- \dimen@ ..... 2813, 2815
- \dingdef ..... 3325, 3327, 3377, 3379
- \disable@familiarnotes .. 3789, 3821
- \disable@notes ..... 3819, 4024,  
4043, 4059, 4075, 4090, 4107, 4301
- \disable@sidenotes ..... 3806, 3820
- \disablel@dtabfeet .....  
..... 4022, 4041, 4057, 4073,  
4088, 4105, 4234, 4241, 4246,  
4254, 4259, 4267, 4285, 4302, 4426
- \displaystyle ..... 3925, 4025,  
4028, 4060, 4063, 4091, 4094,  
4234, 4246, 4259, 4349, 4401, 4402
- \displaywidowpenalty ..... 978
- \divide .. 1172, 1185, 1639, 1771, 2226
- \do@actions ..... 1072, 1099
- \do@actions@fixedcode ... 1120, 1133
- \do@actions@next ..... 1099
- \do@ballast ..... 1073, 1087
- \do@insidelinehook ..... 1029, 1053
- \do@line ..... 960, 1004
- \do@linehook ..... 1008, 1053
- \do@lockoff ..... 621
- \do@lockoffL ..... 621
- \do@lockon ..... 592
- \do@lockonL ..... 592
- \docsvlist .... 1388, 2414, 2585, 2599
- \doedindexlabel 3443, 3486, 3532, 3904
- \doendnotes ..... 24, 2404
- \dolistloop .....  
.. 433, 437, 2326, 2331, 2554,  
2566, 2582, 2596, 2863, 2870,  
2909, 2917, 3265, 3285, 3292,  
3311, 3332, 3337, 3340, 3797,  
3803, 3977, 3982, 3988, 3993, 4008
- \doreinextrafeeti ... 2322, 2342, 2865
- \doreinextrafeetii .. 2866, 2868, 2893
- \dosplits ..... 1762
- Downes, Michael ..... 35, 105, 107
- \doxtrafeet ..... 2847
- \doxtrafeeti .....  
..... 2322, 2337, 2849, 2852, 2853
- \doxtrafeetii .. 2849, 2852, 2853, 2857
- \dp ..... 1438,  
1665, 1680, 2256, 2270, 2813, 2834
- \dummy@edtext ..... 786, 795,  
4874, 4878, 4893, 4897, 4911, 4915
- \dummy@edtext@showlemma .....  
..... 787, 4616, 4644,  
4707, 4735, 4873, 4877, 4883, 4884
- \dummy@ref ..... 648, 658
- \dummy@text ..... 785, 794

**E**

- \edaftertab .....  
.. 31, 185, 3779, 4274, 4310, 4328
- edarrayc (environment) ..... 29, 4418
- edarrayl (environment) ..... 29, 4418

- edarrayr (environment) . . . . . 29, 4418
- \EDATAB . . . . . 4368, 4376
- \edatab . . . . . 3780, 4374
- \edatabell . . . . . 3781, 4358
- \edatleft . . . . . 31, 3782, 4159
- \edatright . . . . . 31, 3783, 4167
- \edbeforetab . . . . .
- .. 31, 185, 3778, 4274, 4310, 4328
- \edfilldimen . . . . .
- .. 4181, 4191, 4192, 4194, 4217
- \edfont@info . . . . . 874, 877, 881
- \EDINDEX . . . . . 3897
- \edindex . . . . . 28, 3473, 3530, 3897,
- 3978, 3983, 3989, 3994, 4006,
- 4015, 4034, 4052, 4068, 4083, 4100
- \edindexlab . . . . . 29, 3438,
- 3444, 3447, 3595, 3599, 3604, 3606
- \EDLABEL . . . . . 3895
- \edlabel . . . . . 25, 792, 2962,
- 3444, 3895, 3996, 4012, 4014,
- 4033, 4051, 4067, 4082, 4099,
- 4233, 4240, 4245, 4253, 4258, 4266
- \edmakelabel . . . . . 26, 3062
- \edpageref . . . . . 25, 3013
- \edrowfill . 30, 3786, 3997, 4000, 4215
- \EDTAB . . . . . 4364, 4400
- \edtabcolsep . . . . . 30, 3954,
- 4029, 4048, 4063, 4079, 4095,
- 4112, 4192, 4248, 4261, 4270, 4386
- \EDTABINDENT . . . . . 4381, 4394
- \edtabindent . . . . . 4222,
- 4226, 4231, 4242, 4255, 4268, 4390
- \EDTABtext . . . . . 4408
- edtabularc (environment) . . . . . 29, 4422
- edtabularl (environment) . . . . . 29, 4422
- edtabularr (environment) . . . . . 29, 4422
- \EDTEXT . . . . . 3891
- \edtext . . . . . 11, 795,
- 838, 1939, 2052, 3118, 3119,
- 3137, 3891, 3986, 4005, 4615,
- 4616, 4622, 4643, 4644, 4650,
- 4706, 4707, 4713, 4734, 4735,
- 4741, 4873, 4874, 4877, 4878,
- 4883, 4884, 4893, 4897, 4911, 4915
- \edvertdots . . . . . 32, 3785, 4178
- \edvertline . . . . . 32, 3784, 4176
- \Eendnote . . . . . 12
- \Efootnote . . . . . 12
- \eled@chapter . . . . .
- .. 4769, 4773, 4821, 4825, 4868
- \eled@section . . . . .
- .. 4782, 4786, 4834, 4838, 4868
- \eled@sectioning@out . . . . .
- .. 197, 240, 4762, 4772, 4785,
- 4798, 4810, 4824, 4837, 4850, 4863
- \eled@sectioningR@out 4768, 4781,
- 4794, 4806, 4820, 4833, 4846, 4859
- \eled@sections@@ . . . . . 194, 1021, 1039
- \eled@subsection . . . . .
- .. 4795, 4799, 4847, 4851, 4868
- \eled@subsubsection . . . . .
- .. 4807, 4811, 4860, 4864, 4868
- \eledchapter . . . . . 4765
- \eledchapter\* . . . . . 4765
- \Eledmac . . . . . 2539
- \eledmac@after@imakeidx@true . . 3432
- \eledmac@error . . . . . 43,
- 45, 47, 49, 61, 84, 87, 90, 93,
- 95, 147, 149, 152, 154, 156, 158, 161
- \eledmac@warning . . . . .
- .. 42, 64, 66, 68, 70, 72,
- 74, 77, 80, 82, 98, 100, 102, 105,
- 107, 109, 111, 114, 117, 121,
- 123, 128, 130, 135, 137, 141, 144
- \eledsection . . . . . 4672, 4765
- \eledsection\* . . . . . 4765
- \eledsubsection . . . . . 4765
- \eledsubsection\* . . . . . 4765
- \eledsubsubsection . . . . . 4765
- \eledsubsubsection\* . . . . . 4765
- \emph . . . . . 3470, 3471
- \empty . . . . . 34, 165, 225, 228, 400,
- 401, 445, 828, 850, 872, 886,
- 890, 896, 930, 1123, 1181, 1197,
- 1317–1319, 1330, 1362, 2964, 3690
- \enablel@dtabfeet . . . . . 4282,
- 4298, 4318, 4326, 4336, 4344, 4426
- \end@lemmas . . . . . 784, 828, 829, 850, 851
- \endashchar . . . . . 19, 1470, 1550, 2396
- \endgraf . . . . . 955, 997, 1001
- \endline@num . . . . . 426, 665, 671
- \endlock 10, 774, 791, 3734, 3751, 3759
- \endminipage . . . . . 3358
- \endnumbering . . . . . 6, 178, 218, 248, 261
- \endpage@num . . . . . 426, 664, 671
- \endprint . . . . . 24, 2362, 2407
- \endquotation . . . . . 4435
- \endquote . . . . . 4435
- \endstanzaextra . . . . . 23, 3725
- \endsub . . . . . 10, 750, 790

- \endsubline@num ..... [426](#), [666](#), [672](#)
- \enlargethispage ..... [4956](#), [4964](#)
- \enskip ..... [2363](#)
- \enspace . [1995](#), [2114](#), [2177](#), [2281](#), [2363](#)
- environments:
  - edarrayc ..... [29](#), [4418](#)
  - edarrayl ..... [29](#), [4418](#)
  - edarrayr ..... [29](#), [4418](#)
  - edtabularc ..... [29](#), [4422](#)
  - edtabularl ..... [29](#), [4422](#)
  - edtabularr ..... [29](#), [4422](#)
  - ledgroup ..... [24](#), [3385](#)
  - ledgroupsize ..... [24](#), [3400](#)
  - minipage ..... [24](#)
  - Euclid ..... [4](#)
  - \ExecuteOptions ..... [17](#)
  - \expandonce ..... [3537](#)
  - \extensionchars .... [34](#), [163](#), [184](#), [255](#)
  - \extractendline@ ..... [2717](#), [2720](#)
  - \extractendsubline@ ..... [2718](#), [2720](#)
  - \extractline@ ..... [2715](#), [2720](#), [2723](#)
  - \extractsubline@ ... [2716](#), [2720](#), [2723](#)
- F**
- \f@encoding ..... [881](#)
- \f@family ..... [881](#)
- \f@series ..... [881](#)
- \f@shape ..... [881](#)
- \f@x@l@cks ..... [1222](#), [1228](#)
- Fairbairns, Robin ..... [27](#)
- \falseverse ..... [141](#), [3725](#)
- \first@linenum@out@false ... [676](#), [682](#)
- \first@linenum@out@true ..... [676](#)
- \firstlinenum ..... [8](#), [9](#), [334](#)
- \firstseries ..... [2549](#)
- \firstsublinenum ..... [8](#), [9](#), [334](#)
- \fix@page ..... [469](#), [515](#)
- \flag@end ..... [725](#), [824](#), [834](#), [835](#), [846](#), [856](#), [857](#), [862](#)
- \flag@start ..... [725](#), [823](#), [824](#), [835](#), [845](#), [846](#), [857](#)
- \flagstanza ..... [23](#), [3763](#)
- \floatingpenalty ..... [1437](#)
- \flush@notes ..... [965](#), [1360](#), [3318](#)
- \flush@notesR ..... [3316](#)
- \fnpos ..... [28](#), [2318](#)
- Folkerts, Menso ..... [4](#)
- \fontencoding ..... [1374](#)
- \fontfamily ..... [1374](#)
- \fontseries ..... [1374](#)
- \fontshape ..... [1374](#)
- \footfootmarkA ..... [27](#)
- \footfudgefiddle [36](#), [1635](#), [1639](#), [2226](#)
- \footins . [2829](#), [2836](#), [2840](#), [2874](#), [2914](#)
- \footnormal ..... [1591](#), [2510](#), [2889](#)
- \footnormalX .... [27](#), [2057](#), [2336](#), [2527](#)
- \footnote@luatexpardir ..... [1454](#)
- \footnote@luatextextdir . [1453](#), [1475](#)
- \footnoteA ..... [27](#)
- \footnoteB ..... [27](#)
- \footnoteC ..... [27](#)
- \footnoteD ..... [27](#)
- \footnoteE ..... [27](#)
- \footnotelang@lua .. [1390](#), [2478](#), [2491](#)
- \footnotelang@poly .. [1404](#), [2482](#), [2495](#)
- \footnoteoptions@ ..... [1377](#), [2483](#), [2487](#), [2496](#), [2501](#)
- \footnoterule .. [1567](#), [2014](#), [2839](#), [3373](#)
- \footnotesize ..... [2702](#), [3115](#), [3116](#)
- \footparagraph ..... [14](#), [1618](#)
- \footparagraphX ..... [27](#), [2205](#)
- \footsplitskips ..... [1432](#), [1435](#), [1661](#), [1676](#), [1796](#), [1856](#), [1975](#), [2098](#), [2162](#), [2252](#), [2266](#)
- \footthreecol ..... [14](#), [1775](#)
- \footthreecolX ..... [27](#), [2142](#)
- \foottwocol ..... [14](#), [1840](#)
- \foottwocolX ..... [27](#), [2078](#)
- \foottwocolX ..... [2078](#)
- \fullstop ..... [19](#), [390](#), [1470](#), [1547](#), [1549](#), [1551](#), [1553](#), [2395](#), [2399](#)
- G**
- \g@addto@macro ..... [2337](#), [2342](#), [2345](#), [2348](#), [2880](#), [2881](#), [2890](#), [2893](#), [2896](#), [2898](#), [2905](#), [3473](#)
- Gädeke, Nora ..... [5](#)
- \get@edindex@hyperref ... [3546](#), [3582](#)
- \get@index@command ..... [3455](#), [3542](#), [3551](#), [3591](#), [3602](#), [3617](#)
- \get@linelistfile ..... [442](#), [457](#)
- \getline@num ..... [1012](#), [1070](#)
- \gl@p .. [412](#), [448](#), [449](#), [829](#), [851](#), [876](#), [1126](#), [1127](#), [1323](#), [1327](#), [1363](#), [2967](#)
- \gl@poff ..... [412](#), [413](#)
- H**
- \hangafter ..... [3721](#)
- \hangindentX ..... [17](#)
- \hangingsymbol .... [22](#), [23](#), [3664](#), [3671](#)

- \hb@xt@ . . . . . 1029, 1032,  
1063, 1065, 4217, 4222, 4226,  
4231, 4242, 4255, 4268, 4347, 4349
  - \hfilneg . . . . . 1764
  - \Hilfsbox . . . . . 3832
  - \hilfsbox . . . . . 3832, 3887, 3888,  
3925, 3937, 4011, 4025, 4044,  
4060, 4076, 4091, 4108, 4233,  
4235, 4240, 4244, 4245, 4247,  
4253, 4257, 4258, 4260, 4266, 4269
  - \hilfscount . . . . 3832, 4385–4387, 4393
  - \HILFSskip . . . . . 4378
  - \Hilfsskip . . . . . 4223,  
4227, 4228, 4232, 4235, 4236,  
4243, 4244, 4247–4249, 4256,  
4257, 4260–4262, 4269–4271,  
4378, 4384, 4386, 4392, 4396, 4397
  - \hilfsskip . . . . .  
. 3832, 4010, 4011, 4028, 4047,  
4063, 4079, 4094, 4111, 4395–4397
  - \hsizethreecol . . . . . 17
  - \hsizethreecolX . . . . . 17
  - \hsizetwocol . . . . . 17
  - \hsizetwocolX . . . . . 17
  - \Hy@temp@A . . . . . 3504, 3505
  - \HyInd@ParenLeft . . . . . 3505
  - \hyperlink 3009, 3010, 3571, 3572, 3575
  - \hyperlinkformat . . . . . 3569, 3579
  - \hyperlinkformatR . . . . . 3578
  - \hyperlinkR . . . . . 3574
  - \hyperpage . . . . . 3471
  - \hypertarget . . . . . 2974
- I**
- \if@edindex@fornote@ . . . . . 3450,  
3494, 3506, 3516, 3541, 3550, 3618
  - \if@edindex@fornote@true . . . . . 3450
  - \if@eled@sectioning . . . . .  
4572, 4574, 4589, 4607, 4671, 4689
  - \if@fcolmade . . . . . 2935, 2944
  - \if@firstcolumn 1203, 1279, 2937, 3271
  - \if@led@nofoot . . . . . 2901, 2922
  - \if@ledgroup . . . . . 686, 3385
  - \if@nobreak . . . . . 915
  - \if@noeled@sec . . . . . 195, 239, 4763
  - \if@noneed@Footnote . . . . . 725
  - \if@openright . . . . . 4570, 4670, 4672
  - \if@RTL . . . . . 27, 824,  
835, 846, 857, 1044, 1406, 1417,  
1667, 1977, 4576, 4592, 4688, 4690
  - \ifautopar . . . . . 247, 934,  
981, 4442, 4450, 4458, 4466,  
4474, 4482, 4518, 4531, 4540, 4553
  - \ifautopar@pause . . . . . 251, 1003
  - \IfBeginWith . . . . . 3459, 3464
  - \ifbypage@ . . . . . 266, 520, 1104, 1521
  - \ifbypstart@ . . . . . 266, 961
  - \ifcsdef 27, 436, 1752, 2737, 2974, 3583
  - \ifcsempy . . . . .  
1465, 1700, 1754, 1808, 1868, 2741
  - \ifcsequal . . . . . 2739
  - \ifcsstring 1707, 1708, 1732, 1733,  
2286, 2287, 2311, 2312, 2553, 2565
  - \ifdef . . . . . 3009
  - \ifdefstring . . . . . 1475
  - \ifdim 751, 753, 755, 757, 1911, 3887, 4385
  - \ifdimequal . . . . . 1556, 1646,  
2002, 2232, 2746, 2753, 2767, 2781
  - \ifeledmac@after@imakeidx@ 3431, 3434
  - \ifeledmac@check@imakeidx@ . . . . 3431
  - \iffirst@linenum@out@ . . . . . 676, 680
  - \ifFN@bottom . . . . . 2826, 2836
  - \ifhbox . . . . . 1743, 1748
  - \ifhmode . . . . . 1925, 1932, 1955, 1962
  - \ifinserthangingsymbol . . . 3667, 4972
  - \ifinstanza . 936, 998, 3664, 3670, 4972
  - \ifl@d@dash . . . . . 1493, 1550, 2396
  - \ifl@d@elin . . . . . 1493,  
1539, 1552, 1553, 2386, 2398, 2399
  - \ifl@d@esl . . . . . 1493, 1553, 2399
  - \ifl@d@pnum . . . . .  
1493, 1527, 1547, 1551, 2374, 2397
  - \ifl@d@ssub . . . . . 1493, 1549, 2395
  - \ifl@dend@ . . . . . 2351, 2357
  - \ifl@dmemoir . . . . . 37, 3898, 4486, 4567
  - \ifl@dpairing . . . 167, 187, 222, 242,  
1483, 1572, 1578, 1716, 1722,  
1820, 1826, 1884, 1890, 2021,  
2027, 2123, 2129, 2186, 2192,  
2294, 2301, 3314, 3323, 3375,  
4438, 4446, 4454, 4462, 4470, 4478
  - \ifl@dskipnumber . . . . . 777, 1164
  - \ifl@dstartendok . . . . . 4188, 4198
  - \ifl@imakeidx . . . . . 40, 3540
  - \iflabelpstart . . . . . 911, 944
  - \ifledfinal . . . . . 4, 28, 35
  - \ifledgroupnotesL@ . . . . . 1163, 3429
  - \ifledgroupnotesR@ . . . . . 3429
  - \iflednopbinverse . . . . . 7, 4971, 4972
  - \ifledplinenum . . . . . 2701

- \ifledRcol ..... 167,  
728, 863, 984, 1484, 2476, 3077,  
3145, 3160, 3175, 3315, 3324,  
3376, 3592, 3603, 4767, 4780,  
4793, 4805, 4819, 4832, 4845, 4858
- \ifledRcol@ .....  
... 120, 127, 134, 167, 3187, 3205
- \ifledsecnolinenum ..... 9,  
4440, 4448, 4456, 4464, 4472, 4480
- \ifleftnoteup ..... 3227, 3240
- \ifluatex ..... 1452, 1474, 2477, 2490
- \ifnoquotation@ ..... 6, 4514
- \ifnoteschanged@ ..... 232, 430
- \ifnumberedpar@ ... 901, 925, 951,  
1938, 1944, 2039, 2051, 2475,  
2533, 2534, 3066, 3144, 3159, 3174
- \ifnumbering ..... 166,  
176, 219, 250, 269, 921, 948, 990
- \ifnumberingR ..... 167, 985
- \ifnumberline ..... 869, 1074, 1163
- \ifnumberpstart ... 909, 935, 968, 998
- \ifnumequal .... 962, 1751, 1753, 3258
- \ifnumgreater ..... 3266, 3286, 3293
- \ifodd ..... 1213,  
1289, 3122, 3130, 3198, 3216, 3281
- \ifparapparatus@ ..... 4
- \ifparledgroup .... 8, 1572, 1577,  
1716, 1721, 1820, 1825, 1884,  
1889, 2021, 2026, 2123, 2128,  
2186, 2191, 2294, 2300, 3323, 3374
- \ifpst@rtedL ..... 167
- \ifpstartnum ..... 1300, 1303, 1308
- \ifreportnoidxfile ..... 3479
- \ifrightnoteup ..... 3138, 3235
- \ifshowindexmark ..... 3492, 3616
- \ifsidepstartnum ..... 937, 1274
- \ifstrempty ..... 914,  
973, 2581, 2595, 3570, 4869,  
4871, 4882, 4889, 4890, 4900,  
4907, 4908, 4918, 4925, 4926, 4930
- \IfStrEq ..... 700,  
710, 1013, 1024, 2848, 2851,  
3301, 3304, 4952, 4961, 4974, 4978
- \IfStrEqCase ..... 722
- \ifstrequal .... 1379, 1391, 1405, 2591
- \ifsublines@ .....  
. 388, 417, 505, 534, 539, 545,  
560, 578, 587, 601, 623, 670,  
672, 1075, 1112, 1167, 2982, 3006
- \IfSubStr ..... 3542, 3551, 3590, 3617
- \iftoggle .....  
. 1465, 1558, 1648, 1700, 1808,  
1868, 2004, 2234, 2719, 2725,  
2730, 2735, 2754, 2758, 2759,  
2762, 2768, 2769, 2772, 2773,  
2776, 2782, 2783, 2787, 2788, 2791
- \ifvbox ..... 958, 2808, 2876
- \ifvmode ..... 2968
- \ifvoid 2325, 2330, 2340, 2343, 2349,  
2829, 2862, 2869, 2874, 2891,  
2894, 2899, 2906, 2907, 2914–  
2916, 3322, 3339, 3361, 3393, 3422
- \imki@wrindexentry .. 3543, 3544, 3547
- \indexentry ..... 3553, 3556, 3560
- \initnumbering@reg ..... 175
- \initnumbering@sectcmd 192, 258, 4435
- \inplaceoflemmaseparator ..... 16
- \inplaceofnumber ..... 15
- \InputIfFileExists ..... 196, 458
- \insert ..... 1429, 1657, 1794,  
1854, 1972, 2096, 2160, 2248,  
2330, 2344, 2869, 2874, 2876, 2895
- \insert@count ..... 646, 647,  
739, 741, 820, 842, 1381, 1393,  
1395, 1408, 1411, 1414, 1948,  
2043, 2500, 3152, 3167, 3182
- \insert@countR ..... 730,  
732, 1385, 1399, 1401, 1419,  
1422, 1425, 2488, 3148, 3163, 3178
- \inserthangingsymbol .... 1032, 3668
- \inserthangingsymbolfalse ..... 1017
- \inserthangingsymboltrue ..... 1015
- \inserthangingsymbol ..... 3667
- \insertlines@list .....  
... 225, 421, 454, 654, 1319, 1323
- \insertparafootsep .. 1696, 1750, 2279
- \inserts@list ..... 929, 1314,  
1317, 1327, 1362, 1363, 1380,  
1392, 1394, 1407, 1410, 1413,  
1947, 2042, 2499, 3151, 3166, 3181
- \inserts@listR .....  
..... 1384, 1398, 1400, 1418,  
1421, 1424, 2486, 3147, 3162, 3177
- \instanzafalse ..... 3666, 3754
- \instanzatrue ..... 3728
- \interfootnotelinepenalty ..... 1436
- \interlinepenalty 978, 1347, 1436, 3734
- \interparanoteglue ..... 2709
- \ipn@skip ..... 2709

- \itemcount@ . . . . . 121, 123,  
128, 130, 135, 137, 3256, 3258,  
3263, 3266, 3284, 3286, 3291, 3293
- J**
- Jayaditya . . . . . 5
- K**
- Kabelschacht, Alois . . . . . 94
- Krukov, Alexej . . . . . 69
- L**
- \l@d@wrindexhyp . . . . . 3490, 3614
- \l@d@add . . . . . 891, 893, 897, 899
- \l@d@dashfalse . . . . . 1502, 1520, 2369
- \l@d@dashtrue . . . . .  
1524, 1530, 1542, 2372, 2377, 2389
- \l@d@elinfalse . . . . . 1498, 1527, 2374
- \l@d@elintrue . . . . . 1527, 1529, 2374, 2376
- \l@d@end . . . . .  
2351, 2353, 2354, 2360, 2411, 2532
- \l@d@err@UnequalColumns . . . . . 3968
- \l@d@eslfalse . . . . .  
1500, 1536, 1539, 2383, 2386
- \l@d@esltrue . . . . . 1539, 1541, 2386, 2388
- \l@d@index . . . . . 3475, 3477, 3900
- \l@d@makecol . . . . . 2820, 2883, 2953
- \l@d@nums . . . . . 819, 874, 877, 885, 886,  
899, 2484, 2486, 2497, 2499, 2533
- \l@d@pnunfalse . . . . . 1494, 1520, 2369
- \l@d@pnuntrue . . . . . 1523, 2371
- \l@d@reinserts . . . . . 2873, 2884
- \l@d@section . . . . . 2360, 2362
- \l@d@set . . . . . 567, 771
- \l@d@ssubfalse . . . . . 1496, 1532, 2379
- \l@d@ssubtrue . . . . . 1534, 2381
- \l@d@wrindexm@m . . . . . 3489, 3490
- \l@d@dampcount . . . . . 3827,  
3964, 3966, 3971, 4231, 4241,  
4242, 4254, 4255, 4290, 4308, 4346
- \l@d@begin@stack . . . . . 3641, 3652–3654
- \l@d@bfnote . . . . . 1939, 1943
- \l@d@checkcols . . . . . 3921, 3933, 3961
- \l@d@checkstartend . . . . . 4187, 4198
- \l@d@chset@num . . . . . 472, 475, 567
- \l@d@colcount . . . . . 3827, 3869,  
3881, 3882, 3920, 3922, 3932,  
3934, 3962, 3966, 3971, 4016,  
4018, 4035, 4037, 4053, 4054,  
4069, 4070, 4084, 4085, 4101,  
4102, 4154, 4155, 4231, 4241,  
4242, 4254, 4255, 4286, 4288,  
4303, 4305, 4346, 4352, 4382, 4391
- \l@d@collect@@body . . . . . 3643, 3651
- \l@d@collect@body . . . . .  
3638, 4418–4420, 4422–4424
- \l@d@colwidth . . . . . 3869, 3887, 3888,  
4010, 4153, 4217, 4243, 4256,  
4347, 4349, 4354, 4363, 4384, 4385
- \l@d@csnote . . . . . 3137, 3138
- \l@d@csnotetext . . . . .  
1055, 3201, 3217, 3222, 3265, 3268
- \l@d@csnotetext@l 1055, 3199, 3268, 3285
- \l@d@csnotetext@r 1055, 3219, 3268, 3292
- \l@d@dodoreinextrafeet 2864, 2875, 2881
- \l@d@dofootinsert . . . . . 2821, 2827
- \l@d@dextrafeet . . . . . 2844, 2847, 2880
- \l@d@dedbeginmini . . . . . 2896, 3299, 3309
- \l@d@dedendmini . . . . .  
2898, 3302, 3305, 3306, 3309
- \l@d@emptyd@ta . . . . . 1009, 1055
- \l@d@end@close . . . . . 2353, 2404
- \l@d@end@false . . . . . 2351, 2354
- \l@d@end@open . . . . . 2353, 2358
- \l@d@end@stuff . . . . . 185, 256, 2356, 2410
- \l@d@end@true . . . . . 2351, 2353
- \l@d@envbody . . . . . 3633, 3636, 3639–3641
- \l@d@fambeginmini . . . . . 2345, 3299, 3335
- \l@d@famendmini . . . . .  
2348, 3302, 3305, 3306, 3335
- \l@d@feetbeginmini . . . . .  
3299, 3353, 3389, 3418
- \l@d@feetendmini 3299, 3364, 3396, 3425
- \l@d@getline@margin . . . . . 295
- \l@d@getlock@disp . . . . . 339, 367
- \l@d@getref@num . . . . .  
3013, 3014, 3016, 3017, 3019,  
3020, 3022, 3023, 3030, 3052, 3057
- \l@d@getsidenote@margin . . . . . 3073
- \l@d@gobblearg . . . . . 3912
- \l@d@gobbledarg . . . . . 3912
- \l@d@gobbleoptarg . . . . . 3913
- \l@d@label@parse . . . . . 3036, 3039
- \l@d@ld@ta . . . . . 1029, 1055,  
1202, 1280, 1292, 4580, 4596, 4599
- \l@d@lp@rbox . . . . . 1063, 3108, 3226
- \l@d@lsn@te 1031, 1062, 4581, 4597, 4599
- \l@d@lsnote . . . . . 3118, 3138
- \l@d@make@labels . . . . . 2973, 2992, 3001
- \l@d@memoirfalse . . . . . 38

- \l@dmemoirtrue ..... 38
- \l@dmmodforcritext ..... 3974, 4427
- \l@dmmodforedtext ..... 3985, 4430
- \l@dnullfills ..... 3995,  
4275, 4293, 4311, 4321, 4329, 4339
- \l@dnumpstartsL .....  
.... 167, 188, 202, 932, 1021,  
1038, 1041, 1043, 4773, 4786,  
4799, 4811, 4825, 4838, 4851, 4864
- \l@dnumpstartsR ..... 4769, 4782,  
4795, 4807, 4821, 4834, 4847, 4860
- \l@dold@footnotetext ..... 1919, 1921
- \l@dold@xympar ..... 3064
- \l@doldold@footnotetext . 1936, 1952
- \l@dp@rsefootsspec ..... 1503, 3452
- \l@dpairingfalse ..... 167
- \l@dpairingtrue ..... 167
- \l@dparsedendline ..... 1503, 3449
- \l@dparsedendpage ..... 1503, 3449
- \l@dparsedendsub ..... 1503
- \l@dparsedstartline ..... 1503, 3448
- \l@dparsedstartpage ..... 1503, 3448
- \l@dparsedstartsub ..... 1503
- \l@dparsesfootsspec ..... 1503
- \l@dpush@begins ..... 3648, 3652
- \l@drd@ta ..... 1032, 1055,  
1202, 1282, 1290, 4580, 4583, 4596
- \l@dref@undefined .....  
.... 3013, 3016, 3019, 3022, 3025
- \l@drestorefills ..... 3995,  
4279, 4295, 4315, 4323, 4333, 4341
- \l@drestoreforcritext ... 3974, 4428
- \l@drestoreforedtext .... 3985, 4431
- \l@drp@rbox ..... 1065, 3108, 3234
- \l@drsn@te 1033, 1062, 4581, 4583, 4597
- \l@drsnote ..... 3119, 3138
- \l@dsetmaxcolwidth .. 3886, 3927, 3939
- \l@dskipnumberfalse ..... 777, 1165
- \l@dskipnumbertrue ..... 777, 1156
- \l@dstartendokfalse . 4202, 4206, 4210
- \l@dstartendoktrue ..... 4200
- \l@dtabaddcols ..... 4186, 4216
- \l@dtabnoexpands ..... 796, 3771
- \l@dunboxmpfoot 3362, 3370, 3394, 3423
- \l@dunhbox@line 1004, 1032, 1046, 1049
- \l@dzeropenalties ..... 954, 976
- \l@imakeidxfalse ..... 41
- \l@imakeidxtrue ..... 41
- \l@prev@nopb ..... 206, 4939
- \l@prev@pb ..... 205, 4938
- Lück, Uwe ..... 3
- \label ..... 26
- \label@refs ..... 2965,  
2967, 2973, 2980, 2983, 2985, 2987
- \labelpstartfalse ..... 906
- \labelpstarttrue ..... 906
- \labelref@list . 2958, 2964, 2967, 3006
- \labelrefsparseline ..... 2977
- \labelrefsparsesubline ..... 2977
- \last@page@num ..... 515, 4973
- \lastbox .. 996, 1011, 1688, 1742, 1747
- \lastkern ..... 1911
- \lastskip ..... 750, 754
- Lavagnino, John ..... 2, 4
- Leal, Jeronimo@Leal, Jerónimo ..... 3
- \led ..... 144
- \led@check@nopb .... 1013, 1024, 4950
- \led@check@pb ..... 1013, 1024, 4950
- \led@err@AutoparNotNumbered ....  
..... 83, 986, 991
- \led@err@EdtextWithoutFootnote .  
..... 157, 734, 743
- \led@err@HighEndColumn ... 146, 4207
- \led@err@LineationInNumbered 60, 270
- \led@err@LowStartColumn .. 146, 4203
- \led@err@ManyLeftnotes ... 119, 3286
- \led@err@ManyRightnotes .. 119, 3293
- \led@err@ManySidenotes ... 119, 3266
- \led@err@NumberingNotStarted 44, 236
- \led@err@NumberingShouldHaveStarted  
..... 44, 260
- \led@err@NumberingStarted ... 44, 177
- \led@err@PendNoPstart ..... 83, 952
- \led@err@PendNotNumbered .... 83, 949
- \led@err@PstartInPstart .... 83, 926
- \led@err@PstartNotNumbered .. 83, 922
- \led@err@ReverseColumns .. 146, 4211
- \led@err@TooManyColumns .. 146, 3883
- \led@err@UnequalColumns ..... 146
- \led@error@ImakeidxAfterEledmac .  
..... 160, 3435
- \led@mess@NotesChanged ..... 50, 233
- \led@mess@SectionContinued .. 58, 254
- \led@nopb ..... 4942, 4944
- \led@nopbnum ..... 4943, 4944
- \led@pb ..... 4940, 4944
- \led@pb@setting 700, 710, 722, 1013,  
1024, 4948, 4952, 4961, 4974, 4978
- \led@pbnum ..... 4941, 4944
- \led@toksa ..... 402, 410

- \led@toksb ..... 402, 409–411
- \led@war@FalseverseDeprecated ..  
..... 140, 3739
- \led@war@ledxxxDeprecated .....  
..... 140, 4437, 4445,  
4453, 4461, 4469, 4477, 4485, 4494
- \led@warn@AddfootinsObsolete ...  
..... 113, 2888
- \led@warn@Addfootinsobsolete ... 110
- \led@warn@AddfootinsXObsolete ..  
..... 110, 2335
- \led@warn@AddfootinsXobsolete .. 110
- \led@warn@BadAction ..... 97, 1158
- \led@warn@BadAdvancelineLine 73, 554
- \led@warn@BadAdvancelineSubline .  
..... 73, 548
- \led@warn@BadLineation ..... 63, 290
- \led@warn@BadLinenummargin .. 63, 318
- \led@warn@BadLockdisp ..... 63, 345
- \led@warn@BadSetline ..... 79, 762
- \led@warn@BadSetlinenum .... 79, 769
- \led@warn@BadSidenotemargin 106, 3100
- \led@warn@BadSublockdisp .... 63, 371
- \led@warn@DuplicateLabel .... 99, 2995
- \led@warn@NoIndexFile .... 108, 3480
- \led@warn@NoLineFile ..... 71, 463
- \led@warn@NoMarginpars ... 104, 3067
- \led@warn@RefUndefined .... 99, 3027
- \led@warn@SeriesStillExist 116, 2418
- \ledchapter ..... 4435
- \ledchapter\* ..... 4435
- \ledfinalfalse ..... 13
- \ledfinaltrue ..... 12
- \ledfootinsdim ..... 1591, 2464, 2465
- ledgroup (environment) ..... 24, 3385
- ledgroupsized (environment) . 24, 3400
- \ledinnernote ..... 26, 3118
- \ledinnote ..... 3470
- \ledinnotehyperpage ..... 3470
- \ledleftnote 26, 3118, 3808, 3811, 3816
- \ledlinenum ..... 383
- \ledllfill .... 1032, 1067, 3404, 3408
- \ledlsnotefontsetup ... 27, 3111, 3225
- \ledlsnotesep ..... 27, 1063, 3111
- \ledlsnotewidth ..... 27, 3111, 3225
- \lednopb ..... 34, 4940
- \lednopbinversetrue ..... 15, 34
- \lednopbnum ..... 4940, 4980
- \ledouternote ..... 26, 3129
- \ledouterote ..... 3118
- \ledpb ..... 34, 4940
- \ledpbnum ..... 4940, 4976
- \ledpbsetting ..... 34, 4948
- \ledplinenumtrue ..... 2704
- \ledrightnote 26, 3118, 3807, 3810, 3815
- \ledrlfill .... 1032, 1067, 3405, 3412
- \ledrsnotefontsetup ... 27, 3111, 3233
- \ledrsnotesep ..... 27, 1065, 3111
- \ledrsnotewidth ..... 27, 3111, 3233
- \ledsecnolinenumbertrue ..... 16
- \ledsection ..... 4435
- \ledsection\* ..... 4435
- \ledsectnomark ..... 4562
- \ledsectnotoc ..... 4561
- \ledsetnormalparstuff .....  
..... 1451, 1697, 1993, 2280
- \ledsidenote 26, 3118, 3809, 3812, 3817
- \ledsubsection ..... 4435
- \ledsubsection\* ..... 4435
- \ledsubsubsection ..... 4435
- \ledsubsubsection\* ..... 4435
- \left ..... 4161, 4164, 4169, 4172
- \leftctab ..... 4230, 4330
- \leftlinenum .....  
.. 10, 383, 1204, 1216, 4578, 4594
- \leftlinenumR ..... 4579, 4595
- \leftltab ..... 4221, 4312
- \leftmargin .... 4523, 4524, 4545, 4546
- \leftnoteupfalse ..... 27
- \leftnoteuptrue ..... 3241
- \leftpstartnum ..... 1274
- \leftrtab ..... 4225, 4276
- Leibniz ..... 5
- \lemma ..... 12, 883
- \lemmaseparator ..... 16, 2708
- \letsforverteilen ..... 4003,  
4027, 4046, 4062, 4078, 4093, 4110
- \line@list 228, 421, 453, 672, 872, 876
- \line@list@stuff ..... 184, 255, 678
- \line@margin ..... 295, 1209, 1285
- \line@num . 123, 130, 137, 207, 387,  
415, 477, 511, 521, 552, 553,  
555, 563, 568, 569, 581, 665,  
669, 1081, 1105, 1115, 1180,  
1182, 1183, 1192, 1193, 1753, 3005
- \line@numR ..... 121, 128, 135
- \line@set ..... 887, 888
- \lineation ..... 9, 61, 64, 268
- \lineinfo@ ..... 2720, 2723, 2793

- \linenum ..... 13,  
884, 3059, 3911, 3979, 3990, 4009
  - \linenum@out ... 675, 681, 683, 687,  
688, 690, 691, 694, 695, 704,  
706, 708, 715, 717, 719, 722,  
738, 752, 756, 759, 764, 771,  
774, 775, 781, 866, 2963, 4940–4943
  - \linenum@outR ..... 729, 864
  - \linenumberlist .... 9, 34, 1181, 1193
  - \linenumberstyle ..... 11, 374
  - \linenumincrement ..... 8, 9, 334
  - \linenummargin ..... 9, 66, 295
  - \linenumr@p ..... 374
  - \linenumrep ..... 374,  
387, 1548, 1552, 2394, 2398, 3005
  - \linenumsep .....  
.. 10, 383, 1304, 1309, 3113, 3114
  - \lineref ..... 25, 3016
  - \linewidth ..... 1029
  - \list@clear ..... 401, 453–456, 929
  - \list@clearing@reg ..... 441, 452
  - \list@create .....  
... 400, 421–424, 784, 1314, 2958
  - \listadd ..... 2553, 2565
  - \listcsgadd .... 4886, 4904, 4922, 4934
  - \listcsxadd ..... 526, 4944–4947
  - \listeadd ..... 2552, 2567
  - \listgadd ..... 3199, 3201, 3217, 3219, 3222
  - \listxadd ..... 2545
  - \lock@disp .... 339, 1246, 1250, 1254
  - \lock@off ..... 594, 595, 621, 775
  - \lock@on ..... 592, 774
  - \lockdisp ..... 10, 68, 339
  - Lorch, Richard ..... 5
  - \ltab ..... 3774, 4310, 4418
  - \ltabtext ..... 3776, 4320, 4422
  - \luatexpardir ..... 1394, 1400, 1454
  - \luatextextdir ..... 1392, 1398, 1453
  - Luecking, Dan ..... 41
- M**
- \m@m@makecolfloats ..... 2803, 2822
  - \m@m@makecolintro ..... 2803
  - \m@m@makecoltext ..... 2803, 2823
  - \m@mdodoreinextrafeet ..... 2881
  - \m@mdoextrafeet ..... 2880
  - \m@mmf@check ..... 1910, 1927, 1957
  - \m@mmf@prepare .....  
.... 1907, 1922, 1931, 1961, 2518
  - \M@sect ..... 4604
  - \m@th ..... 4179
  - \makehboxofhboxes .....  
.... 1709, 1734, 1739, 2288, 2313
  - \makeindex ..... 3473, 3530
  - \makememindexhook ..... 3473
  - \managestanza@modulo .... 3696, 3715
  - \marginparwidth ..... 3111, 3112
  - \marks 1573–1575, 1717–1719, 1821–  
1823, 1885–1887, 2022–2024,  
2124–2126, 2187–2189, 2296–2298
  - \mathchardef ..... 3691
  - \maxdepth ..... 2824
  - \maxdimen ..... 1662, 1677, 2253, 2267
  - \maxhnotesX ..... 19
  - \maxhXnotes ..... 19
  - Mayer, Gyula ..... 5
  - \measurebody .. 4278, 4284, 4314, 4332
  - \measuremcell ..... 3919, 3945
  - \measuremrow ..... 3943, 4289
  - \measuretbody .. 4294, 4300, 4322, 4340
  - \measuretcell ..... 3931, 3950
  - \measuretrow ..... 3948, 4306
  - \message ..... 59, 183
  - Middleton, Thomas ..... 5, 55
  - minipage (environment) ..... 24
  - Mittelbach, Frank ..... 4
  - \morenoexpands ..... 36, 788
  - \moveleft ..... 4223, 4228, 4236
  - \moveright ..... 4249, 4262, 4271
  - \mpfnpos ..... 28, 2318
  - \mpnormalfootgroup ..... 1570, 1612
  - \mpnormalfootgroupX ..... 2019, 2072
  - \mpnormalvfootnote .....  
..... 1441, 1611, 1781, 1846
  - \mpnormalvfootnoteX .....  
..... 1979, 2071, 2084, 2148
  - \mppara@footgroup ..... 1630, 1714
  - \mppara@footgroupX ..... 2217, 2284
  - \mppara@vfootnote ..... 1629, 1671
  - \mppara@vfootnoteX ..... 2216, 2247
  - \mpthreecolfootgroup .... 1782, 1818
  - \mpthreecolfootgroupX ... 2149, 2180
  - \mpthreecolfootsetup .... 1783, 1789
  - \mpthreecolfootsetupX ... 2150, 2152
  - \mptwocolfootgroup ..... 1847, 1879
  - \mptwocolfootgroupX ..... 2085, 2117
  - \mptwocolfootsetup ..... 1848, 1879
  - \mptwocolfootsetupX ..... 2086, 2088
  - \multfootsep ..... 27, 1904, 1914

- \multiplefootnotemark . . . . . 4135, 4137, 4138, 4141, 4143,  
                   1904, 1908, 1909, 1911  
                   4144, 4146, 4148, 4149, 4154,  
                   4156, 4157, 4352, 4355, 4356,  
                   4361, 4365, 4366, 4382, 4388, 4389
- N**
- \n@l . . . . . 717
- \n@num . . . . . 642, 781
- \n@num@reg . . . . . 642
- \nc@page . . . . . 714, 715
- \NeedsTeXFormat . . . . . 2
- \new . . . . . 2551–  
                   2553, 2555, 2564, 2565, 2567, 2568
- \new@line . . . . . 699, 1032, 1046, 1049
- \newbox . . . . . 901, 904,  
                   3108, 3109, 3832, 3834, 4415, 4416
- \newcommandx . . . . . 913, 948,  
                   1377, 1390, 1404, 1460, 1686,  
                   1695, 1798, 1858, 2588, 2691,  
                   2708, 3537, 3708, 3748, 3750, 3758
- \newcounter . . . . .  
                   . 325, 327, 329, 331, 907, 1088,  
                   2521, 2977, 2978, 3440, 3699, 4184
- \newhookcommand@series . . . . . 2602
- \newhookcommand@series@reload . . 2673
- \newhooktoggle@series . . . . .  
                   . . . . . 2687, 2690, 2693–2700
- \newif . . . . . 4–9, 27, 37, 40, 166,  
                   167, 169, 172–174, 266, 267,  
                   417, 430, 676, 725, 777, 869,  
                   902, 909, 911, 981, 1003, 1275,  
                   1300, 1493, 1495, 1497, 1499,  
                   1501, 2352, 2703, 2826, 2901,  
                   3138, 3240, 3385, 3429–3431,  
                   3450, 3665, 3667, 4198, 4572, 4763
- \newinsert . . . . . 2467–2470
- \newlength . . . . . 383, 3683
- \newlinechar . . . . . 2529
- \newread . . . . . 439
- \newrobustcmd . . . . . 3008
- \newseries . . . . . 2412, 2547, 2548
- \newseries@ . . . . . 2413, 2417
- \newtoggle . . . . . 1592, 1596, 2420, 2421,  
                   2441–2444, 2446, 2449, 2706, 2707
- \newverse . . . . . 141, 3725
- \newwrite . . . . . 675, 2351, 4762
- \NEXT . . . . . 3915,  
                   3920, 3923, 3928, 3929, 3932,  
                   3935, 3940, 3941, 3944, 3946,  
                   3947, 3949, 3951, 3952, 3957,  
                   4116, 4119, 4121, 4122, 4124,  
                   4126, 4127, 4130, 4132, 4133,  
                   4135, 4137, 4138, 4141, 4143,  
                   4144, 4146, 4148, 4149, 4154,  
                   4156, 4157, 4352, 4355, 4356,  
                   4361, 4365, 4366, 4382, 4388, 4389
- \Next . . . . . 3957, 4017,  
                   4019, 4030, 4031, 4036, 4038,  
                   4049, 4050, 4053, 4055, 4064,  
                   4065, 4069, 4071, 4080, 4081,  
                   4084, 4086, 4096, 4097, 4101,  
                   4103, 4113, 4114, 4370, 4372, 4373
- \next@absline . . . . . 711, 712
- \next@action . . . . . 98, 449, 1094,  
                   1102, 1103, 1109, 1110, 1118, 1127
- \next@actionline . . . . .  
                   . 446, 448, 1093, 1101, 1124, 1126
- \next@insert . . . . .  
                   930, 1318, 1321, 1323, 1326, 1330
- \next@page@num . . . . . 212, 480, 482, 525, 575
- \no@expands . . . . . 788, 818, 840, 883
- \noalign . . . . . 1767
- \noeledsec . . . . . 33, 4763
- \noendnotes . . . . . 25, 2410
- \noindent . . . . .  
                   914, 973, 998, 1272, 1458, 1566,  
                   1568, 1655, 1663, 1667, 1678,  
                   1712, 1737, 1814, 1835, 1874,  
                   1899, 1977, 2254, 2268, 2291, 2316
- \nolemmaseparator . . . . . 16, 2708
- \nonbreakableafternumber . . . . . 15
- \nonum@ . . . . . 2706
- \nonumberinfootnote . . . . . 15
- \noquotation@true . . . . . 11
- \normal@footnotemarkX . . . . . 1964, 2060
- \normal@page@break . . . . . 204, 4937
- \normal@pars . . . . . 221, 931,  
                   1001, 1457, 1799, 1859, 2106, 2170
- \normalbfnoteX . . . . . 2038, 2052
- \normalbodyfootmarkX . . . . . 1969, 2061
- \normalcolor . . . . . 1576, 1720, 1824, 1888,  
                   2025, 2127, 2190, 2299, 2838, 3372
- \normalfont . . . . . 385, 1905, 1970, 2701
- \normalfootfmt . . . . . 1451, 1604
- \normalfootfmtX . . . . . 1989, 2064
- \normalfootfootmarkX . . . . . 1998, 2065
- \normalfootgroup . . . . . 1568, 1605
- \normalfootgroupX . . . . . 2016, 2066
- \normalfootnoterule . . . . . 1567, 1607
- \normalfootnoteruleX . . . . . 2014, 2067, 2212
- \normalfootstart . . . . . 1555, 1602
- \normalfootstartX . . . . . 2001, 2059

- `\normalvfootnote` ..... 1428, 1603
  - `\normalvfootnoteX` ..... 1971, 2062
  - `\nosep@` ..... 2707
  - `\notblank` ..... 1388
  - `\notbool` ..... 1428, 1441,  
1460, 1793, 1798, 1854, 1858, 2472
  - `\notfontsetup` .....  
..... 1813, 2433–2435, 2701, 2711
  - `\notfontsizeX` ..... 16
  - `\notenumfont` ..... 2430–2432, 2701
  - `\notenumfontX` ..... 16
  - `\noteschanged@false` ..... 430, 459
  - `\noteschanged@true` .....  
..... 226, 229, 430, 464, 873, 1320
  - `\nottoggle` 1464, 1699, 1807, 1867, 2363
  - `\nulledindex` .... 3897, 3978, 3989,  
4015, 4034, 4052, 4068, 4083, 4100
  - `\nullsetzen` ..... 4151, 4287, 4304
  - `\num@lines` . 901, 955, 1337, 1343, 1346
  - `\numberedpar@false` ..... 901
  - `\numberedpar@true` ..... 901, 943
  - `\numberingfalse` ..... 166, 220
  - `\numberingtrue` ..... 166, 180, 248
  - `\numberlinefalse` ..... 9
  - `\numberlinetrue` ..... 9, 870
  - `\numberonlyfirstinline` ..... 14
  - `\numberonlyfirstintwoline` ..... 15
  - `\numberpstartfalse` ..... 9, 906
  - `\numberpstarttrue` ..... 8, 9, 906
  - `\numdef` ..... 711, 1038, 4954
  - `\numgdef` ..... 703, 714,  
3256, 3263, 3284, 3291, 4975, 4979
  - `\numlabfont` ..... 19, 383
- O**
- `\old@edtext` ..... 4615, 4622,  
4643, 4650, 4706, 4713, 4734, 4741
  - `\old@Rlineflag` ..... 3538, 3565
  - `\one@line` .....  
901, 1010, 1011, 1032, 1046, 1049
  - `\onlypstartinfootnote` ..... 15
  - `\openout` . 197, 683, 688, 691, 695, 2353
- P**
- `\p@pstart` ..... 945
  - `\PackageError` ..... 43
  - `\PackageWarning` ..... 42
  - `\page@action` ..... 481, 573, 659
  - `\page@num` ..... 123, 130,  
137, 426, 444, 523, 664, 669,  
1103, 1211, 1287, 1751, 1760,  
3122, 3130, 3195, 3213, 3279, 4973
  - `\page@numR` .. 121, 128, 135, 3190, 3208
  - `\page@start` ..... 748, 2828
  - `\pagebreak` ..... 4950
  - `\pagelinesep` .... 29, 3438, 3447–3449
  - `\pageno` ..... 100, 102, 2799
  - `\pageparbreak` ..... 36, 1272
  - `\pageref` ..... 26
  - `\pairs` 4875, 4878, 4893, 4897, 4911, 4915
  - `\paperwidth` ..... 1045, 1048
  - `\par@line` .....  
. 901, 956, 1338, 1339, 1342, 1346
  - `\para@footgroup` ..... 1624, 1705
  - `\para@footgroupX` ..... 2211, 2284
  - `\para@footsetup` ..... 1628, 1636
  - `\para@footsetupX` ..... 2221, 2223
  - `\para@vfootnote` ..... 1622, 1656
  - `\para@vfootnoteX` ..... 2209, 2247
  - `\parafootfmt` ..... 1623, 1695
  - `\parafootfmtX` ..... 2210, 2275
  - `\parafootftmsep` ..... 2458, 2713
  - `\parafootsep` ..... 18
  - `\parafootstart` ..... 1621, 1644
  - `\parafootstartX` ..... 2208, 2231
  - `\parapparatus@false` ..... 10
  - `\parapparatus@true` ..... 14
  - `\parledgroup@` ..... 1573, 1717,  
1821, 1885, 2022, 2124, 2187, 2296
  - `\parledgroup@beforenotesL` 3327, 3379
  - `\parledgroup@beforenotesR` 3325, 3377
  - `\parledgroup@series` .. 1574, 1718,  
1822, 1886, 2023, 2125, 2188, 2297
  - `\parledgroup@type` ... 1575, 1719,  
1823, 1887, 2024, 2126, 2189, 2298
  - `\patchcmd` ..... 4500, 4503, 4504,  
4507, 4511, 4512, 4606, 4626,  
4634, 4654, 4662, 4670, 4678,  
4687, 4696, 4717, 4725, 4745, 4753
  - `\pausenumbering` ..... 8, 246
  - `\pend` ..... 6, 90, 93, 927, 948,  
999, 1272, 3752, 3759, 4438,  
4440, 4446, 4448, 4454, 4456,  
4462, 4464, 4470, 4472, 4478,  
4480, 4489, 4492, 4495, 4497, 4510
  - Plato of Tivoli ..... 4
  - `\postbodyfootmark` ..... 1953, 1967
  - `\postdisplaypenalty` ..... 979
  - `\prebodyfootmark` ..... 1953, 1965
  - `\predisplaypenalty` ..... 978

- \prenotesX ..... 18, 1599
  - \prenotesX@ .... 1598, 1599, 2002, 2232
  - \prepare@edindex@fornote .....  
..... 2484, 2497, 3451
  - \pretocmd ..... 3530,  
4501, 4505, 4614, 4642, 4705, 4733
  - \prev@nopb ..... 4938
  - \prev@pb ..... 4938
  - \prevgraf ..... 955
  - \prevline ..... 1752, 2738
  - \prevpage@num ..... 1750
  - \preXnotes ..... 18, 1592, 1596
  - \preXnotes@ .... 1556, 1592, 1596, 1646
  - \print@eledsection ..... 1022, 1036
  - \print@leftmargin@eledsection ..  
..... 4573,  
4637, 4657, 4680, 4698, 4728, 4756
  - \print@line ..... 1023, 1026
  - \print@rightmargin@eledsection ..  
..... 4573,  
4629, 4665, 4682, 4700, 4720, 4748
  - \printendlines ..... 2362, 2392
  - \printlinefootnote .....  
.... 1463, 1698, 1806, 1866, 2714
  - \printlines ..... 1545,  
2755, 2759, 2769, 2773, 2783, 2788
  - \printnpnum ..... 24, 2394, 2397, 2402
  - \printpstart ..... 1482,  
2754, 2758, 2768, 2772, 2782, 2787
  - \processl@denvbody .....  
..... 3640, 3644, 3645, 3661
  - \ProcessOptions ..... 18
  - \protected@csxdef .. 2040, 2516, 3793
  - \protected@edef .....  
..... 944, 1990, 2103, 2166, 2276
  - \protected@write .....  
.. 2972, 3495, 3497, 3500, 3507,  
3509, 3512, 3517, 3519, 3522,  
3552, 3555, 3559, 3619, 3621, 3624
  - \ProvidesPackage ..... 3
  - \pst@rtedLfalse ... 167, 189, 201, 223
  - \pst@rtedLtrue ..... 167, 252
  - \pstart ..... 6, 84, 87, 88,  
93, 906, 998, 1272, 3717, 4439,  
4442, 4447, 4450, 4455, 4458,  
4463, 4466, 4471, 4474, 4479,  
4482, 4490, 4492, 4496, 4498, 4510
  - \pstarteref ..... 3022
  - \pstartinfootnote .. 15, 276, 282, 288
  - \pstartline ..... 959, 962
  - \pstartnum ..... 1274
  - \pstartnumfalse ..... 1305, 1312
  - \pstartnumtrue ..... 969, 1301
  - \pstartref ..... 25, 3022
- Q**
- \quotation ..... 4435
  - \quote ..... 4435
- R**
- \RaggedLeft .... 1707, 1732, 2286, 2311
  - \RaggedRight ... 1708, 1733, 2287, 2312
  - \raggedright ..... 1803,  
1863, 2112, 2175, 3116, 4688, 4690
  - \raggedX ..... 18
  - \raw@text ..... 901, 933, 958, 1010
  - \rbracket ..... 19, 1470, 2453
  - \read@linelist ..... 439, 679
  - \ref ..... 26
  - \Relax ..... 3915, 4369, 4376
  - \rem@inder ..... 1193, 1195–1197
  - \removehboxes .....  
.... 1710, 1735, 1739, 2289, 2314
  - \removelastskip ..... 4016, 4035
  - \RequirePackage ..... 20, 21, 23–26
  - \reserveinserts ..... 22
  - \resetprevline@ 58, 214, 431, 962, 1106
  - \resetprevpage@ ..... 435
  - \resetprevpage@num . 58, 215, 435, 3387
  - \restore@familiarnotes .. 3789, 3825
  - \restore@notes ..... 3819, 4026,  
4045, 4061, 4077, 4092, 4109, 4307
  - \restore@sidenotes ..... 3806, 3824
  - \resumenumbers ..... 8, 246
  - \right ..... 4162, 4165, 4170, 4173
  - \rightctab ..... 4239, 4331
  - \rightlinenum .....  
.. 10, 383, 1206, 1214, 4578, 4594
  - \rightlinenumR ..... 4579, 4595
  - \rightltab ..... 4252, 4313
  - \rightnoteupfalse ..... 27
  - \rightnoteuptrue ..... 3139
  - \rightpstartnum .... 1282, 1290, 1307
  - \rightrtab ..... 4265, 4277
  - \rightstartnum ..... 1274
  - \rigidbalance ... 1762, 1817, 1838,  
1877, 1902, 2120, 2140, 2183, 2203
  - \rlap 1206, 1214, 1282, 1290, 4577, 4593
  - \Rlineflag 3538, 3539, 3565, 3575, 3579
  - Robinson, Peter ..... 3

- \roman ..... 4185  
 \rtab ..... 3772, 4274, 4420  
 \rtabtext ..... 3775, 4292, 4424
- S**
- Sacrobosco ..... 5  
 \sc@n@list ..... 1194, 1196  
 Schöpf, Rainer ..... 4  
 \section@num ..... 163, 181,  
     183, 184, 196, 197, 253–255, 2360  
 \sectionmark ..... 4564, 4893, 4897  
 \select@lemmafont ..... 789, 1372  
 \select@lemmafont ..... 20,  
     1372, 1464, 1699, 1807, 1867, 2363  
 \series .. 2412, 2550, 2552, 2563, 2567  
 \seriesatbegin ..... 2549  
 \seriesatend ..... 2559, 2562  
 \set@line ..... 819, 841, 871  
 \set@line@action 474, 558, 565, 576, 661  
 \setcommand@series ..... 2588  
 \setl@dlp@rbox . 3224, 3272, 3287, 3289  
 \setl@drp@rbox . 3232, 3274, 3282, 3294  
 \setl@drpr@box ..... 3224  
 \setline ..... 10, 80, 760, 793, 962  
 \setlinenum ..... 11, 82, 767  
 \setmcellcenter ..... 4082, 4142  
 \setmcellleft ..... 4051, 4131  
 \setmcellright ..... 4014, 4120  
 \setmrowcenter ..... 4140, 4335  
 \setmrowleft ..... 4129, 4317  
 \setmrowright ..... 4118, 4281  
 \setprintendlines ..... 2368, 2393  
 \setprintlines ..... 1519, 1546  
 \setstanzaindents ..... 21, 3696  
 \setstanzapenalties ..... 22, 3696  
 \setstanzavalues 3686, 3696, 3697, 3769  
 \settccllcenter ..... 4099, 4147  
 \settccllleft ..... 4067, 4136  
 \settccllright ..... 4033, 4125  
 \settoggle ..... 1380, 1384, 2580  
 \settoggle@series .. 2575, 2579, 2691  
 \settrwcenter ..... 4145, 4343  
 \settrwleft ..... 4134, 4325  
 \settrwright ..... 4123, 4297  
 \Setzen ..... 4360, 4369, 4371  
 \showlemma ..... 28, 35, 787, 827, 849  
 \sidenote@margin 3073, 3193, 3211, 3277  
 \sidenote@marginR .. 3078, 3188, 3206  
 \sidenotecontent@ .....  
     . 3255, 3260, 3261, 3272, 3274,  
     3282, 3283, 3287, 3289, 3290, 3294  
 \sidenotemargin ..... 26, 3073  
 \sidenotemmargin ..... 107  
 \sidenotesep ..... 27, 3242  
 \skip . 1559, 1562, 1571, 1610, 1615,  
     1627, 1633, 1649, 1652, 1715,  
     1819, 1883, 2005, 2008, 2020,  
     2070, 2075, 2122, 2185, 2215,  
     2220, 2235, 2238, 2242, 2293,  
     2836, 3325, 3327, 3371, 3377, 3379  
 \skip@lockoff ..... 595, 621  
 \skipnumbering ..... 11, 777,  
     3742, 4438, 4440, 4446, 4448,  
     4454, 4456, 4462, 4464, 4470,  
     4472, 4478, 4480, 4489, 4495,  
     4508, 4509, 4517, 4530, 4539, 4552  
 \skipnumbering@reg ..... 777  
 \spacefactor .....  
     1912, 1915, 1926, 1932, 1956, 1962  
 \spaceskip ..... 1433, 1976, 2099  
 \splitmaxdepth ..... 1438  
 \splittoff ..... 1762  
 \splittopskip ... 1007, 1438, 1764,  
     1815, 1817, 1836, 1838, 1875,  
     1877, 1900, 1902, 2118, 2120,  
     2138, 2140, 2181, 2183, 2201, 2203  
 \spreadmath ..... 30, 4348  
 \spreadtext ..... 30, 4346  
 \stanza ..... 20, 3725  
 \stanza@count ... 3677, 3688, 3691,  
     3693, 3710, 3722, 3731, 3741, 3760  
 \stanza@hang ..... 3708, 3733  
 \stanza@line ..... 3708, 3746, 3760  
 \stanza@modulo .....  
     3700, 3703–3705, 3713, 3731, 3740  
 \stanzaindentbase .....  
     . 21, 3677, 3711, 3714, 3720, 3763  
 \startlock ..... 10, 774, 791, 3718  
 \startstanzahook ..... 23, 3725  
 \startsub ..... 10, 750, 790  
 \stepcounter .....  
     .... 2515, 2981, 2984, 3443, 4193  
 \stepl@dcclcount .... 3881, 3926,  
     3938, 4023, 4042, 4058, 4074,  
     4089, 4106, 4152, 4353, 4362, 4383  
 \StrGobbleLeft ..... 3460, 3465  
 \strip@pt ..... 1642, 2229  
 \strip@szacnt ..... 3686

- \sub@action ..... 490, 585, 660
  - \sub@change 213, 484, 485, 491, 535, 542
  - \sub@changes ..... 537, 540
  - \sub@clock ..... 210, 419, 499, 501,  
503, 506, 603, 604, 606, 607,  
625, 626, 628, 1076, 1148, 1150,  
1151, 1153, 1229, 1265, 1267, 1269
  - \sub@off ..... 534, 756
  - \sub@on ..... 534, 752
  - \subline@num ..... 208, 389, 390,  
416, 507, 511, 521, 546, 547,  
549, 561, 579, 666, 670, 1077,  
1082, 1105, 1113, 1168–1170, 3006
  - \sublinenumberstyle ..... 11, 374
  - \sublinenumincrement ..... 8, 9, 334
  - \sublinenumr@p ..... 374
  - \sublinenumrep ..... 374,  
390, 1549, 1553, 2395, 2399, 3006
  - \sublineref ..... 25, 3019
  - \sublines@false .. 211, 417, 488, 1138
  - \sublines@true ..... 417, 486, 1136
  - \sublock@disp .. 365, 1231, 1235, 1239
  - \sublockdisp ..... 70, 365
  - \subsection ..... 2572,  
4456, 4464, 4910, 4914, 4919, 4920
  - \subsectionmark .... 4565, 4911, 4915
  - \subsubsection ..... 2574,  
4472, 4480, 4927, 4928, 4931, 4932
  - Sullivan, Wayne ..... 4,  
5, 20, 35, 42, 49, 106, 107, 145, 168
  - \symlinenum ..... 15
  - \symplinenum ..... 2445, 2701
  - \sza@penalty ..... 3708, 3737, 3759
- T**
- \tabellzwischen ..... 4351, 4359
  - \tabelskip 4363, 4403–4405, 4411–4413
  - \tabHilfbox ..... 4402,  
4404, 4406, 4410, 4412, 4414, 4415
  - \tabhilfbox ..... 4401,  
4403, 4405, 4409, 4411, 4413, 4415
  - Tapp, Christian ..... 3
  - \temp@ ..... 1038, 1039, 3585, 3590
  - \textheight ..... 2940
  - \textnormal ..... 1470–1472
  - \textsuperscript ... 1905, 1970, 1999
  - \textwidth ..... 3349, 3402
  - \theadcolcount .... 4184, 4191, 4194
  - \theendpageline ..... 3448,  
3498, 3510, 3520, 3544, 3556, 3622
  - \thefootnoteA ..... 27
  - \thelabidx .....  
3444, 3447, 3595, 3599, 3604, 3606
  - \theline ..... 2985, 2987
  - \thempfn ..... 3351, 3387, 3416
  - \thempfootnote ..... 3351, 3387, 3416
  - Theodosius ..... 5
  - \thepage ..... 703,  
706, 708, 717, 719, 722, 2973, 3447
  - \thepageline ..... 3446,  
3501, 3513, 3523, 3547, 3560, 3625
  - \thepstart 9, 906, 998, 1303, 1310, 1490
  - \thepstartL ..... 1487
  - \thepstartR ..... 1485
  - \thestartpageline ..... 3448,  
3496, 3508, 3518, 3543, 3553, 3620
  - \thesubline ..... 2985
  - \thinspace ..... 1475, 1477
  - \thr@@ .... 316, 606, 615, 626, 633,  
1143, 1151, 1788, 1791, 1817,  
1838, 2154, 2157, 2183, 2203, 3098
  - \threecolfootfmt ..... 1778, 1798
  - \threecolfootfmtX ..... 2145, 2165
  - \threecolfootgroup ..... 1779, 1813
  - \threecolfootgroupX ..... 2146, 2180
  - \threecolfootsetup ..... 1780, 1786
  - \threecolfootsetupX ..... 2147, 2152
  - \threecolvfootnote ..... 1777, 1793
  - \threecolvfootnoteX ..... 2144, 2159
  - \togglefalse ... 1559, 1649, 2005, 2235
  - \toggletrue ..... 1593, 1597
  - \tolerance .... 1802, 1862, 2111, 2174
  - \twocolfootfmt ..... 1843, 1851
  - \twocolfootfmtX ..... 2081, 2102
  - \twocolfootgroup ..... 1844, 1851
  - \twocolfootgroupX ..... 2082, 2117
  - \twocolfootsetup ..... 1845, 1851
  - \twocolfootsetupX ..... 2083, 2088
  - \twocolvfootnote ..... 1842, 1851
  - \twocolvfootnoteX ..... 2080, 2095
  - \txtbeforeXnotes ..... 18
- U**
- \unexpanded .....  
. 4769, 4773, 4782, 4786, 4795,  
4799, 4807, 4811, 4821, 4825,  
4834, 4838, 4847, 4851, 4860, 4864
  - \unhbox 1004, 1689, 1710, 1712, 1735,  
1737, 1744, 1748, 2289, 2291,  
2314, 2316, 4405, 4406, 4413, 4414

- `\unkern` ..... 1913  
`\unpenalty` ..... 1692, 1741  
`\unvbox` ... 1011, 1443, 1568, 1589,  
1673, 1687, 1706, 1731, 1773,  
1981, 2017, 2036, 2263, 2285,  
2310, 2324, 2330, 2339, 2344,  
2814, 2835, 2840, 2859, 2869,  
2874, 2876, 2895, 2923, 3368, 3383  
`\unvxh` ... 1664, 1679, 1686, 2255, 2269  
`\usingcritext` ..... 4426  
`\usingdtext` ..... 4426
- V**
- `\valign` ..... 1765  
`\value` ..... 3704, 3709, 4190  
`Vamana` ..... 5  
`\variab` ..... 3959, 4280,  
4296, 4316, 4324, 4334, 4342, 4375  
`\vbadness` ..... 1006, 1764  
`\vbfnoteX` ..... 2041, 2046  
`\vbox` ..... 933, 1442, 1662, 1672,  
1677, 1687, 1980, 2253, 2262,  
2267, 2323, 2338, 2811, 2832,  
2858, 2948, 2952, 3228, 3230,  
3236, 3238, 3346, 4161, 4164,  
4169, 4172, 4176, 4178, 4179,  
4222, 4226, 4231, 4242, 4255, 4268  
`\vfil` ..... 1765, 2952,  
4162, 4165, 4170, 4173, 4176, 4179  
`\vfill` ..... 2836  
`\vl@dbfnote` ..... 1943  
`\vl@dcsnote` ..... 3176, 3180, 3186  
`\vl@dlsnote` ..... 3146, 3150, 3186  
`\vl@drsnote` ..... 3161, 3165, 3186  
`\vnumfootnoteX` ..... 2050, 2063  
`\vrule` ... 4161, 4164, 4169, 4172, 4176  
`\vsize` ..... 1591  
`\vsplit` ..... 1010, 1772, 2923
- W**
- `\wd` ..... 998, 1032, 1666,  
1681, 2257, 2271, 3887, 3888,  
4011, 4235, 4244, 4247, 4257,  
4260, 4269, 4403, 4404, 4411, 4412
- `Whitney, Ron` ..... 4  
`\widowpenalty` ..... 979, 1344  
`\WithSuffix` ..... 4444, 4460,  
4476, 4493, 4817, 4830, 4843, 4856  
`\wrap@edcrossref` .....  
.... 3008, 3013, 3016, 3019, 3022  
`Wujastyk, Dominik` ..... 2, 4
- X**
- `\x@lemma` ..... 829–831, 851–853  
`\xcritext` ..... 3891, 4004  
`\xedindex` ..... 3897, 3983, 3994, 4006  
`\xedlabel` ..... 3895, 4012  
`\xedtext` ..... 3891, 4005  
`\Xendlemmadisablefontselection` . 17  
`\Xendnotefontsize` ..... 16  
`\Xendnotenumfont` ..... 16  
`\Xhangindent` ..... 17  
`\xifinlist` ..... 1021, 1039, 2418  
`\xifinlistcs` ..... 701, 702, 712,  
713, 4950, 4953, 4955, 4962, 4963  
`\xleft@appenditem` ..... 408  
`\Xlemmadisablefontselection` .... 17  
`\xlineref` ..... 25, 3016, 3447  
`\Xnotefontsize` ..... 16  
`\Xnotenumfont` ..... 16  
`\xpageref` ..... 25, 3013  
`\xpstartref` ..... 25, 3022  
`\Xragged` ..... 18  
`\xright@appenditem` ..... 402, 574,  
575, 577, 584, 586, 588, 590,  
600, 602, 611, 622, 624, 631,  
644, 645, 654, 668, 1380, 1384,  
1392, 1394, 1398, 1400, 1407,  
1410, 1413, 1418, 1421, 1424,  
1946, 2041, 2484, 2497, 3004,  
3146, 3150, 3161, 3165, 3176, 3180  
`\xspaceskip` ..... 1433, 1976, 2099  
`\xsublineref` ..... 25, 3019  
`\xxref` ..... 26, 3047
- Z**
- `\z@skip` ..... 1433, 1439, 1976, 2099  
`\zz@@@` ..... 2959, 2965, 3050, 3055

## Change History

- v0.1.  
 General: First public release ..... 1
- v0.2.  
 General: Added tabmac code, and  
 extended indexing ..... 1  
`\eledmac@error`: Added `\eledmac@error`  
 and replaced error messages .. 42  
`\ifl@dmemoir`: Added `\ifl@dmemoir`  
 for memoir class having been  
 used ..... 42  
`\morenoexpands`: Added `\l@dtabnoexpands`  
 to `\no@expands` ..... 74
- v0.2.1.  
`\@lab`: Removed page setting from  
`\@lab` ..... 147  
 General: Added text about normal  
 labeling ..... 26  
 Bug fixes and match with mem-  
 patch v1.8 ..... 1  
 Major changes to insert code  
 when memoir is loaded .... 142  
`\doxtrafeet`: Renamed `\doxtrafeet`  
 to `\l@ddoxtrafeet` ..... 141  
`\edlabel`: Tweaked `\edlabel` to  
 get correct page numbers ... 145  
`\l@d@makecol`: Rewrote `\@makecol`,  
 calling it `\l@d@makecol` .... 141  
`\l@ddodoreinextrafeet`: Re-  
 named `\dodoreinextrafeet` to  
`\l@ddodoreinextrafeet` .... 142  
`\l@ddofootinsert`: Renamed  
`\dofootinsert` as `\l@ddofootinsert`  
 ..... 141  
`\m@m@makecolintro`: Added  
`\m@m@makecolfloats`, `\m@m@makecoltext`  
 and `\m@m@makecolintro` ... 140  
`\morenoexpands`: Removed some  
`\lets` from `\no@expands`. These  
 were in EDMAC but I feel that  
 they should not have been as  
 they disabled page/line refs in  
 a footnotes ..... 74  
`\zz@@@`: Minor change to `\zz@@@` . 145
- v0.2.2.  
 General: Improved paragraph foot-  
 notes ..... 1  
 New Dekker example ..... 1
- `\footfudgefiddle`: Added  
`\footfudgefiddle` ..... 104  
`\l@d@section`: Used `\providecommand`  
 for `\@gobblethree` to avoid  
 clash with the amsfonts pack-  
 age ..... 127  
`\line@list@stuff`: Added ini-  
 tial write of page number in  
`\line@list@stuff` ..... 67  
`\para@footsetup`: Added  
`\footfudgefiddle` to  
`\para@footsetup` ..... 105  
`\para@footsetupX`: Added  
`\footfudgefiddle` to  
`\para@footsetupX` ..... 123
- v0.3.  
`\@lab`: Replaced `\the\line@num`  
 by `\linenumr@p\line@num` in  
`\@lab`, and similar for sub-lines 147  
`\@nl@reg`: Added a bunch of code to  
`\@nl` for handling `\setlinenum` 61  
 General: Includes edstanza and  
 more ..... 1  
`\ledlinenum`: Added `\linenumr@p`  
 and `\sublinenumr@p`  
 to `\leftlinenum` and  
`\rightlinenum` ..... 53  
`\linenumberlist`: Added  
`\linenumberlist` mechanism . 42  
`\printendlines`: Added `\linenumr@p`  
 and `\sublinenumr@p` to  
`\printendlines` ..... 128  
`\printlines`: Added `\linenumr@p`  
 and `\sublinenumr@p` to  
`\printlines` ..... 101  
`\sublinenumr@p`: Added `\linenumberstyle`  
 and `\sublinenumberstyle` ... 53
- v0.3.1.  
 General: Not released. Added re-  
 marks about the parallel pack-  
 age ..... 1
- v0.4.  
`\@iiiminipage`: Modified ker-  
 nel `\@iiiminipage` and  
`\endminipage` to cater for criti-  
 cal footnotes ..... 157

- General: Added `\showlemma` to `\edtext` (and `\critext`) . . . . 76  
 Added minipage, etc., support . 1  
`ledgroupsize`: Added ledgroup-sized environment . . . . . 158  
`\footnormal`: Added minpage footnote setup to `\footnormal` . 103  
`\if@ledgroup`: Added ledgroup environment . . . . . 158  
`\ifparapparatus@`: Added final/draft options . . . . . 41  
`\l@dfeetendmini`: Added `\l@dfeetbeginmini`, `\l@dfeetendmini` and all their supporting code 156  
`\mpnormalfootgroup`: Added `\mpnormalfootgroup` . . . . . 102  
`\mpnormalvfootnote`: Added `\mpnormalvfootnote` . . . . . 97  
`\showlemma`: Added `\showlemma` . 41
- v0.4.1.  
`\@opxtrafeetii`: Added `\@opxtrafeetii` . . . . . 142  
 General: Added code for changing `\@docclearpage` . . . . . 143  
 Let eledmac take advantage of memoir's indexing . . . . . 161  
 Not released. Minor editorial improvements and code tweaks . . 1  
 Only change `\@footnotetext` and `\@footnotemark` if memoir not used . . . . . 115  
`\doxtrafeetii`: Changed `\doxtrafeetii` code for easier extensions . . . . . 142
- v0.5.  
`\@footnotetext`: Enabled regular `\footnote` in numbered text 116  
`\@xympar`: Eliminated `\marginpar` disturbance . . . . . 150  
 General: Added left and right side notes . . . . . 150  
 Added sidenotes, familiar footnotes in numbered text . . . . . 1
- v0.5.1.  
 General: Added moveable side note 150  
 Fixed right line numbers killed in v0.5 . . . . . 1  
`\affixline@num`: Changed `\affixline@num` to cater for sidenotes . . . . . 87
- `ledgroupsize`: Only change `\hsize` in `ledgroupsize` environment otherwise page number can be in wrong place . . . . . 158  
`\l@dgetsidenote@margin`: Added `\sidenotemargin` and `\sidenote@margin` . . . . . 150
- v0.6.  
`\@lopR`: Added `\@pend`, `\@pendR`, `\@lopL` and `\@lopR` in anticipation of parallel processing . . 62  
`\@nl@reg`: Added `\fix@page` to `\@nl` . . . . . 61  
 Extended `\@nl` to include the page number . . . . . 61  
 General: Fixed long paragraphs looping . . . . . 1  
 Fixed minor typos . . . . . 1  
 Prepared for eledpar package . . 1  
`\fix@page`: Added `\last@page@num` and `\fix@page` . . . . . 62  
`\new@line`: Extended `\new@line` to output page numbers . . . . . 68  
`\page@start`: Made `\page@start` a no-op . . . . . 69  
`\vl@dbfnote`: Changed `\l@dbfnote` and `\vl@dbfnote` as originals could give incorrect markers in the footnotes . . . . . 116
- v0.7.  
`\@nl@reg`: Added `\@nl@reg` . . . . 61  
`\@ref@reg`: Added `\@ref@reg` . . . 66  
 General: eledmac having been available for 2 years, deleted the commented out original edmac texts . . . . . 1  
 Maïeul Rouquette new maintainer . . . . . 1  
 Made macros of all messages . 42  
 Replaced all `\interAfootnotelinepenalty`, etc., by just `\interfootnotelinepenalty` . . . . . 1  
 Tidying up for eledpar and ledarab packages . . . . . 1  
`\affixline@num`: Added skipnumming to `\affixline@num` . . 87  
`\do@actions@fixedcode`: Added `\do@actions@fixedcode` . . . 86  
`\do@actions@next`: Added number skipping to `\do@actions` . . . 85



Possibility to number <code>\pstart</code> . . . . .	9	<code>\printlines</code> : Line numbering can be reset at each <code>pstart</code> . . . . .	100
Possibility to number the <code>pstart</code> with the commands <code>\numberpstarttrue</code> . . . . .	1	v0.17. <code>\ifinserthangingsymbol</code> : New new management of hangingsymbol insertion, preventing undesirable insertions. . . . .	168
<code>\ifledRcol@</code> : Added <code>\ifledRcol</code> and <code>\ifnumberingR</code> for/from <code>eledpar</code> . . . . .	46	v1.0. General: <code>\lemma</code> can contain commands. . . . .	12
v0.12.1. General: Don't number <code>\pstarts</code> of stanza. . . . .	1	Debug in lineation command . . . . .	9
The numbering of <code>\pstarts</code> restarts on each <code>\beginnumbering</code> . . . . .	1	New generic commands to customize footnote display. . . . .	14
v0.13. General: New <code>stanzaindentsrepetition</code> counter to repeat stanza indents every $n$ verses. . . . .	21	Options <code>nonum</code> and <code>nosep</code> in <code>\Xfootnote</code> . . . . .	12
New <code>stanzaindentsrepetition</code> counter: to repeat stanza indents every $n$ verses. . . . .	1	Options of <code>\Xfootnotes</code> . . . . .	95
<code>\managestanza@modulo</code> : New <code>stanzaindentsrepetition</code> counter to repeat stanza indents every $n$ verses. . . . .	170	Possibility to have commands in <code>sidenotes</code> . . . . .	26
v0.13.1. General: <code>\thepstartL</code> and <code>\thepstartR</code> use now <code>\bfseries</code> and not <code>\bf</code> , which is deprecated and makes conflicts with <code>memoir</code> class. . . . .	1	Some compatibility break with <code>eledmac</code> . Change of name: <code>eledmac</code> . . . . .	1
v0.14. General: Tweaked <code>\edlabel</code> to get correct line number if the command is first element of a paragraph. . . . .	1	<code>\morenoexpands</code> : Change to be compatible with new features . . . . .	74
<code>\edlabel</code> : Tweaked <code>\edlabel</code> to get correct line number if the command is first element of a paragraph. . . . .	145	v1.0.1. General: Correction on <code>\numberonlyfirstinline</code> with lineation by <code>pstart</code> or by page. . . . .	14
v0.15. General: Line numbering can be reset at each <code>pstart</code> . . . . .	49	v1.1. General: Add <code>\labelpstarttrue</code> . . . . .	9
Possibility to print <code>\pstart</code> number in side. . . . .	9	Add <code>\numberonlyfirstintwolines</code> . . . . .	15
<code>\affixline@num</code> : Line numbering can be disabled. . . . .	87	Add <code>\pstartinfootnote</code> and <code>\onlypstartinfootnote</code> . . . . .	15
<code>\ifinserthangingsymbol</code> : New management of hangingsymbol insertion, preventing undesirable insertions. . . . .	168	New hook to add arbitrary code at the beginning of the notes . . . . .	17
		New options for block of notes. . . . .	18
		New package option: <code>parapparat</code> . . . . .	1
		New tools to change order of series . . . . .	133
		<code>\ledfootinsdim</code> : Deprecated <code>\ledfootinsdim</code> . . . . .	103
		<code>\preXnotes</code> : New skip <code>\preXnotes@</code> . . . . .	103
		v1.1.0. General: Sectioning commands. . . . .	32
		v1.2. <code>\endquote</code> : Compatibility of <code>\ledchapter</code> with the <i>memoir</i> class. . . . .	192

<code>\preXnotes</code> : Debug in familiar foot- notes (but introduced by v1.1). 103	v1.4.8. General: Corrects a bug with paral- lel texts introduced by 1.1. . . . 1
v1.3. <code>\endquote</code> : <i>Quotation</i> and quote environment inside the number- ing sections. . . . . 192	v1.4.9. <code>\normalbfnoteX</code> : Allow to redefine <code>\thefootnoteX</code> with <code>alph</code> when some packages are loaded. . . 118
v1.4. General: Compatibility of <code>\edtext</code> (and <code>\critext</code> ) with the right- to-left direction (with Polyglos- sia). . . . . 76 Compatibility with LuaTeX of RTL notes. . . . . 41	v1.5. General: Correct indexing when the call is made in critical notes. 159
<code>\newseries@</code> : Remembers the lan- guage of the lemma, in order to create a correct direction for the footnote separator. . . . . 130	<code>\do@insidelinehook</code> : Added <code>\do@insidelinehook</code> for use in <code>\do@line</code> . . . . . 83
<code>\normalfootfmt</code> : Direction of foot- notes with polyglossia. . . . . 97	<code>\edindex</code> : Compatibility with <code>imakeidx</code> package, and possibil- ity to use multiple index with <code>\edindex</code> . . . . . 161
<code>\rbracket</code> : Switch the right bracket to a left bracket when the lemma is RTL (needs polyglos- sia or LuaTeX). . . . . 98	<code>\ifFN@bottom</code> : Use the bottom op- tion of <code>footmisc</code> package. . . 141
v1.4.1. <code>\endquote</code> : New option <i>noquota-</i> <i>tion</i> . . . . . 192	v1.5.1. <code>\managestanza@modulo</code> : Cor- rect <code>stanzaindentsrepetition</code> counter . . . . . 170
<code>\labelrefsparsesubline</code> : Fix bug with <code>\edlabel</code> . . . . . 146	<code>\normalvfootnoteX</code> : Fix bug with normal familiar footnotes when mixing RTL and LTR text. . 117
v1.4.2. General: Debug with some special classes. . . . . 1	v1.5.2. <code>\line@list@stuff</code> : Open / close immediatly the line-list file when in minipage, except if the minipage is a ledgroup. . . . . 67
v1.4.3. General: Add <code>\nonbreakableafternumber</code> . . . . . . 15 Spurious space after familiar footnotes. . . . . 1	v1.6.0. <code>\falseverse</code> : Add <code>\falseverse</code> macro. . . . . 170
v1.4.4. General: Label inside familiar foot- notes. . . . . 1	v1.6.1. General: Corrects a false hanging verse when a verse is exactly the length of a line. . . . . 1
v1.4.5. General: Bug with <code>komasscript</code> + <code>eledpar</code> + chapter. . . . . 1	<code>\ifinserthangingsymbol</code> : Hang verse is now not automatically flush right. . . . . 168
v1.4.6. General: Bug with memoir class in- troduced by 1.4.5. . . . . 1	<code>\l@dunhbox@line</code> : Move the call to <code>\inserthangingsymbol</code> to al- low use <code>\hfill</code> inside. . . . . 82
v1.4.7. <code>\endquote</code> : Compatibility of sectioning commands with <code>\autopar</code> . . . . . 192	<code>\pend</code> : Spurious space in <code>\pend</code> . . 80 <code>\pstart</code> : Spurious space in <code>\pstart</code> . . . . . 79
	v1.7.0. General: New features for managing page breaks. . . . . 34

- v1.8.0.
  - General: Compatibility with parledgroup option of eldpar package. . . . . 1
  - If imakeidx and hyperref are loaded, adds hyperref in the index. . . . . 159
  - `\endquote`: Correction of sectioning commands in parallel texts. . 192
  - `\get@index@command`: Debug `\get@index@command` and compatibility with hyperref package. . . . . 160
  - `\newhookcommand@series@reload`: Debug `\beforenotesX` and `\maxhnotesX` which didn't work. . . . . 135
  - `\prevpage@num`: Correct `\parafootsep` when using with ledgroup. . . 109
- v1.8.1.
  - General: Debug endnotes when more than one series is used (change the position where tools for endnotes are defined). . . 126
- v1.8.2.
  - General: Debug compatibility problem with hebrew option of babel package. . . . . 1
- v1.8.3.
  - General: Fixes spurious spaces added by v1.7.0. . . . . 1
- v1.8.5.
  - General: Debug indexing in right column, with eldpar. . . . . 159
- v1.9.0.
  - `\doxtrafeet`: Add `\fnpos` to choice the order of footnotes. . . . . 141
  - `\l@dfeetendmini`: Add `\mpfnpos` to choice the order of footnotes in minipage / ledgroup. . . . 156
- v1.10.0.
  - General: Add `\pstartref` and `\xpstartref` to refer to a pstart number (extension of `\edlabel`). . . . . 1
  - `\endquote`: Correction of sectioning commands in parallel texts. . 192
- v1.10.1.
  - General: Compatibility with cleveref. . . . . 1
- v1.10.2.
  - General: Compatibility of stanza with v1.8a of babel-greek. . . . 1
- v1.10.3.
  - General: Debug of cross-referencing. . . . . 1
- v1.10.4.
  - General: Debug of critical notes in edtabular environment. . . . . 1
- v1.10.5.
  - General: Debug of `\pausenumbering`. . . . . 1
  - Debug of `\xxref`. . . . . 1
- v1.10.6.
  - General: Debug of interaction between `\autopar` and `\pausenumbering`. . . . . 1
- v1.11.0.
  - General: Add hooks to disable the font selection for lemma in footnote. . . . . 17
- v1.11.1.
  - General: Correct a bug when a critical note starts with plus or minus. . . . . 1
- v1.12.0.
  - `\@nl@reg`: To ensure compatibility with `\musixtex`, `\@l` becomes `\@1`. Consequently, `\@l@reg` becomes `\@nl@reg`. . . . . 60
  - `\@wredindex`: Use correctly default index when imakeidx is loaded. 162
  - General: Add `\ledinnernote` and `\ledouternote` commands. . . 26
  - Add hyperlink to crossref (needs hyperref package). . . . . 25
  - Compatibility with `musixtex`. . . 1
  - Debug eldmac sectioning command after using `\resumenumbering`. . . . . 1
  - New hooks: `\afterXrule` and `\aftererruleX` . . . . . 18
  - New options for ragged-paragraph notes . . . . . 18
  - New sectioning commands. . . . 32
  - Optional arguments for `\pstart` and `\pend`. . . . . 7
  - `\endquote`: `\ledxxx` sectioning commands are deprecated and

replaced by <code>\eledxxx</code> commands. . . . .	192		
<code>\ifeledmac@check@imakeidx@</code> : Ensure that <code>imakeidx</code> is loaded before <code>eledmac</code> . . . . .	159		
<code>\ifledRcol@</code> : Add <code>\ifledRcol@</code> for <code>eledpar</code> . . . . .	46		
<code>\initnumbering@reg:\beginnumbering</code> is defined only on <code>eledmac</code> , not on <code>eledpar</code> . . . . .	47		
<code>\l@dcnote:\l@dlsnote,\l@drsnote</code> and <code>\l@dcnote</code> defined only one time, in <code>eledmac</code> , including needs for <code>eledpar</code> case. . . . .	152		
<code>\l@dgetsidenote@margin:\sidenotemargin</code> is now directly defined in <code>eledmac</code> to be able to manage <code>eledpar</code> . . . . .	150		
<code>\l@dunhbox@line:\do@line</code> is split in more little commands. . . . .	82		
<code>\newhookcommand@series@reload</code> : Debug <code>\beforenotesX</code> and <code>\maxhnotesX</code> which didn't work when called after <code>\footparagraphX</code> . . . . .	135		
Debug <code>\beforeXnotes</code> and <code>\maxhXnotes</code> which didn't work when called after <code>\footparagraph</code> . . . . .	135		
<code>\pend</code> : New optional argument for <code>\pend</code> , to execute code after it. . . . .	80		
<code>\pstart</code> : New optional argument for <code>\pstart</code> , to execute code before it. . . . .	79		
<code>\stanza</code> : &can have an optional argument: content to be printed after. . . . .	170		
<code>\Stanza</code> can have an optional argument: content to be printed before. . . . .	170		
Add <code>\newverse</code> macro, <code>\falseverse</code> deprecated. . . . .	170		
v1.12.1. <code>\wrap@edcrossref</code> : Fix spurious spaces. . . . .	147		
v1.12.2. <code>\l@dunhbox@line</code> : Fix a bug with critical notes at the tops of pages (added by v12.0.0) . . . . .	82		
		v1.12.3.	
		General: Add macros for new messages since v0.7 . . . . .	42
		Correct bug with side and familiar notes in tabular environments. . . . .	1
		Debug <code>\eledxxx</code> with some paper size . . . . .	1
		Debug <code>\ledinnernote</code> and <code>\ledouternote</code> commands in the top of pages. . . . .	26
		Debug left and right notes (bugs added by 1.12.0) . . . . .	1
		Underline lemma in <code>\eledxxx</code> when using draft mode. . . . .	1
		<code>\eledmac@error</code> : Replaced error messages . . . . .	42
		<code>\flag@end</code> : <code>\flag@start</code> and <code>\flag@end</code> are now defined only one time for <code>eledmac</code> and <code>eledpar</code> . . . . .	68
		<code>\flag@start</code> send a error message when a <code>\edtext</code> is done without insert (note) . . . . .	68
		v1.12.4.	
		General: Debug spurious page breaking before <code>\chapter</code> (bug added by 1.12.0) . . . . .	1
		v1.12.5.	
		<code>\@edindex@hyperref</code> : Debug <code>\edindex</code> when <code>hyperref</code> is not load . . . . .	164
		<code>\@ssect</code> : Debug <code>\eledchapter</code> in parallel with <code>memoir</code> . . . . .	196
		<code>\l@dgonblearg:\l@dgonblearg</code> becomes <code>\l@dgonbeloptarg</code> . . . . .	176
		<code>\l@drestoreforedtext</code> : Debug optional arguments of <code>\Xfootnote</code> in tabular context . . . . .	178
		v1.12.6.	
		<code>\noeledsec</code> : Add <code>\noeledsec</code> macro. . . . .	199
		v1.12.7.	
		<code>\wrap@edcrossref:\wrap@edcrossref</code> is now robust . . . . .	147
		v1.12.8.	
		<code>\flag@end:\flag@start</code> don't send a error message when a <code>\edtext</code> is done without insert (note) but have a <code>endnote</code> . . . . .	68